

GigaDevice Semiconductor Inc.

GD32F30x

ARM® Cortex™-M4 32-bit MCU

**Firmware Library
User Guide**

Revision 1.1

(Jul. 2022)

Table of Contents

Table of Contents.....	1
List of Figures	4
List of Tables	5
1. Introduction	23
1.1. Rules of User Manual and Firmware Library	23
1.1.1. Peripherals.....	23
1.1.2. Naming rules.....	24
2. Firmware Library Overview	25
2.1. File Structure of Firmware Library.....	25
2.1.1. Examples Folder.....	26
2.1.2. Firmware Folder.....	27
2.1.3. Template Folder.....	27
2.1.4. Utilities Folder.....	30
2.2. File descriptions of Firmware Library.....	31
3. Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals	32
3.1. Overview of Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals.....	32
3.2. ADC	32
3.2.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	32
3.2.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	33
3.3. BKP.....	68
3.3.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	68
3.3.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	69
3.4. CAN	83
3.4.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	83
3.4.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	84
3.5. CRC	124
3.5.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	124
3.5.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	124
3.6. CTC.....	129
3.6.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	129
3.6.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	130
3.7. DAC	146
3.7.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	146
3.7.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	147

3.8. DBG	166
3.8.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	166
3.8.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	166
3.9. DMA	173
3.9.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	173
3.9.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	174
3.10. ENET	199
3.10.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	199
3.10.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	202
3.11. EXMC	301
3.11.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	301
3.11.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	302
3.12. EXTI	325
3.12.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	325
3.12.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	326
3.13. FMC	335
3.13.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	335
3.13.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	335
3.14. FWDGT	371
3.14.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	371
3.14.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	371
3.15. GPIO	376
3.15.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	376
3.15.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	377
3.16. I2C	395
3.16.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	396
3.16.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	396
3.17. MISC	424
3.17.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	424
3.17.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	425
3.18. PMU	433
3.18.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	433
3.18.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	433
3.19. RCU	448
3.19.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	448
3.19.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	449
3.20. RTC	487
3.20.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers	487
3.20.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	488

3.21. SDIO	498
3.21.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	498
3.21.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	499
3.22. SPI	538
3.22.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	538
3.22.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	538
3.23. TIMER.....	571
3.23.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	572
3.23.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	572
3.24. USART.....	644
3.24.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	644
3.24.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	644
3.25. WWDGT.....	687
3.25.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers.....	687
3.25.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions	687
4. Revision history	694

List of Figures

Figure 2-1. File structure of firmware library of GD32F30x.....	26
Figure 2-2. Select peripheral example files.....	28
Figure 2-3. Copy the peripheral example files.....	29
Figure 2-4. Open the project file.....	29
Figure 2-5. Configure project files	30
Figure 2-6. Compile-debug-download.....	30

List of Tables

Table 1-1. Peripherals	23
Table 2-1. Function descriptions of Firmware Library	31
Table 3-1. Peripheral function format of Firmware Library	32
Table 3-2. ADC Registers	33
Table 3-3. ADC firmware function	33
Table 3-4. Function adc_deinit	35
Table 3-5. Function adc_enable	35
Table 3-6. Function adc_disable	36
Table 3-7. Function adc_calibration_enable	37
Table 3-8. Function adc_dma_mode_enable	37
Table 3-9. Function adc_dma_mode_disable	38
Table 3-10. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable	39
Table 3-11. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable	39
Table 3-12. Function adc_resolution_config	40
Table 3-13. Function adc_discontinuous_mode_config	41
Table 3-14. Function adc_mode_config	42
Table 3-15. Function adc_special_function_config	43
Table 3-16. Function adc_data_alignment_config	44
Table 3-17. Function adc_channel_length_config	45
Table 3-18. Function adc_regular_channel_config	46
Table 3-19. Function adc_inserted_channel_config	47
Table 3-20. Function adc_inserted_channel_offset_config	49
Table 3-21. Function adc_external_trigger_config	50
Table 3-22. Function adc_external_trigger_source_config	51
Table 3-23. Function adc_software_trigger_enable	54
Table 3-24. Function adc_regular_data_read	54
Table 3-25. Function adc_inserted_data_read	55
Table 3-26. Function adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read	56
Table 3-27. Function adc_flag_get	57
Table 3-28. Function adc_flag_clear	57
Table 3-29. Function adc_interrupt_flag_get	58
Table 3-30. Function adc_interrupt_flag_clear	59
Table 3-31. Function adc_interrupt_enable	60
Table 3-32. Function adc_interrupt_disable	61
Table 3-33. Function adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable	62
Table 3-34. Function adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable	63
Table 3-35. Function adc_watchdog_disable	63
Table 3-36. Function adc_watchdog_threshold_config	64
Table 3-37. Function adc_oversample_mode_config	65
Table 3-38. Function adc_oversample_mode_enable	67

Table 3-39. Function <code>adc_oversample_mode_disable</code>	68
Table 3-40. BKP Registers.....	69
Table 3-41. BKP firmware function.....	69
Table 3-42. Function <code>bkp_deinit</code>	70
Table 3-43. Function <code>bkp_write_data</code>	70
Table 3-44. Function <code>bkp_data_read</code>	71
Table 3-45. Function <code>bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable</code>	72
Table 3-46. Function <code>bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable</code>	72
Table 3-47. Function <code>bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable</code>	73
Table 3-48. Function <code>bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable</code>	74
Table 3-49. Function <code>bkp_rtc_output_select</code>	74
Table 3-50. Function <code>bkp_rtc_clock_output_select</code>	75
Table 3-51. Function <code>bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction</code>	76
Table 3-52. Function <code>bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set</code>	77
Table 3-53. Function <code>bkp_tamper_detection_enable</code>	77
Table 3-54. Function <code>bkp_tamper_detection_disable</code>	78
Table 3-55. Function <code>bkp_tamper_active_level_set</code>	78
Table 3-56. Function <code>bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable</code>	79
Table 3-57. Function <code>bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable</code>	80
Table 3-58. Function <code>bkp_flag_get</code>	80
Table 3-59. Function <code>bkp_flag_clear</code>	81
Table 3-60. Function <code>bkp_interrupt_flag_get</code>	82
Table 3-61. Function <code>bkp_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	82
Table 3-62. CAN Registers	83
Table 3-63. CAN firmware function	84
Table 3-64. Structure <code>can_parameter_struct</code>	85
Table 3-65. Structure <code>can_transmit_message_struct</code>	86
Table 3-66. Structure <code>can_receive_message_struct</code>	86
Table 3-67. Structure <code>can_filter_parameter_struct</code>	87
Table 3-68. Function <code>can_deinit</code>	87
Table 3-69. Function <code>can_struct_para_init</code>	88
Table 3-70. Function <code>can_init</code>	90
Table 3-71. Function <code>can_filter_init</code>	92
Table 3-72. Function <code>can1_filter_start_bank</code>	95
Table 3-73. Function <code>can_debug_freeze_enable</code>	95
Table 3-74. Function <code>can_debug_freeze_disable</code>	97
Table 3-75. Function <code>can_time_trigger_mode_enable</code>	98
Table 3-76. Function <code>can_time_trigger_mode_disable</code>	99
Table 3-77. Function <code>can_message_transmit</code>	100
Table 3-78. Function <code>can_transmit_states</code>	102
Table 3-79. Function <code>can_transmission_stop</code>	104
Table 3-80. Function <code>can_message_receive</code>	105
Table 3-81. Function <code>can_fifo_release</code>	108
Table 3-82. Function <code>can_receive_message_length_get</code>	109

Table 3-83. Function can_working_mode_set.....	111
Table 3-84. Function can_wakeup.....	111
Table 3-85. Function can_error_get.....	112
Table 3-86. Function can_receive_error_number_get.....	114
Table 3-87. Function can_transmit_error_number_get.....	115
Table 3-88. Function can_interrupt_enable.....	116
Table 3-89. Function can_interrupt_disable.....	118
Table 3-90. Function can_flag_get.....	119
Table 3-91. Function can_flag_clear.....	120
Table 3-92. Function can_interrupt_flag_get.....	121
Table 3-93. Function can_interrupt_flag_clear.....	123
Table 3-94. CRC Registers	124
Table 3-95. CRC firmware function	124
Table 3-96. Function crc_deinit.....	124
Table 3-97. Function crc_data_register_reset.....	125
Table 3-98. Function crc_data_register_read.....	126
Table 3-99. Function crc_free_data_register_read	126
Table 3-100. Function crc_free_data_register_write.....	127
Table 3-101. Function crc_single_data_calculate.....	128
Table 3-102. Function crc_block_data_calculate.....	128
Table 3-103. CTC Registers	129
Table 3-104. CTC firmware function.....	130
Table 3-105. Function ctc_deinit.....	131
Table 3-106. Function ctc_counter_enable.....	131
Table 3-107. Function ctc_counter_disable	132
Table 3-108. Function ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config.....	133
Table 3-109. Function ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate.....	133
Table 3-110. Function ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config.....	134
Table 3-111. Function ctc_refsource_polarity_config.....	135
Table 3-112. Function ctc_refsource_signal_select.....	135
Table 3-113. Function ctc_refsource_prescaler_config	136
Table 3-114. Function ctc_clock_limit_value_config	137
Table 3-115. Function ctc_counter_reload_value_config	138
Table 3-116. Function ctc_counter_capture_value_read.....	138
Table 3-117. Function ctc_counter_direction_read.....	139
Table 3-118. Function ctc_counter_reload_value_read.....	140
Table 3-119. Function ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read.....	140
Table 3-120. Function ctc_interrupt_enable.....	141
Table 3-121. Function ctc_interrupt_disable.....	142
Table 3-122. Function ctc_interrupt_flag_get.....	142
Table 3-123. Function ctc_interrupt_flag_clear	143
Table 3-124. Function ctc_flag_get	144
Table 3-125. Function ctc_flag_clear.....	145
Table 3-126. DAC Registers.....	146

Table 3-127. DAC firmware function.....	147
Table 3-128. Function dac_deinit.....	148
Table 3-129. Function dac_enable.....	149
Table 3-130. Function dac_disable.....	149
Table 3-131. Function dac_dma_enable	150
Table 3-132. Function dac_dma_disable	151
Table 3-133. Function dac_output_buffer_enable	151
Table 3-134. Function dac_output_buffer_disable.....	152
Table 3-135. Function dac_output_value_get.....	152
Table 3-136. Function dac_data_set.....	153
Table 3-137. Function dac_trigger_enable.....	154
Table 3-138. Function dac_trigger_disable	155
Table 3-139. Function dac_trigger_source_config	155
Table 3-140. Function dac_software_trigger_enable	157
Table 3-141. Function dac_software_trigger_disable	157
Table 3-142. Function dac_wave_mode_config.....	158
Table 3-143. Function dac_wave_bit_width_config.....	159
Table 3-144. Function dac_lfsr_noise_config.....	159
Table 3-145. Function dac_triangle_noise_config.....	160
Table 3-146. Function dac_concurrent_enable	161
Table 3-147. Function dac_concurrent_disable.....	162
Table 3-148. Function dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable.....	162
Table 3-149. Function dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable	163
Table 3-150. Function dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable	163
Table 3-151. Function dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable.....	164
Table 3-152. Function dac_concurrent_data_set.....	165
Table 3-153. DBG Registers.....	166
Table 3-154. DBG firmware function.....	166
Table 3-155. Enum dbg_periph_enum.....	166
Table 3-156. Function dbg_deinit.....	167
Table 3-157. Function dbg_id_get.....	168
Table 3-158. Function dbg_low_power_enable	169
Table 3-159. Function dbg_low_power_disable	169
Table 3-160. Function dbg_periph_enable.....	170
Table 3-161. Function dbg_periph_disable.....	171
Table 3-162. Function dbg_trace_pin_enable.....	172
Table 3-163. Function dbg_trace_pin_disable.....	172
Table 3-164. DMA Registers	173
Table 3-165. DMA firmware function.....	174
Table 3-166. Structure dma_parameter_struct.....	175
Table 3-167. Function dma_deinit.....	175
Table 3-168. Function dma_struct_para_init.....	176
Table 3-169. Function dma_init.....	177
Table 3-170. Function dma_circulation_enable.....	178

Table 3-171. Function dma_circulation_disable.....	179
Table 3-172. Function dma_memory_to_memory_enable.....	179
Table 3-173. Function dma_memory_to_memory_disable.....	180
Table 3-174. Function dma_channel_enable.....	181
Table 3-175. Function dma_channel_disable.....	182
Table 3-176. Function dma_periph_address_config.....	183
Table 3-177. Function dma_memory_address_config.....	183
Table 3-178. Function dma_transfer_number_config.....	184
Table 3-179. Function dma_transfer_number_get.....	185
Table 3-180. Function dma_priority_config.....	186
Table 3-181. Function dma_memory_width_config.....	187
Table 3-182. Function dma_periph_width_config.....	188
Table 3-183. Function dma_memory_increase_enable.....	189
Table 3-184. Function dma_memory_increase_disable.....	190
Table 3-185. Function dma_periph_increase_enable.....	191
Table 3-186. Function dma_periph_increase_disable.....	191
Table 3-187. Function dma_transfer_direction_config.....	192
Table 3-188. Function dma_flag_get.....	193
Table 3-189. Function dma_flag_clear.....	194
Table 3-190. Function dma_interrupt_flag_get.....	195
Table 3-191. Function dma_interrupt_flag_clear.....	196
Table 3-192. Function dma_interrupt_enable.....	197
Table 3-193. Function dma_interrupt_disable.....	198
Table 3-194. ENET Registers.....	199
Table 3-195. ENET firmware function.....	202
Table 3-196. Structure enet_initpara_struct.....	207
Table 3-197. Structure enet_descriptors_struct.....	208
Table 3-198. Structure enet_ptp_systime_struct.....	208
Table 3-199. Function enet_deinit.....	208
Table 3-200. Function enet_initpara_config.....	209
Table 3-201. Function enet_init.....	213
Table 3-202. Function enet_software_reset.....	215
Table 3-203. Function enet_rxframe_size_get.....	216
Table 3-204. Function enet_descriptors_chain_init.....	216
Table 3-205. Function enet_descriptors_ring_init.....	217
Table 3-206. Function enet_frame_receive.....	218
Table 3-207. Function enet_frame_transmit.....	218
Table 3-208. Function enet_transmit_checksum_config.....	219
Table 3-209. Function enet_enable.....	220
Table 3-210. Function enet_disable.....	221
Table 3-211. Function enet_mac_address_set.....	222
Table 3-212. Function enet_mac_address_get.....	223
Table 3-213. Function enet_flag_get.....	224
Table 3-214. Function enet_flag_clear.....	226

Table 3-215. Function enet_interrupt_enable.....	228
Table 3-216. Function enet_interrupt_disable.....	230
Table 3-217. Function enet_interrupt_flag_get.....	231
Table 3-218. Function enet_interrupt_flag_clear.....	234
Table 3-219. Function enet_tx_enable.....	235
Table 3-220. Function enet_tx_disable.....	236
Table 3-221. Function enet_rx_enable.....	237
Table 3-222. Function enet_rx_disable.....	237
Table 3-223. Function enet_registers_get.....	238
Table 3-224. Function enet_debug_status_get.....	239
Table 3-225. Function enet_address_filter_enable.....	240
Table 3-226. Function enet_address_filter_disable.....	241
Table 3-227. Function enet_address_filter_config.....	242
Table 3-228. Function enet_phy_config.....	243
Table 3-229. Function enet_phy_write_read.....	244
Table 3-230. Function enet_phyloopback_enable.....	245
Table 3-231. Function enet_phyloopback_disable.....	245
Table 3-232. Function enet_forward_feature_enable.....	246
Table 3-233. Function enet_forward_feature_disable.....	247
Table 3-234. Function enet_filter_feature_enable.....	248
Table 3-235. Function enet_filter_feature_disable.....	249
Table 3-236. Function enet_pauseframe_generate.....	250
Table 3-237. Function enet_pauseframe_detect_config.....	251
Table 3-238. Function enet_pauseframe_config.....	251
Table 3-239. Function enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config.....	252
Table 3-240. Function enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable.....	254
Table 3-241. Function enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable.....	255
Table 3-242. Function enet_dmaprocess_state_get.....	256
Table 3-243. Function enet_dmaprocess_resume.....	257
Table 3-244. Function enet_rxprocess_check_recovery.....	258
Table 3-245. Function enet_txfifo_flush.....	258
Table 3-246. Function enet_current_desc_address_get.....	259
Table 3-247. Function enet_desc_information_get.....	260
Table 3-248. Function enet_missed_frame_counter_get.....	261
Table 3-249. Function enet_desc_flag_get.....	262
Table 3-250. Function enet_desc_flag_set.....	264
Table 3-251. Function enet_desc_flag_clear.....	265
Table 3-252. Function enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt.....	267
Table 3-253. Function enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt.....	267
Table 3-254. Function enet_rxframe_drop.....	268
Table 3-255. Function enet_dma_feature_enable.....	269
Table 3-256. Function enet_dma_feature_disable.....	269
Table 3-257. Function enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get.....	270
Table 3-258. Function enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode.....	271

Table 3-259. Function enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init	272
Table 3-260. Function enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init	273
Table 3-261. Function enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode	274
Table 3-262. Function enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode	274
Table 3-263. Function enet_desc_select_normal_mode	275
Table 3-264. Function enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init	276
Table 3-265. Function enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init	277
Table 3-266. Function enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode	278
Table 3-267. Function enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode	279
Table 3-268. Function enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset	279
Table 3-269. Function enet_wum_filter_config	280
Table 3-270. Function enet_wum_feature_enable	281
Table 3-271. Function enet_wum_feature_disable	282
Table 3-272. Function enet_msc_counters_reset	282
Table 3-273. Function enet_msc_feature_enable	283
Table 3-274. Function enet_msc_feature_disable	284
Table 3-275. Function enet_msc_counters_preset_config	285
Table 3-276. Function enet_msc_counters_get	285
Table 3-277. Function enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond	286
Table 3-278. Function enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond	287
Table 3-279. Function enet_ptp_feature_enable	288
Table 3-280. Function enet_ptp_feature_disable	289
Table 3-281. Function enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config	290
Table 3-282. Function enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config	292
Table 3-283. Function enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config	292
Table 3-284. Function enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config	293
Table 3-285. Function enet_ptp_expected_time_config	294
Table 3-286. Function enet_ptp_system_time_get	295
Table 3-287. Function enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config	295
Table 3-288. Function enet_ptp_start	297
Table 3-289. Function enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq	298
Table 3-290. Function enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update	298
Table 3-291. Function enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime	299
Table 3-292. Function enet_ptp_flag_get	300
Table 3-293. Function enet_initpara_reset	300
Table 3-294. EXMC Registers	301
Table 3-295. EXMC firmware function	302
Table 3-296. Structure exmc_norsram_timing_parameter_struct	303
Table 3-297. Structure exmc_norsram_parameter_struct	303
Table 3-298. Structure exmc_nand_pccard_timing_parameter_struct	304
Table 3-299. Structure exmc_nand_parameter_struct	304
Table 3-300. Structure exmc_pccard_parameter_struct	305
Table 3-301. Function exmc_norsram_deinit	305
Table 3-302. Function exmc_norsram_struct_para_init	306

Table 3-303. Function <code>exmc_norsram_init</code>	307
Table 3-304. Function <code>exmc_norsram_enable</code>	308
Table 3-305. Function <code>exmc_norsram_disable</code>	309
Table 3-306. Function <code>exmc_nand_deinit</code>	309
Table 3-307. Function <code>exmc_nand_struct_para_init</code>	310
Table 3-308. Function <code>exmc_nand_init</code>	311
Table 3-309. Function <code>exmc_nand_enable</code>	312
Table 3-310. Function <code>exmc_nand_disable</code>	313
Table 3-311. Function <code>exmc_pccard_deinit</code>	313
Table 3-312. Function <code>exmc_pccard_struct_para_init</code>	314
Table 3-313. Function <code>exmc_pccard_init</code>	315
Table 3-314. Function <code>exmc_pccard_enable</code>	316
Table 3-315. Function <code>exmc_pccard_disable</code>	316
Table 3-316. Function <code>exmc_norsram_page_size_config</code>	317
Table 3-317. Function <code>exmc_nand_ecc_config</code>	318
Table 3-318. Function <code>exmc_ecc_get</code>	319
Table 3-319. Function <code>exmc_interrupt_enable</code>	319
Table 3-320. Function <code>exmc_interrupt_disable</code>	320
Table 3-321. Function <code>exmc_flag_get</code>	321
Table 3-322. Function <code>exmc_flag_clear</code>	322
Table 3-323. Function <code>exmc_interrupt_flag_get</code>	323
Table 3-324. Function <code>exmc_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	324
Table 3-325. EXTI Registers.....	326
Table 3-326. EXTI firmware function.....	326
Table 3-327. Function <code>exti_deinit</code>	326
Table 3-328. Function <code>exti_init</code>	327
Table 3-329. Function <code>exti_interrupt_enable</code>	328
Table 3-330. Function <code>exti_interrupt_disable</code>	329
Table 3-331. Function <code>exti_event_enable</code>	329
Table 3-332. Function <code>exti_event_disable</code>	330
Table 3-333. Function <code>exti_software_interrupt_enable</code>	331
Table 3-334. Function <code>exti_software_interrupt_disable</code>	331
Table 3-335. Function <code>exti_flag_get</code>	332
Table 3-336. Function <code>exti_flag_clear</code>	333
Table 3-337. Function <code>exti_interrupt_flag_get</code>	333
Table 3-338. Function <code>exti_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	334
Table 3-339. FMC Registers.....	335
Table 3-340. FMC firmware function.....	335
Table 3-341. Enum <code>fmc_state_enum</code>	337
Table 3-342. Enum <code>fmc_int_enum</code>	337
Table 3-343. Enum <code>fmc_flag_enum</code>	338
Table 3-344. Enum <code>fmc_interrupt_flag_enum</code>	338
Table 3-345. Function <code>fmc_wscnt_set</code>	339
Table 3-346. Function <code>fmc_unlock</code>	340

Table 3-347. Function <code>fmc_bank0_unlock</code>	341
Table 3-348. Function <code>fmc_bank1_unlock</code>	342
Table 3-349. Function <code>fmc_lock</code>	342
Table 3-350. Function <code>fmc_bank0_lock</code>	343
Table 3-351. Function <code>fmc_bank1_lock</code>	344
Table 3-352. Function <code>fmc_page_erase</code>	344
Table 3-353. Function <code>fmc_mass_erase</code>	345
Table 3-354. Function <code>fmc_bank0_erase</code>	346
Table 3-355. Function <code>fmc_bank1_erase</code>	347
Table 3-356. Function <code>fmc_word_program</code>	347
Table 3-357. Function <code>fmc_halfword_program</code>	348
Table 3-358. Function <code>fmc_word_reprogram</code>	349
Table 3-359. Function <code>ob_unlock</code>	350
Table 3-360. Function <code>ob_lock</code>	350
Table 3-361. Function <code>ob_erase</code>	351
Table 3-362. Function <code>ob_write_protection_enable</code>	352
Table 3-363. Function <code>ob_security_protection_config</code>	353
Table 3-364. Function <code>ob_user_write</code>	354
Table 3-365. Function <code>ob_data_program</code>	356
Table 3-366. Function <code>ob_user_get</code>	357
Table 3-367. Function <code>ob_data_program</code>	358
Table 3-368. Function <code>ob_write_protection_get</code>	358
Table 3-369. Function <code>ob_spc_get</code>	359
Table 3-370. Function <code>fmc_interrupt_enable</code>	360
Table 3-371. Function <code>fmc_interrupt_disable</code>	361
Table 3-372. Function <code>fmc_flag_get</code>	362
Table 3-373. Function <code>fmc_flag_clear</code>	364
Table 3-374. Function <code>fmc_interrupt_flag_get</code>	365
Table 3-375. Function <code>fmc_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	366
Table 3-376. Function <code>fmc_bank0_state_get</code>	367
Table 3-377. Function <code>fmc_bank1_state_get</code>	368
Table 3-378. Function <code>fmc_bank0_ready_wait</code>	369
Table 3-379. Function <code>fmc_bank1_ready_wait</code>	370
Table 3-380. FWDGT Registers.....	371
Table 3-381. FWDGT firmware function.....	371
Table 3-382. Function <code> fwdgt_write_enable</code>	372
Table 3-383. Function <code> fwdgt_write_disable</code>	372
Table 3-384. Function <code> fwdgt_enable</code>	373
Table 3-385. Function <code> fwdgt_prescaler_value_config</code>	373
Table 3-386. Function <code> fwdgt_reload_value_config</code>	374
Table 3-387. Function <code> fwdgt_counter_reload</code>	374
Table 3-388. Function <code> fwdgt_config</code>	375
Table 3-389. Function <code> fwdgt_flag_get fwdgt_write_disable</code>	375
Table 3-390. GPIO Registers.....	376

Table 3-391. GPIO firmware function.....	377
Table 3-392. Function gpio_deinit.....	378
Table 3-393. Function gpio_afio_deinit.....	379
Table 3-394. Function gpio_init.....	379
Table 3-395. Function gpio_bit_set.....	381
Table 3-396. Function gpio_bit_reset.....	381
Table 3-397. Function gpio_bit_write	382
Table 3-398. Function gpio_port_write	383
Table 3-399. Function gpio_input_bit_get.....	384
Table 3-400. Function gpio_input_port_get	385
Table 3-401. Function gpio_output_bit_get.....	385
Table 3-402. Function gpio_output_port_get	386
Table 3-403. Function gpio_pin_remap_config	387
Table 3-404. Function gpio_ethernet_phy_select.....	390
Table 3-405. Function gpio_exti_source_select	390
Table 3-406. Function gpio_event_output_config	391
Table 3-407. Function gpio_event_output_enable.....	392
Table 3-408. Function gpio_event_output_disable.....	393
Table 3-409. Function gpio_pin_lock.....	393
Table 3-410. Function gpio_compensation_config.....	394
Table 3-411. Function gpio_compensation_flag_get	395
Table 3-412. I2C Registers.....	396
Table 3-413. I2C firmware function.....	396
Table 3-414. Function i2c_deinit.....	397
Table 3-415. Function i2c_clock_config	398
Table 3-416. Function i2c_mode_addr_config.....	399
Table 3-417. Function i2c_smbus_type_config	400
Table 3-418. Function i2c_ack_config.....	401
Table 3-419. Function i2c_ackpos_config.....	402
Table 3-420. Function i2c_master_addressing.....	402
Table 3-421. Function i2c_dualaddr_enable.....	403
Table 3-422. Function i2c_enable.....	404
Table 3-423. Function i2c_disable.....	405
Table 3-424. Function i2c_start_on_bus.....	405
Table 3-425. Function i2c_stop_on_bus	406
Table 3-426. Function i2c_data_transmit.....	407
Table 3-427. Function i2c_data_receive.....	407
Table 3-428. Function i2c_dma_config.....	408
Table 3-429. Function i2c_dma_last_transfer_config	409
Table 3-430. Function i2c_stretch_scl_low_config.....	410
Table 3-431. Function i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config	411
Table 3-432. Function i2c_software_reset_config	411
Table 3-433. Function i2c_pec_config.....	412
Table 3-434. Function i2c_pec_transfer_config.....	413

Table 3-435. Function i2c_pec_value_get.....	414
Table 3-436. Function i2c_smbus_alert_config.....	414
Table 3-437. Function i2c_smbus_arp_config.....	415
Table 3-438. Function i2c_flag_get	416
Table 3-439. Function i2c_flag_clear.....	418
Table 3-440. Function i2c_interrupt_enable.....	419
Table 3-441. Function i2c_interrupt_disable	420
Table 3-442. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_get.....	421
Table 3-443. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_clear	422
Table 3-444. NVIC Registers	424
Table 3-445. SysTick Registers.....	425
Table 3-446. IRQn_Type	425
Table 3-447. MISC firmware function.....	427
Table 3-448. Function nvic_priority_group_set.....	428
Table 3-449. Function nvic_irq_enable.....	428
Table 3-450. Function nvic_irq_disable.....	429
Table 3-451. Function nvic_vector_table_set.....	430
Table 3-452. Function system_lowpower_set	431
Table 3-453. Function system_lowpower_reset	431
Table 3-454. Function systick_cksourceset	432
Table 3-455. PMU Registers.....	433
Table 3-456. PMU firmware function.....	433
Table 3-457. Function pmu_deinit.....	434
Table 3-458. Function pmu_lvd_select.....	435
Table 3-459. Function pmu_lldo_output_select	436
Table 3-460. Function pmu_lvd_disable.....	436
Table 3-461. Function pmu_highdriver_switch_select.....	437
Table 3-462. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_enable.....	438
Table 3-463. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_disable	438
Table 3-464. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable.....	439
Table 3-465. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable.....	440
Table 3-466. Function pmu_lowpower_driver_config	440
Table 3-467. Function pmu_normalpower_driver_config	441
Table 3-468. Function pmu_to_sleepmode.....	442
Table 3-469. Function pmu_to_deepsleepmode.....	442
Table 3-470. Function pmu_to_standbymode.....	443
Table 3-471. Function pmu_backup_write_enable.....	444
Table 3-472. Function pmu_backup_write_disable.....	444
Table 3-473. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_enable.....	445
Table 3-474. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_disable.....	446
Table 3-475. Function pmu_flag_get	446
Table 3-476. Function pmu_flag_clear.....	447
Table 3-477. RCU Registers.....	448
Table 3-478. RCU firmware function.....	449

Table 3-479. Enum rcu_periph_enum.....	450
Table 3-480. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum	452
Table 3-481. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum.....	452
Table 3-482. Enum rcu_flag_enum.....	453
Table 3-483. Enum rcu_int_flag_enum	454
Table 3-484. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum	454
Table 3-485. Enum rcu_int_enum.....	454
Table 3-486. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum.....	455
Table 3-487. Enum rcu_clock_freq_enum.....	455
Table 3-488. Function rcu_deinit.....	455
Table 3-489. Function rcu_periph_clock_enable.....	456
Table 3-490. Function rcu_periph_clock_disable	456
Table 3-491. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable	457
Table 3-492. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable	458
Table 3-493. Function rcu_periph_reset_enable.....	458
Table 3-494. Function rcu_periph_reset_disable.....	459
Table 3-495. Function rcu_bkp_reset_enable.....	460
Table 3-496. Function rcu_bkp_reset_disable.....	460
Table 3-497. Function rcu_system_clock_source_config	461
Table 3-498. Function rcu_system_clock_source_get.....	462
Table 3-499. Function rcu_ahb_clock_config.....	462
Table 3-500. Function rcu_apb1_clock_config.....	463
Table 3-501. Function rcu_apb2_clock_config.....	464
Table 3-502. Function rcu_ckout0_config.....	465
Table 3-503. Function rcu_pll_config.....	466
Table 3-504. Function rcu_pllpre sel_config.....	467
Table 3-505. Function rcu_predv0_config.....	467
Table 3-506. Function rcu_predv0_config.....	468
Table 3-507. Function rcu_predv1_config.....	469
Table 3-508. Function rcu_pll1_config	470
Table 3-509. Function rcu_pll2_config	470
Table 3-510. Function rcu_adc_clock_config.....	471
Table 3-511. Function rcu_usb_clock_config.....	472
Table 3-512. Function rcu_rtc_clock_config	473
Table 3-513. Function rcu_i2s1_clock_config	474
Table 3-514. Function rcu_i2s2_clock_config	475
Table 3-515. Function rcu_ck48m_clock_config	475
Table 3-516. Function rcu_flag_get.....	476
Table 3-517. Function rcu_all_reset_flag_clear.....	477
Table 3-518. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_get	477
Table 3-519. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_clear.....	478
Table 3-520. Function rcu_interrupt_enable	479
Table 3-521. Function rcu_interrupt_disable.....	479
Table 3-522. Function rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config	480

Table 3-523. Function rcu_osc_i_stab_wait.....	481
Table 3-524. Function rcu_osc_i_on.....	481
Table 3-525. Function rcu_osc_i_off.....	482
Table 3-526. Function rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_enable.....	482
Table 3-527. Function rcu_osc_i_bypass_mode_disable.....	483
Table 3-528. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable.....	484
Table 3-529. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable.....	484
Table 3-530. Function rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set.....	485
Table 3-531. Function rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set.....	486
Table 3-532. Function rcu_clock_freq_get.....	487
Table 3-533. RTC Registers.....	487
Table 3-534. RTC firmware function.....	488
Table 3-535. Function rtc_interrupt_enable.....	489
Table 3-536. Function rtc_interrupt_disable.....	489
Table 3-537. Function rtc_configuration_mode_enter.....	490
Table 3-538. Function rtc_configuration_mode_exit.....	491
Table 3-539. Function rtc_lwoff_wait.....	491
Table 3-540. Function rtc_register_sync_wait.....	492
Table 3-541. Function rtc_counter_get.....	493
Table 3-542. Function rtc_counter_set.....	493
Table 3-543. Function rtc_prescaler_set.....	494
Table 3-544. Function rtc_alarm_config.....	495
Table 3-545. Function rtc_divider_get.....	496
Table 3-546. Function rtc_flag_get.....	496
Table 3-547. Function rtc_flag_clear.....	497
Table 3-548. SDIO Registers.....	498
Table 3-549. SDIO firmware function.....	499
Table 3-550. Function sdio_deinit.....	501
Table 3-551. Function sdio_clock_config.....	501
Table 3-552. Function sdio_hardware_clock_enable.....	503
Table 3-553. Function sdio_hardware_clock_disable.....	503
Table 3-554. Function sdio_bus_mode_set.....	504
Table 3-555. Function sdio_power_state_set.....	505
Table 3-556. Function sdio_power_state_get.....	505
Table 3-557. Function sdio_clock_enable.....	506
Table 3-558. Function sdio_clock_disable.....	507
Table 3-559. Function sdio_command_response_config.....	507
Table 3-560. Function sdio_wait_type_set.....	508
Table 3-561. Function sdio_csm_enable.....	509
Table 3-562. Function sdio_csm_disable.....	509
Table 3-563. Function sdio_command_index_get.....	510
Table 3-564. Function sdio_response_get.....	511
Table 3-565. Function sdio_data_config.....	512
Table 3-566. Function sdio_data_transfer_config.....	513

Table 3-567. Function sdio_dsm_enable	514
Table 3-568. Function sdio_dsm_disable	515
Table 3-569. Function sdio_data_write.....	515
Table 3-570. Function sdio_data_read.....	516
Table 3-571. Function sdio_data_counter_get	517
Table 3-572. Function sdio_data_counter_get	517
Table 3-573. Function sdio_dma_enable	518
Table 3-574. Function sdio_dma_disable	519
Table 3-575. Function sdio_flag_get	519
Table 3-576. Function sdio_flag_clear.....	521
Table 3-577. Function sdio_interrupt_enable.....	522
Table 3-578. Function sdio_interrupt_disable.....	524
Table 3-579. Function sdio_interrupt_flag_get.....	525
Table 3-580. Function sdio_interrupt_flag_clear	527
Table 3-581. Function sdio_readwait_enable	528
Table 3-582. Function sdio_readwait_disable.....	529
Table 3-583. Function sdio_stop_readwait_enable.....	530
Table 3-584. Function sdio_stop_readwait_disable.....	530
Table 3-585. Function sdio_readwait_type_set	531
Table 3-586. Function sdio_operation_enable.....	532
Table 3-587. Function sdio_operation_disable.....	532
Table 3-588. Function sdio_suspend_enable.....	533
Table 3-589. Function sdio_suspend_disable	533
Table 3-590. Function sdio_ceata_command_enable.....	534
Table 3-591. Function sdio_ceata_command_disable	535
Table 3-592. Function sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable.....	535
Table 3-593. Function sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable	536
Table 3-594. Function sdio_ceata_command_completion_enable.....	536
Table 3-595. Function sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable.....	537
Table 3-596. SPI/I2S Registers.....	538
Table 3-597. SPI/I2S firmware function.....	538
Table 3-598. spi_parameter_struct.....	540
Table 3-599. Function spi_i2s_deinit.....	541
Table 3-600. Function spi_struct_para_init.....	541
Table 3-601. Function spi_init.....	542
Table 3-602. Function spi_enable	543
Table 3-603. Function spi_disable.....	544
Table 3-604. Function i2s_init.....	544
Table 3-605. Function i2s_psc_config.....	546
Table 3-606. Function i2s_enable.....	547
Table 3-607. Function i2s_disable.....	548
Table 3-608. Function spi_nss_output_enable.....	549
Table 3-609. Function spi_nss_output_disable.....	549
Table 3-610. Function spi_nss_internal_high.....	550

Table 3-611. Function spi_nss_internal_low	551
Table 3-612. Function spi_dma_enable	551
Table 3-613. Function spi_dma_disable	552
Table 3-614. Function spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config	553
Table 3-615. Function spi_i2s_data_transmit	554
Table 3-616. Function spi_i2s_data_receive	554
Table 3-617. Function spi_bidirectional_transfer_config	555
Table 3-618. Function spi_crc_polynomial_set	556
Table 3-619. Function spi_crc_polynomial_get	557
Table 3-620. Function spi_crc_on	557
Table 3-621. Function spi_crc_off	558
Table 3-622. Function spi_crc_next	559
Table 3-623. Function spi_crc_get	559
Table 3-624. Function spi_ti_mode_enable	560
Table 3-625. Function spi_ti_mode_disable	561
Table 3-626. Function spi_nssp_mode_enable	561
Table 3-627. Function spi_nssp_mode_disable	562
Table 3-628. Function qspi_enable	563
Table 3-629. Function qspi_disable	563
Table 3-630. Function qspi_write_enable	564
Table 3-631. Function qspi_read_enable	565
Table 3-632. Function qspi_io23_output_enable	565
Table 3-633. Function qspi_io23_output_disable	566
Table 3-634. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_enable	567
Table 3-635. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_disable	567
Table 3-636. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get	568
Table 3-637. Function spi_i2s_flag_get	569
Table 3-638. Function spi_crc_error_clear	571
Table 3-639. TIMEx Registers	572
Table 3-640. TIMEx firmware function	573
Table 3-641. Structure timer_parameter_struct	576
Table 3-642. Structure timer_break_parameter_struct	576
Table 3-643. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct	577
Table 3-644. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct	577
Table 3-645. Function timer_deinit	577
Table 3-646. Function timer_struct_para_init	578
Table 3-647. Function timer_init	579
Table 3-648. Function timer_enable	580
Table 3-649. Function timer_disable	580
Table 3-650. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable	581
Table 3-651. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable	582
Table 3-652. Function timer_update_event_enable	582
Table 3-653. Function timer_update_event_disable	583
Table 3-654. Function timer_counter_alignment	584

Table 3-655. Function timer_counter_up_direction	585
Table 3-656. Function timer_counter_down_direction	585
Table 3-657. Function timer_prescaler_config	586
Table 3-658. Function timer_repetition_value_config	587
Table 3-659. Function timer_autoreload_value_config	588
Table 3-660. Function timer_counter_value_config	588
Table 3-661. Function timer_counter_read	589
Table 3-662. Function timer_prescaler_read	590
Table 3-663. Function timer_single_pulse_mode_config	590
Table 3-664. Function timer_update_source_config	591
Table 3-665. Function timer_dma_enable	592
Table 3-666. Function timer_dma_disable	593
Table 3-667. Function timer_channel_dma_request_source_select	594
Table 3-668. Function timer_dma_transfer_config	595
Table 3-669. Function timer_event_software_generate	597
Table 3-670. Function timer_break_struct_para_init	598
Table 3-671. Function timer_break_config	599
Table 3-672. Function timer_break_enable	600
Table 3-673. Function timer_break_disable	601
Table 3-674. Function timer_automatic_output_enable	601
Table 3-675. Function timer_automatic_output_disable	602
Table 3-676. Function timer_primary_output_config	603
Table 3-677. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_config	604
Table 3-678. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config	604
Table 3-679. Function timer_channel_output_struct_para_init	605
Table 3-680. Function timer_channel_output_config	606
Table 3-681. Function timer_channel_output_mode_config	607
Table 3-682. Function timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config	609
Table 3-683. Function timer_channel_output_shadow_config	609
Table 3-684. Function timer_channel_output_fast_config	611
Table 3-685. Function timer_channel_output_clear_config	612
Table 3-686. Function timer_channel_output_polarity_config	613
Table 3-687. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config	614
Table 3-688. Function timer_channel_output_state_config	615
Table 3-689. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config	616
Table 3-690. Function timer_channel_input_struct_para_init	617
Table 3-691. Function timer_input_capture_config	618
Table 3-692. Function timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config	619
Table 3-693. Function timer_channel_capture_value_register_read	620
Table 3-694. Function timer_input_pwm_capture_config	621
Table 3-695. Function timer_hall_mode_config	622
Table 3-696. Function timer_input_trigger_source_select	623
Table 3-697. Function timer_master_output_trigger_source_select	624
Table 3-698. Function timer_slave_mode_select	625

Table 3-699. Function timer_master_slave_mode_config	626
Table 3-700. Function timer_external_trigger_config	627
Table 3-701. Function timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config	629
Table 3-702. Function timer_internal_clock_config	630
Table 3-703. Function timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config	631
Table 3-704. Function timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config	632
Table 3-705. Function timer_external_clock_mode0_config	633
Table 3-706. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_config	634
Table 3-707. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_disable	635
Table 3-708. Function timer_write_chxval_register_config	636
Table 3-709. Function timer_output_value_selection_config	637
Table 3-710. Function timer_interrupt_enable	637
Table 3-711. Function timer_interrupt_disable	638
Table 3-712. Function timer_interrupt_flag_get	639
Table 3-713. Function timer_interrupt_flag_clear	641
Table 3-714. Function timer_flag_get	642
Table 3-715. Function timer_flag_clear	643
Table 3-716. USART Registers	644
Table 3-717. USART firmware function	645
Table 3-718. Function usart_deinit	647
Table 3-719. Function usart_baudrate_set	647
Table 3-720. Function usart_parity_config	648
Table 3-721. Function usart_word_length_set	649
Table 3-722. Function usart_stop_bit_set	650
Table 3-723. Function usart_enable	651
Table 3-724. Function usart_disable	651
Table 3-725. Function usart_transmit_config	652
Table 3-726. Function usart_receive_config	653
Table 3-727. Function usart_data_first_config	654
Table 3-728. Function usart_invert_config	654
Table 3-729. Function usart_receiver_timeout_enable	656
Table 3-730. Function usart_receiver_timeout_disable	656
Table 3-731. Function usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config	657
Table 3-732. Function usart_data_transmit	658
Table 3-733. Function usart_data_receive	658
Table 3-734. Function usart_address_config	659
Table 3-735. Function usart_mute_mode_enable	660
Table 3-736. Function usart_mute_mode_disable	661
Table 3-737. Function usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config	661
Table 3-738. Function usart_lin_mode_enable	662
Table 3-739. Function usart_lin_mode_disable	663
Table 3-740. Function usart_lin_break_dection_length_config	664
Table 3-741. Function usart_send_break	664
Table 3-742. Function usart_halfduplex_enable	665

Table 3-743. Function usart_halfduplex_disable.....	666
Table 3-744. Function usart_synchronous_clock_enable.....	666
Table 3-745. Function usart_synchronous_clock_disable.....	667
Table 3-746. Function usart_synchronous_clock_config.....	668
Table 3-747. Function usart_guard_time_config.....	669
Table 3-748. Function usart_smartcard_mode_enable.....	670
Table 3-749. Function usart_smartcard_mode_disable.....	670
Table 3-750. Function usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable.....	671
Table 3-751. Function usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable.....	671
Table 3-752. Function usart_smartcard_autoretry_config.....	672
Table 3-753. Function usart_block_length_config.....	673
Table 3-754. Function usart_irda_mode_enable.....	674
Table 3-755. Function usart_irda_mode_disable.....	674
Table 3-756. Function usart_prescaler_config.....	675
Table 3-757. Function usart_irda_lowpower_config.....	676
Table 3-758. Function usart_hardware_flow_rts_config.....	677
Table 3-759. Function usart_hardware_flow_cts_config.....	677
Table 3-760. Function usart_dma_receive_config.....	678
Table 3-761. Function usart_dma_transmit_config.....	679
Table 3-762. Function usart_flag_get.....	680
Table 3-763. Function usart_flag_clear.....	681
Table 3-764. Function usart_interrupt_enable.....	682
Table 3-765. Function usart_interrupt_disable.....	683
Table 3-766. Function usart_interrupt_flag_get.....	685
Table 3-767. Function usart_interrupt_flag_clear.....	686
Table 3-768. WWDGT Registers.....	687
Table 3-769. WWDGT firmware function.....	688
Table 3-770. Function wwdgt_deinit.....	688
Table 3-771. Function wwdgt_enable.....	689
Table 3-772. Function wwdgt_counter_update.....	689
Table 3-773. Function wwdgt_config.....	690
Table 3-774. Function wwdgt_interrupt_enable.....	691
Table 3-775. Function wwdgt_flag_get.....	691
Table 3-776. Function wwdgt_flag_clear.....	692
Table 4-1. Revision history.....	694

1. Introduction

This manual introduces firmware library of GD32F30x devices which are 32-bit microcontrollers based on the ARM processor.

The firmware library is a firmware function package, including program, data structure and macro definitions, all the performance features of peripherals of GD32F30x devices are involved in the package. The peripheral driving code and firmware examples on evaluation board are also included in firmware library. Users need not learn each peripherals in details and it's easy to apply a peripheral by using the firmware library. Using firmware library can greatly reduce programming time, thereby reducing development costs.

The driving code of each peripheral is concluded by a group of functions, which describes all the performance features of the peripheral. Users can drive a peripheral by a group of APIs (application programming interface), all the APIs are standardized about the code structure, function name and parameter names.

All the driving source code accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard (example files accord with extended ANSI-C standard), and will not be influenced by differences of IDEs, except the startup files which are written differently according to the IDEs.

The commonly used firmware library includes all the functions of all the peripherals, so the code size and the execution speed may not be the optimal. For most applications, users can use the library functions directly, while for the applications which are strict with the code size and execution speed, the firmware library can be used as the reference resource of how to configure a peripheral, and users adjust the code according to actual needs.

The overall structure of the firmware library user manual is shown as below:

- Rules of user manual and firmware library;
- Firmware library overview;
- Functions and registers descriptions of firmware library.

1.1. Rules of User Manual and Firmware Library

1.1.1. Peripherals

Table 1-1. Peripherals

Peripherals	Descriptions
ADC	Analog-to-digital converter
BKP	Backup registers
CAN	Controller area network
CRC	CRC calculation unit
CTC	Clock trim controller
DAC	Digital-to-analog converter

Peripherals	Descriptions
DBG	Debug
DMA	Direct memory access controller
ENET	Ethernet
EXMC	External memory controller
EXTI	Interrupt/event controller
FMC	Flash memory controller
FWDGT	Free watchdog timer
GPIO/AFIO	General-purpose and alternate-function I/Os
I2C	Inter-integrated circuit interface
MISC	Nested Vectored Interrupt Controller
PMU	Power management unit
RCU	Reset and clock unit
RTC	Real-time Clock
SDIO	Secure digital input/output interface
SPI/I2S	Serial peripheral interface/Inter-IC sound
TIMER	TIMER
USART	Universal synchronous/asynchronous receiver /transmitter
WWDGT	Window watchdog timer
USBFS	Universal serial bus full-speed interface

1.1.2. Naming rules

The firmware library naming rules are shown as below:

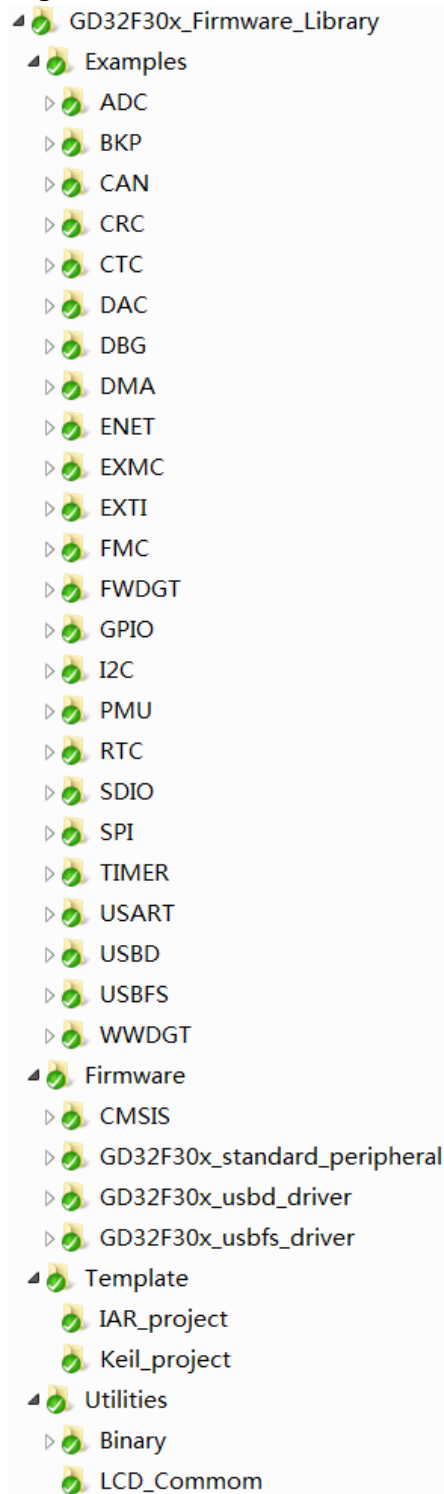
- The peripherals are shortened in XXX format, such as: ADC. More shorten information of peripherals refer to [Peripherals](#);
- The name of sourcefile and header file are started with “gd32f30x_”, such as: gd32f30x_adc.h;
- The constants used only in one file should be defined in the used file; the constants used in many files should be defined in corresponding header file. All the constants are written in uppercase of English letters;
- Registers are handled as constants. The naming of them are written in uppercase of English letters. In most cases, register names are shortened accord with the user manual;
- Variables are written in lowercase, when concluded by several words, underlines should be adapted among words;
- The naming of peripheral functions are started with the peripheral abbreviation added with an underline, when the function name is concluded by several words, underlines should be adapted among words, and all the peripheral functions are written in lowercase.

2. Firmware Library Overview

2.1. File Structure of Firmware Library

GD32F30x_Firmware_Library, the file structure is shown as below:

Figure 2-1. File structure of firmware library of GD32F30x



2.1.1. Examples Folder

Examples folder, each of GD32 peripheral has a subfolder. Each subfolder contains one or more examples of the peripheral, to show how to use the peripheral correctly. Each of the example subfolder includes the files shown as below:

- readme.txt: the description and using guide of the example;

- `gd32f30x_libopt.h`: the header file configures all the peripherals used in the example, included by different “DEFINE” sentences (all the peripherals are enabled by default);
- `gd32f30x_it.c`: the source file include all the interrupt service routines (if no interrupt is used, then all the function bodies are empty);
- `gd32f30x_it.h`: the header file include all the prototypes of the interrupt service routines;
- `systick.c`: the source file include the precise time delay functions by using `systick`;
- `systick.h`: the header file include the prototype of the precise time delay functions by using `systick`;
- `main.c`: example code. Note: all the examples are not influenced by software IDEs.

2.1.2. Firmware Folder

Firmware folder includes all the subfolder and files which are the core part of the firmware:

- CMSIS subfolder includes the Cortex M4 kernel support files, the startup file based on the Cortex M4 kernel processor, the global header file of GD32F30x and system configuration file;
- GD32F30x_standard_peripheral subfolder:
 - Include subfolder includes all the header files of firmware library, users need not modify this folder;
 - Source subfolder includes all the source files of firmware library, users need not modify this folder;
- GD32F30x_usbd_driver subfolder includes all the related files about USB D peripheral:
 - Include subfolder includes the header files of USB D peripheral, users need not modify this folder;
 - Source subfolder includes the source files of USB D peripheral, users need not modify this folder;
- GD32F30x_usbfs_driver subfolder includes all the related files about USB F S peripheral:
 - Include subfolder includes the header files of USB F S peripheral, users need not modify this folder;
 - Source subfolder includes the source files of USB F S peripheral, users need not modify this folder;

Note: All the codes accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard, and will not be influenced by different software IDEs.

2.1.3. Template Folder

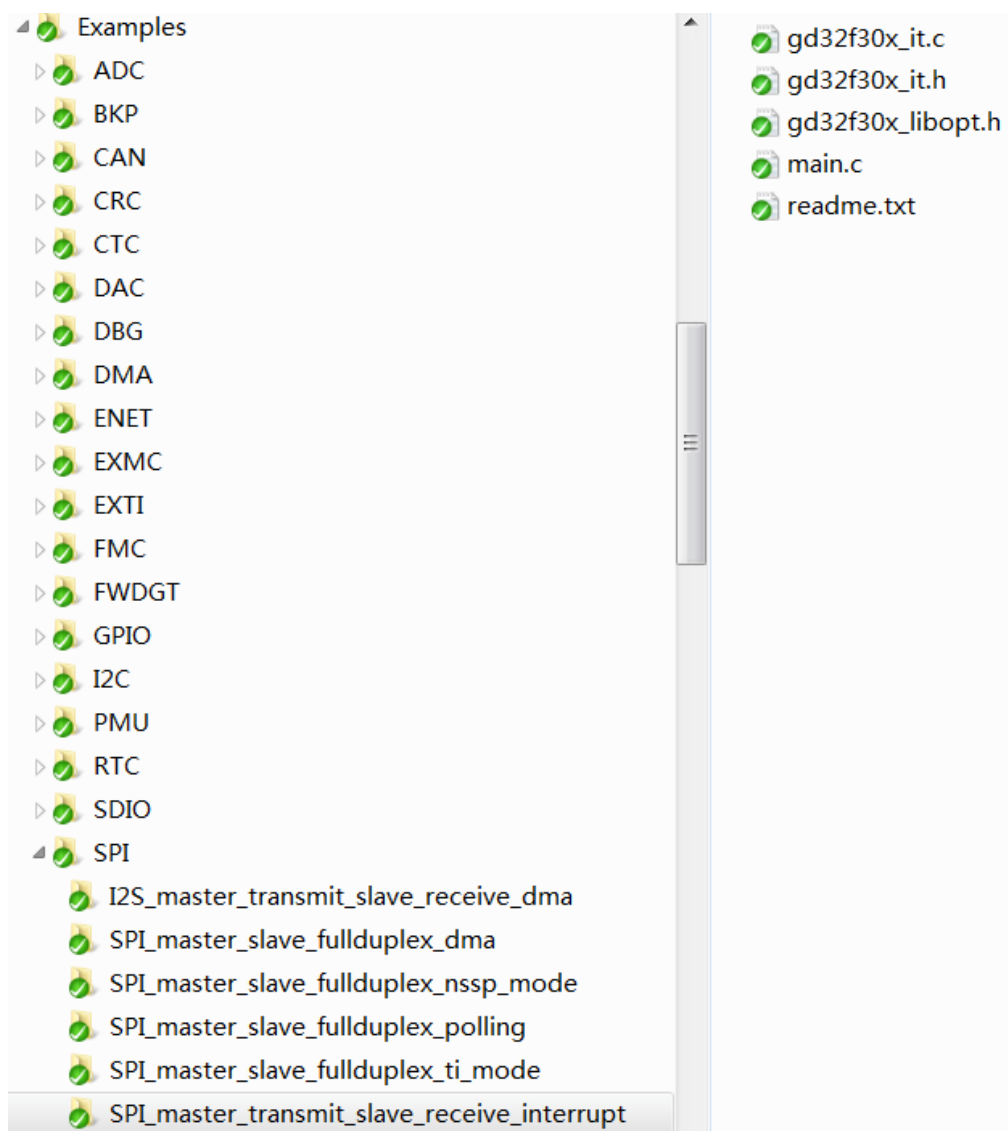
Template folder includes a simple demo of how to use LED, how to print by USART and use key to control, (IAR_project is run in IAR, and Keil_project is run in Keil4). User can use the project template to compile the formware examples, the steps are shown as below:

Select files

Open “Examples” folder, select the module to be tested, such as SPI, open “SPI” folder, select

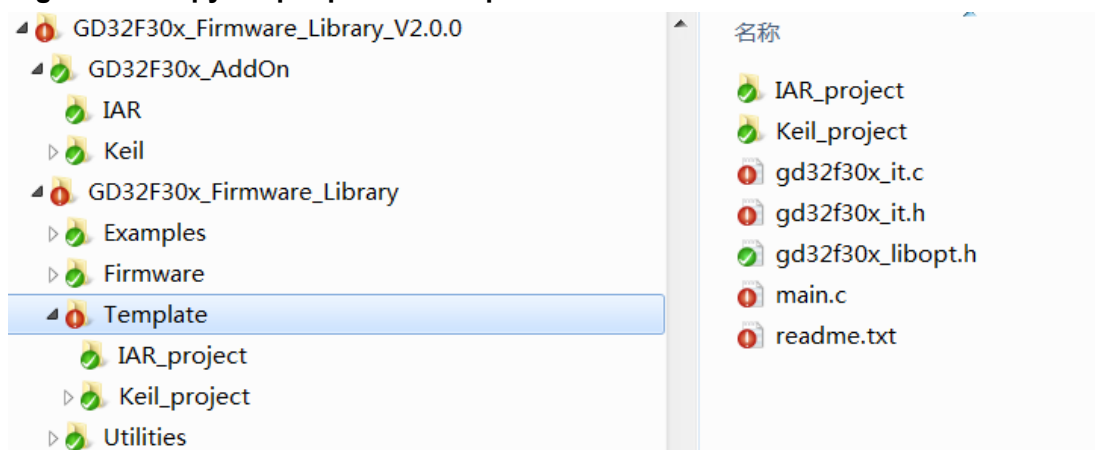
an example of SPI, such as "SPI_master_transmit_slave_receive_interrupt", shown as below:

Figure 2-2. Select peripheral example files



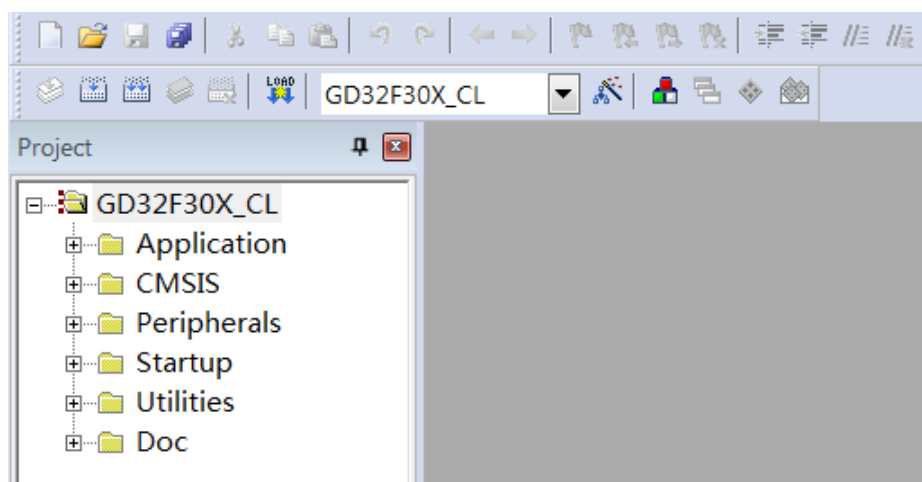
Copy files

Open "Template" folder, keep the folders of "IAR_project" and "Keil_project", and delete the other files, then copy all the files in "SPI_master_transmit_slave_receive_interrupt" folder to the "Template" subfolder, shown as below:

Figure 2-3. Copy the peripheral example files

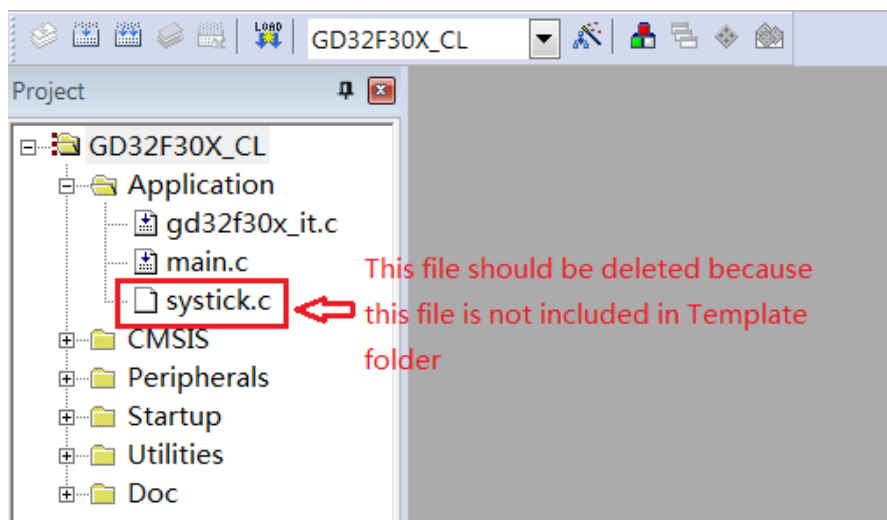
Open a project

GD provides project in Keil and IAR, users can open project in different IDEs according to their need, such as "Keil_project", open \Template\Keil_project\Project.uvproj, shown as below:

Figure 2-4. Open the project file

Because different module and different functions adopt different files, users should add or delete the files in project according to the copied files, shown as below:

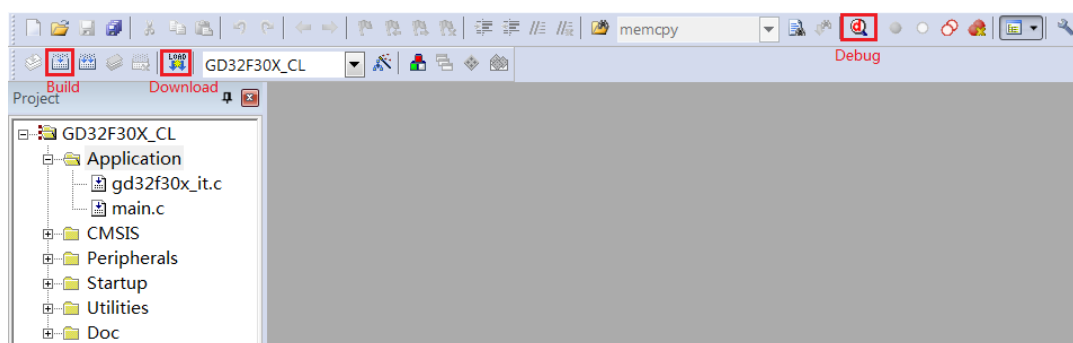
Figure 2-5. Configure project files



Compile-Debug-Download

First compile the project, if there is no error, then select the right jumper cap according to the description of readme, download the project to the target board, and there will be the phenomenon showed accord with the description of readme. The usage of IDE can refer to corresponding software user guide. If users are using Keil, the figure is shown as below:

Figure 2-6. Compile-debug-download



2.1.4. Utilities Folder

Utilities folder includes files about the firmware examples on evaluation board:

- Binary, LCD_Commom subfolders include files for USB tests;
- gd32f30x_eval.h and gd32f307c_lcd_eval.h are related header files of the evaluation board about running the firmware examples;
- gd32f30x_eval.c and gd32f307c_lcd_eval.c are related source files of the evaluation board about running the firmware examples.

Note: All the codes accord with MISRA-C:2004 standard, and will not be influenced by different software IDEs.

2.2. File descriptions of Firmware Library

The major files about the firmware library are listed and described in the table below.

Table 2-1. Function descriptions of Firmware Library

Files	Descriptions
gd32f30x_libopt.h	The header file about all the header files of peripherals. It is the only one file which is necessity to be included in the user's application, to connect the firmware library and the application.
main.c	Example of main function.
gd32f30x_it.h	Header file, including all the prototypes of interrupt service routines.
gd32f30x_it.c	Source files about interrupt service routines of peripherals. User can written his own interrupt functions in this file. For the different interrupt service requests to the same interrupt vector, users can confirm the interrupt source by functions of judging interrupt flags of peripherals. The functions are included in the firmware library.
gd32f30x_xxx.h	The header file of peripheral PPP, including functions about peripheral PPP, and the variables used for functions.
gd32f30x_xxx.c	The C source file for driving peripheral PPP.
systick.h	The header file of systick.c, including prototypes of systick configuration function and delay function.
systick.c	The source file about systick configuration function and delay function.
readme.txt	Description document about how to configure and how to use the firmware example.

3. Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals

3.1. Overview of Firmware Library of Standard Peripherals

The description format of firmware functions are shown as below:

Table 3-1. Peripheral function format of Firmware Library

Function name	Name of peripheral function
Function prototype	Declaration prototype
Function descriptions	Explain the function how to work
Precondition	Requirements should meet before calling this function
The called functions	Other firmware functions called in this function
Input parameter{in}	
Input parameter name	Description
xxxx	Description of input parameters
Output parameter{out}	
Output parameter name	Description
xxxx	Description of output parameters
Return value	
Return value type	The range of return value

3.2. ADC

The 12-bit ADC is an analog-to-digital converter using the successive approximation method. The ADC registers are listed in chapter [3.2.1](#), the ADC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.2.2](#).

3.2.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

ADC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-2. ADC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
ADC_STAT	Status register
ADC_CTL0	Control register 0
ADC_CTL1	Control register 1
ADC_SAMPT0	Sample time register 0
ADC_SAMPT1	Sample time register 1
ADC_IOFFx (x=0..3)	Inserted channel data offset register x(x=0..3)
ADC_WDHT	Watchdog high threshold register
ADC_WDLT	Watchdog low threshold register
ADC_RSQ0	Regular sequence register 0
ADC_RSQ1	Regular sequence register 1
ADC_RSQ2	Regular sequence register 2
ADC_ISQ	Inserted sequence register
ADC_IDATAx	Inserted data register x(x=0..3)
ADC_RDATA	Regular data register
ADC_OVSAMPCTL	Oversample control register

3.2.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

ADC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-3. ADC firmware function

Function name	Function description
adc_deinit	reset ADCx peripheral
adc_enable	enable ADC interface
adc_disable	disable ADC interface
adc_calibration_enable	ADC calibration and reset calibration
adc_dma_mode_enable	enable DMA request
adc_dma_mode_disable	disable DMA request
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable	enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel

Function name	Function description
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable	disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
adc_resolution_config	configure ADC resolution
adc_discontinuous_mode_config	configure ADC discontinuous mode
adc_mode_config	configure the ADC sync mode
adc_special_function_config	enable or disable ADC special function
adc_data_alignment_config	configure ADC data alignment
adc_channel_length_config	configure the length of regular channel group or inserted channel group
adc_regular_channel_config	configure ADC regular channel
adc_inserted_channel_config	configure ADC inserted channel
adc_inserted_channel_offset_config	configure ADC inserted channel offset
adc_external_trigger_config	enable ADC external trigger
adc_external_trigger_source_config	configure ADC external trigger source
adc_software_trigger_enable	enable ADC software trigger
adc_regular_data_read	read ADC regular group data register
adc_inserted_data_read	read ADC inserted group data register
adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read	read the last ADC0 and ADC1 conversion result data in sync mode
adc_flag_get	get the ADC flag bits
adc_flag_clear	clear the ADC flag bits
adc_interrupt_flag_get	get the ADC interrupt bits
adc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the ADC flag
adc_interrupt_enable	enable ADC interrupt
adc_interrupt_disable	disable ADC interrupt
adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable	configure ADC analog watchdog single channel
adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable	configure ADC analog watchdog group channel
adc_watchdog_disable	disable ADC analog watchdog

Function name	Function description
adc_watchdog_threshold_config	configure ADC analog watchdog threshold
adc_oversample_mode_config	configure ADC oversample mode
adc_oversample_mode_enable	enable ADC oversample mode
adc_oversample_mode_disable	disable ADC oversample mode

adc_deinit

The description of adc_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-4. Function adc_deinit

Function name	adc_deinit
Function prototype	void adc_deinit(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	reset ADCx peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset ADC0 */
adc_deinit(ADC0);
```

adc_enable

The description of adc_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-5. Function adc_enable

Function name	adc_enable
Function prototype	void adc_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);

Function descriptions	enable ADCx interface
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 */
```

```
adc_enable(ADC0);
```

adc_disable

The description of adc_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-6. Function adc_disable

Function name	adc_disable
Function prototype	void adc_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	disable ADCx interface
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 */
adc_disable(ADC0);
```

adc_calibration_enable

The description of adc_calibration_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-7. Function adc_calibration_enable

Function name	adc_calibration_enable
Function prototype	void adc_calibration_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	ADCx calibration and reset calibration
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* ADC0 calibration and reset calibration */
adc_calibration_enable(ADC0);
```

adc_dma_mode_enable

The description of adc_dma_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-8. Function adc_dma_mode_enable

Function name	adc_dma_mode_enable
Function prototype	void adc_dma_mode_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	enable ADCx DMA request
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 DMA request */
adc_dma_mode_enable(ADC0);
```

adc_dma_mode_disable

The description of adc_dma_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-9. Function adc_dma_mode_disable

Function name	adc_dma_mode_disable
Function prototype	void adc_dma_mode_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	disable ADCx DMA request
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 DMA request */
```

```
adc_dma_mode_disable(ADC0);
```

adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable

The description of adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-10. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable

Function name	adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable
Function prototype	void adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel */
```

```
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_enable();
```

adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable

The description of adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-11. Function adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable

Function name	adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable
Function prototype	void adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the temperature sensor and Vrefint channel */
```

```
adc_tempsensor_vrefint_disable();
```

adc_resolution_config

The description of adc_resolution_config is shown as below:

Table 3-12. Function adc_resolution_config

Function name	adc_resolution_config
Function prototype	void adc_resolution_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t resolution);
Function descriptions	configure ADC resolution
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
resolution	ADC resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_12B	12-bit ADC resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_10B	10-bit ADC resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_8B	8-bit ADC resolution
ADC_RESOLUTION_6B	6-bit ADC resolution
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 data alignment */
```

```
adc_data_alignment_config(ADC0, ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT);
```

adc_discontinuous_mode_config

The description of `adc_discontinuous_mode_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-13. Function `adc_discontinuous_mode_config`

Function name	<code>adc_discontinuous_mode_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_discontinuous_mode_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, uint8_t length);</code>
Function descriptions	configure ADC discontinuous mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<code>ADCx(x=0..2)</code>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel_group	select the channel group
<code>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</code>	regular channel group
<code>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</code>	inserted channel group
<code>ADC_CHANNEL_DISCON_DISABLE</code>	disable discontinuous mode of regular and inserted channel
Input parameter{in}	
length	number of conversions in discontinuous mode, the number can be 1..8 for regular channel, the number has no effect for inserted channel
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 regular channel group discontinuous mode */
```

```
adc_discontinuous_mode_config(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL, 6);
```

adc_mode_config

The description of adc_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-14. Function adc_mode_config

Function name	adc_mode_config
Function prototype	void adc_mode_config(uint32_t mode);
Function descriptions	configure the ADCs sync mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mode	ADC mode
ADC_MODE_FREE	all the ADC work independently
ADC_DUAL_REGULAR _PARALLEL_INSERTE D_PARALLEL	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined regular parallel + inserted parallel mode
ADC_DUAL_REGULAR _PARALLEL_INSERTE D_ROTATION	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined regular parallel + trigger rotation mode
ADC_DUAL_INSERTE D_PARALLEL_REGUL AR_FOLLOWUP_FAST	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined inserted parallel + follow-up fast mode
ADC_DUAL_INSERTE D_PARALLEL_REGUL AR_FOLLOWUP_SLO W	ADC0 and ADC1 work in combined inserted parallel + follow-up slow mode
ADC_DUAL_INSERTE	ADC0 and ADC1 work in inserted parallel mode only

<i>D_PARALLEL</i>	
<i>ADC_DAUL_REGULAL</i> <i>_PARALLEL</i>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in regular parallel mode only
<i>ADC_DAUL_REGULAL</i> <i>_FOLLOWUP_FAST</i>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in follow-up fast mode only
<i>ADC_DAUL_REGULAL</i> <i>_FOLLOWUP_SLOW</i>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in follow-up slow mode only
<i>ADC_DAUL_INSERTE</i> <i>D_TRIGGER_ROTAT</i> <i>ION</i>	ADC0 and ADC1 work in trigger rotation mode only
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the ADC sync mode */
```

```
adc_mode_config(ADC_MODE_FREE);
```

adc_special_function_config

The description of `adc_special_function_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-15. Function `adc_special_function_config`

Function name	<code>adc_special_function_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_special_function_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t function, ControlStatus newvalue);</code>
Function descriptions	enable or disable ADC special function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	

function	the function to config
<i>ADC_SCAN_MODE</i>	scan mode select
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_AUTO</i>	inserted channel group convert automatically
<i>ADC_CONTINUOUS_MODE</i>	continuous mode select
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 scan mode */
```

```
adc_special_function_config(ADC0, ADC_SCAN_MODE, ENABLE);
```

adc_data_alignment_config

The description of `adc_data_alignment_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-16. Function `adc_data_alignment_config`

Function name	<code>adc_data_alignment_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_data_alignment_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t data_alignment);</code>
Function descriptions	configure ADCx data alignment
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
data_alignment	data alignment select
<i>ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT</i>	LSB alignment
<i>ADC_DATAALIGN_LEFT</i>	MSB alignment
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 data alignment */
```

```
adc_data_alignment_config(ADC0, ADC_DATAALIGN_RIGHT);
```

adc_channel_length_config

The description of adc_channel_length_config is shown as below:

Table 3-17. Function adc_channel_length_config

Function name	adc_channel_length_config
Function prototype	void adc_channel_length_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, uint32_t length);
Function descriptions	configure the length of regular channel group or injected channel group
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel_group	select the channel group
<i>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</i>	regular channel group

<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</i>	inserted channel group
Input parameter{in}	
length	the length of the channel, regular channel 1-16, inserted channel 1-4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the length of ADC0 regular channel */
```

```
adc_channel_length_config(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL, 4);
```

adc_regular_channel_config

The description of adc_regular_channel_config is shown as below:

Table 3-18. Function adc_regular_channel_config

Function name	adc_regular_channel_config
Function prototype	void adc_regular_channel_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t rank, uint8_t adc_channel, uint32_t sample_time);
Function descriptions	configure ADC regular channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
rank	the regular group sequence rank, this parameter must be between 0 to 15
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel	the selected ADC channel
<i>ADC_CHANNEL_x(x=0..17)</i>	ADC Channelx (x=0..17)(x=16 and x=17 are only for ADC0)

Input parameter{in}	
sample_time	the sample time value
ADC_SAMPLETIME_1 POINT5	1.5 cycles
ADC_SAMPLETIME_7 POINT5	7.5 cycles
ADC_SAMPLETIME_1 3POINT5	13.5 cycles
ADC_SAMPLETIME_2 8POINT5	28.5 cycles
ADC_SAMPLETIME_4 1POINT5	41.5 cycles
ADC_SAMPLETIME_5 5POINT5	55.5 cycles
ADC_SAMPLETIME_7 1POINT5	71.5 cycles
ADC_SAMPLETIME_2 39POINT5	239.5 cycles
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 regular channel */
```

```
adc_regular_channel_config(ADC0, 1, ADC_CHANNEL_0, ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5);
```

adc_inserted_channel_config

The description of adc_inserted_channel_config is shown as below:

Table 3-19. Function adc_inserted_channel_config

Function name	adc_inserted_channel_config
Function prototype	void adc_inserted_channel_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t rank, uint8_t adc_channel, uint32_t sample_time);

Function descriptions	configure ADC inserted channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
rank	the inserted group sequencer rank, this parameter must be between 0 to 3
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel	the selected ADC channel
<i>ADC_CHANNEL_x(x=0 ..17)</i>	ADC Channelx (x=0..17)(x=16 and x=17 are only for ADC0)
Input parameter{in}	
sample_time	the sample time value
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_1 POINT5</i>	1.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_7 POINT5</i>	7.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_1 3POINT5</i>	13.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_2 8POINT5</i>	28.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_4 1POINT5</i>	41.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_5 5POINT5</i>	55.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_7 1POINT5</i>	71.5 cycles
<i>ADC_SAMPLETIME_2 39POINT5</i>	239.5 cycles
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 inserted channel */
```

```
adc_inserted_channel_config(ADC0, 1, ADC_CHANNEL_0, ADC_SAMPLETIME_7POINT5);
```

adc_inserted_channel_offset_config

The description of adc_inserted_channel_offset_config is shown as below:

Table 3-20. Function adc_inserted_channel_offset_config

Function name	adc_inserted_channel_offset_config
Function prototype	void adc_inserted_channel_offset_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t inserted_channel, uint16_t offset);
Function descriptions	configure ADC inserted channel offset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
inserted_channel	insert channel select
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_x(x=0..3)	inserted channel, x=0,1,2,3
Input parameter{in}	
offset	the offset data, this parameter must be between 0 to 4095
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 inserted channel offset */
```

```
adc_inserted_channel_offset_config(ADC0, ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0, 100);
```

adc_external_trigger_config

The description of adc_external_trigger_config is shown as below:

Table 3-21. Function adc_external_trigger_config

Function name	adc_external_trigger_config
Function prototype	void adc_external_trigger_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	configure ADC external trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel_group	select the channel group
ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL	regular channel group
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL	inserted channel group
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
ENABLE	enable function
DISABLE	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 inserted channel group external trigger */
```

```
adc_external_trigger_config(ADC0, ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0, ENABLE);
```

adc_external_trigger_source_config

The description of adc_external_trigger_source_config is shown as below:

Table 3-22. Function adc_external_trigger_source_config

Function name	adc_external_trigger_source_config
Function prototype	void adc_external_trigger_source_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group, uint32_t external_trigger_source);
Function descriptions	configure ADC external trigger source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel_group	select the channel group
ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL	regular channel group
ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL	inserted channel group
Input parameter{in}	
external_trigger_source	regular or inserted group trigger source
ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T0_CH0	TIMER0 CH0 event select for regular channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T0_CH1	TIMER0 CH1 event select for regular channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T0_CH2	TIMER0 CH2 event select for regular channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIGGER_REGULAR_T1_CH1	TIMER1 CH1 event select for regular channel

ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T2_TRGO	TIMER2 TRGO event select for regular channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T3_CH3	TIMER3 CH3 event select for regular channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T7_TRGO	TIMER7 TRGO event select for regular channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_EXTI_11	external interrupt line 11 for regular channel
ADC2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T2_CH0	TIMER2 CH0 event select for regular channel
ADC2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T1_CH2	TIMER1 CH2 event select for regular channel
ADC2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T0_CH2	TIMER0 CH2 event select for regular channel
ADC2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T7_CH0	TIMER7 CH0 event select for regular channel
ADC2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T7_TRGO	TIMER7 TRGO event select for regular channel
ADC2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T4_CH0	TIMER4 CH0 event select for regular channel
ADC2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T4_CH2	TIMER4 CH2 event select for regular channel
ADC0_1_2_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_NONE	software trigger for regular channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T0_TRGO	TIMER0 TRGO event select for inserted channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T0_CH3	TIMER0 CH3 event select for inserted channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T1_TRGO	TIMER1 TRGO event select for inserted channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T1_CH0	TIMER1 CH0 event select for inserted channel
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_INSERTED_T2_CH3	TIMER2 CH3 event select for inserted channel

<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_IN SERTEDED_T3_TRGO</i>	TIMER3 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_IN SERTEDED_EXTI_15</i>	external interrupt line 15 for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_IN SERTEDED_T7_CH3</i>	TIMER7 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC2_EXTTRIG_INSE RTED_T0_TRGO</i>	TIMER0 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC2_EXTTRIG_INSE RTED_T0_CH3</i>	TIMER0 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC2_EXTTRIG_INSE RTED_T3_CH2</i>	TIMER3 CH2 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC2_EXTTRIG_INSE RTED_T7_CH1</i>	TIMER7 CH1 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC2_EXTTRIG_INSE RTED_T7_CH3</i>	TIMER7 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC2_EXTTRIG_INSE RTED_T4_TRGO</i>	TIMER4 TRGO event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC2_EXTTRIG_INSE RTED_T4_CH3</i>	TIMER4 CH3 event select for inserted channel
<i>ADC0_1_2_EXTTRIG_I NSERTEDED_NONE</i>	software trigger for inserted channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 regular channel external trigger source */
```

```
adc_external_trigger_source_config(ADC0,ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL,  
ADC0_1_EXTTRIG_REGULAR_T0_CH0);
```

adc_software_trigger_enable

The description of adc_software_trigger_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-23. Function `adc_software_trigger_enable`

Function name	<code>adc_software_trigger_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_software_trigger_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group);</code>
Function descriptions	enable ADC software trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>adc_periph</code>	ADC peripheral
<code>ADCx(x=0..2)</code>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<code>adc_channel_group</code>	select the channel group
<code>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</code>	regular channel group
<code>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</code>	inserted channel group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 regular channel group software trigger */
adc_software_trigger_enable(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL);
```

`adc_regular_data_read`

The description of `adc_regular_data_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-24. Function `adc_regular_data_read`

Function name	<code>adc_regular_data_read</code>
Function prototype	<code>uint16_t adc_regular_data_read(uint32_t adc_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	read ADC regular group data register

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read ADC0 regular group data register */
```

```
uint16_t adc_value = 0;
```

```
adc_value = adc_regular_data_read(ADC0);
```

adc_inserted_data_read

The description of adc_inserted_data_read is shown as below:

Table 3-25. Function adc_inserted_data_read

Function name	adc_inserted_data_read
Function prototype	uint16_t adc_inserted_data_read(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t inserted_channel);
Function descriptions	read ADC inserted group data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
inserted_channel	insert channel select
<i>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_x(x=0..3)</i>	inserted Channelx, x=0,1,2,3

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read ADC0 inserted group data register */
```

```
uint16_t adc_value = 0;
```

```
adc_value = adc_inserted_data_read (ADC0, ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL_0);
```

adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read

The description of adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read is shown as below:

Table 3-26. Function adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read

Function name	adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read
Function prototype	uint32_t adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read the last ADC0 and ADC1 conversion result data in sync mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	ADC conversion value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read the last ADC0 and ADC1 conversion result data in sync mode */
```

```
uint32_t adc_value = 0;
```

```
adc_value = adc_sync_mode_convert_value_read ();
```

adc_flag_get

The description of adc_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-27. Function `adc_flag_get`

Function name	<code>adc_flag_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus adc_flag_get(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_flag);</code>
Function descriptions	get the ADC flag bits
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>adc_periph</code>	ADC peripheral
<code>ADCx(x=0..2)</code>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<code>adc_flag</code>	the adc flag bits
<code>ADC_FLAG_WDE</code>	analog watchdog event flag
<code>ADC_FLAG_EOC</code>	end of group conversion flag
<code>ADC_FLAG_EOIC</code>	end of inserted group conversion flag
<code>ADC_FLAG_STIC</code>	start flag of inserted channel group
<code>ADC_FLAG_STRC</code>	start flag of regular channel group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>FlagStatus</code>	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the ADC0 analog watchdog flag bits*/
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = adc_flag_get(ADC0, ADC_FLAG_WDE);
```

`adc_flag_clear`

The description of `adc_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-28. Function `adc_flag_clear`

Function name	<code>adc_flag_clear</code>
---------------	-----------------------------

Function prototype	<code>void adc_flag_clear(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_flag);</code>
Function descriptions	clear the ADC flag bits
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_flag	the adc flag bits
<i>ADC_FLAG_WDE</i>	analog watchdog event flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOC</i>	end of group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion flag
<i>ADC_FLAG_STIC</i>	start flag of inserted channel group
<i>ADC_FLAG_STRC</i>	start flag of regular channel group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the ADC0 analog watchdog flag bits*/
```

```
adc_flag_clear(ADC0, ADC_FLAG_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_flag_get

The description of `adc_interrupt_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-29. Function `adc_interrupt_flag_get`

Function name	<code>adc_interrupt_flag_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus adc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	get the ADC interrupt bits

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_interrupt	the adc interrupt bits
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the ADC0 analog watchdog interrupt bits*/
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = adc_interrupt_flag_get(ADC0, ADC_INT_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of adc_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-30. Function adc_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	adc_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void adc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_interrupt);
Function descriptions	clear the ADC interrupt bits
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral

<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_interrupt	the adc interrupt bits
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_FLAG_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the ADC0 analog watchdog interrupt bits*/
```

```
adc_interrupt_flag_clear(ADC0,ADC_INT_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_enable

The description of adc_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-31. Function adc_interrupt_enable

Function name	adc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void adc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t adc_interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable ADC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_interrupt	the adc interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt

<i>ADC_INT_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 analog watchdog interrupt */
```

```
adc_interrupt_enable(ADC0,ADC_INT_WDE);
```

adc_interrupt_disable

The description of `adc_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-32. Function `adc_interrupt_disable`

Function name	<code>adc_interrupt_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t adc_periph , uint32_t adc_interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	Disable ADC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_interrupt	the adc interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_WDE</i>	analog watchdog interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOC</i>	end of group conversion interrupt
<i>ADC_INT_EOIC</i>	end of inserted group conversion interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 interrupt */
adc_interrupt_disable(ADC0, ADC_INT_WDE);
```

adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable

The description of adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-33. Function adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable

Function name	adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable
Function prototype	void adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel);
Function descriptions	configure ADC analog watchdog single channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
adc_channel	the selected ADC channel
ADC_CHANNEL_x(x=0..17)	ADC Channelx(x=0..17) (x=16 and x=17 are only for ADC0)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 analog watchdog single channel */
adc_watchdog_single_channel_enable(ADC0, ADC_CHANNEL_1);
```

adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable

The description of adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-34. Function `adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable`

Function name	<code>adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable(uint32_t adc_periph, uint8_t adc_channel_group);</code>
Function descriptions	configure ADC analog watchdog group channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>adc_periph</code>	ADC peripheral
<code>ADCx(x=0..2)</code>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
<code>adc_channel_group</code>	the channel group use analog watchdog
<code>ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL</code>	regular channel group
<code>ADC_INSERTED_CHANNEL</code>	inserted channel group
<code>ADC_REGULAR_INSERTED_CHANNEL</code>	both regular and inserted group
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 analog watchdog group channel */
adc_watchdog_group_channel_enable(ADC0, ADC_REGULAR_CHANNEL);
```

`adc_watchdog_disable`

The description of `adc_watchdog_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-35. Function `adc_watchdog_disable`

Function name	<code>adc_watchdog_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_watchdog_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);</code>

Function descriptions	disable ADC analog watchdog
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(0,1)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 analog watchdog */
```

```
adc_watchdog_disable(ADC0);
```

adc_watchdog_threshold_config

The description of adc_watchdog_threshold_config is shown as below:

Table 3-36. Function adc_watchdog_threshold_config

Function name	adc_watchdog_threshold_config
Function prototype	void adc_watchdog_threshold_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint16_t low_threshold, uint16_t high_threshold);
Function descriptions	configure ADC analog watchdog threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
low_threshold	analog watchdog low threshold, 0..4095
Input parameter{in}	

high_threshold	analog watchdog high threshold, 0..4095
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC0 analog watchdog threshold */
```

```
adc_watchdog_threshold_config(ADC0, 0x0400, 0x0A00);
```

adc_oversample_mode_config

The description of adc_oversample_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-37. Function adc_oversample_mode_config

Function name	adc_oversample_mode_config
Function prototype	void adc_oversample_mode_config(uint32_t adc_periph, uint32_t mode, uint16_t shift, uint8_t ratio);
Function descriptions	configure ADC oversample mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
ADCx(x=0..2)	ADC peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
mode	ADC oversampling mode
ADC_OVERSAMPLING_ALL_CONVERT	all oversampled conversions for a channel are done consecutively after a trigger
ADC_OVERSAMPLING_ONE_CONVERT	each oversampled conversion for a channel needs a trigger
Input parameter{in}	
shift	ADC oversampling shift
ADC_OVERSAMPLING	no oversampling shift

<code>_SHIFT_NONE</code>	
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_1B</code>	1-bit oversampling shift
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_2B</code>	2-bit oversampling shift
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_3B</code>	3-bit oversampling shift
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_4B</code>	4-bit oversampling shift
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_5B</code>	5-bit oversampling shift
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_6B</code>	6-bit oversampling shift
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_7B</code>	7-bit oversampling shift
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_8B</code>	8-bit oversampling shift
Input parameter{in}	
ratio	ADC oversampling ratio
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL2</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 2
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL4</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 4
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL8</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 8
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL16</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 16
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL32</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 32
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL64</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 64
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL128</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 128
<code>ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL256</code>	oversampling ratio multiple 256

<code>_RATIO_MUL256</code>	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ADC1 oversample mode: 16 times sample, 4 bits shift */
adc_oversample_mode_config(ADC1, ADC_OVERSAMPLING_ALL_CONVERT,
ADC_OVERSAMPLING_SHIFT_4B, ADC_OVERSAMPLING_RATIO_MUL16);
```

adc_oversample_mode_enable

The description of `adc_oversample_mode_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-38. Function `adc_oversample_mode_enable`

Function name	<code>adc_oversample_mode_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void adc_oversample_mode_enable(uint32_t adc_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	enable ADC oversample mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>adc_periph</code>	ADC peripheral
<code>ADCx(x=0..2)</code>	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable ADC0 oversample mode */
adc_oversample_mode_enable (ADC0);
```

adc_oversample_mode_disable

The description of adc_oversample_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-39. Function adc_oversample_mode_disable

Function name	adc_oversample_mode_disable
Function prototype	void adc_oversample_mode_disable(uint32_t adc_periph);
Function descriptions	disable ADC oversample mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_periph	ADC peripheral
<i>ADCx(x=0..2)</i>	ADC peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable ADC0 oversample mode */
adc_oversample_mode_disable (ADC0);
```

3.3. BKP

The Backup registers are located in the Backup domain that remains powered-on by V_{BAT} even if V_{DD} power is shut down, they are forty two 16-bit (84 bytes) registers for data protection of user application data, and the wake-up action from Standby mode or system reset do not affect these registers. The BKP registers are listed in chapter [3.3.1](#), the BKP firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.3.2](#).

3.3.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

BKP registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-40. BKP Registers

Registers	Descriptions
BKP_DATAx (x=0..41)	Backup data register
BKP_OCTL	RTC signal output control register
BKP_TPCTL	Tamper pin control register
BKP_TPCS	Tamper control and status register

3.3.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

BKP firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-41. BKP firmware function

Function name	Function description
bkp_deinit	reset data registers
bkp_write_data	write BKP data register
bkp_read_data	read BKP data register
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable	enable RTC clock calibration output
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable	disable RTC clock calibration output
bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable	enable RTC alarm or second signal output
bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable	disable RTC alarm or second signal output
bkp_rtc_output_select	select RTC output, the RTC output can be select as alarm pulse or second pulse
bkp_rtc_clock_output_select	select RTC clock output
bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction	select RTC clock calibration direction
bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set	set RTC clock calibration value
bkp_tamper_detection_enable	enable tamper detection
bkp_tamper_detection_disable	disable tamper detection
bkp_tamper_active_level_set	set tamper pin active level
bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable	enable tamper interrupt
bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable	disable tamper interrupt
bkp_flag_get	get bkp flag state

Function name	Function description
bkp_flag_clear	clear bkp flag state
bkp_interrupt_flag_get	get bkp interrupt flag state
bkp_interrupt_flag_clear	clear bkp interrupt flag state

bkp_deinit

The description of bkp_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-42. Function bkp_deinit

Function name	bkp_deinit
Function prototype	void bkp_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset data registers
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_bkp_reset_enable / rcu_bkp_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset BKP registers */
```

```
bkp_deinit ();
```

bkp_write_data

The description of bkp_write_data is shown as below:

Table 3-43. Function bkp_write_data

Function name	bkp_write_data
Function prototype	void bkp_write_data(bkp_data_register_enum register_number, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	write BKP data register

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
register_number	refer to bkp_data_register_enum
<i>BKP_DATA_x</i> (<i>x</i> = 0..41)	bkp data register number <i>x</i>
Input parameter{in}	
data	the data to be write in BKP data register
<i>0-0xffff</i>	data value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write BKP data register */
```

```
bkp_write_data (BKP_DATA_0, 0x1226);
```

bkp_read_data

The description of bkp_read_data is shown as below:

Table 3-44. Function bkp_data_read

Function name	bkp_read_data
Function prototype	uint16_t bkp_read_data(bkp_data_register_enum register_number);
Function descriptions	read BKP data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
register_number	refer to bkp_data_register_enum
<i>BKP_DATA_x</i> (<i>x</i> = 0..41)	bkp data register number <i>x</i>
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0-0xffff

Example:

```
/* read BKP data register */
```

```
uint16_t data;
```

```
data = bkp_read_data (BKP_DATA_0);
```

bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable

The description of bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-45. Function bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable

Function name	bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable
Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable RTC clock calibration output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable RTC clock calibration output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_enable();
```

bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable

The description of bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-46. Function bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable

Function name	bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable
---------------	------------------------------------

Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable RTC clock calibration output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RTC clock calibration output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_calibration_output_disable();
```

bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable

The description of bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-47. Function bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable

Function name	bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable
Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable RTC alarm or second signal output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable RTC alarm or second signal output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_signal_output_enable();
```

bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable

The description of bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-48. Function bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable

Function name	bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable
Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable RTC alarm or second signal output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RTC alarm or second signal output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_signal_output_disable();
```

bkp_rtc_output_select

The description of bkp_rtc_output_select is shown as below:

Table 3-49. Function bkp_rtc_output_select

Function name	bkp_rtc_output_select
Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_output_select(uint16_t outputsel);
Function descriptions	select RTC output, the RTC output can be select as alarm pulse or second pulse
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
outputsel	RTC output selection
<i>RTC_OUTPUT_ALARM_PULSE</i>	RTC alarm pulse is selected as the RTC output
<i>RTC_OUTPUT_SECONDS_PULSE</i>	RTC second pulse is selected as the RTC output
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select RTC output alarm signal output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_output_select(RTC_OUTPUT_ALARM_PULSE);
```

bkp_rtc_clock_output_select

The description of bkp_rtc_clock_output_select is shown as below:

Table 3-50. Function bkp_rtc_clock_output_select

Function name	bkp_rtc_clock_output_select
Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_clock_output_select(uint16_t clocksel);
Function descriptions	select RTC clock output, the RTC clock output can be select as divided 64 or no division
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
clocksel	RTC clock output selection
<i>RTC_CLOCK_DIV_64</i>	RTC clock divided 64 is selected as the RTC clock output
<i>RTC_CLOCK_DIV_1</i>	RTC clock is selected as the RTC clock output
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* select RTC clock divided 64 to output */
```

```
bkp_rtc_clock_output_select (RTC_CLOCK_DIV_64);
```

bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction

The description of bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction is shown as below:

Table 3-51. Function bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction

Function name	bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction
Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction(uint16_t direction);
Function descriptions	select RTC clock calibration direction, the RTC clock calibration direction can be select as slowed down or speed up
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	RTC clock calibration direction
<i>RTC_CLOCK_SLOWED_DOWN</i>	RTC clock slowed down
<i>RTC_CLOCK_SPEED_UP</i>	RTC clock speed up
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set RTC clock slowed down */
```

```
bkp_rtc_clock_calibration_direction (RTC_CLOCK_SLOWED_DOWN);
```

bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set

The description of bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set is shown as below:

Table 3-52. Function bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set

Function name	bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set
Function prototype	void bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set(uint8_t value);
Function descriptions	set RTC clock calibration value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
value	RTC clock calibration value
0x00 - 0x7F	value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set RTC clock calibration value */
bkp_rtc_calibration_value_set (0x7f);
```

bkp_tamper_detection_enable

The description of bkp_tamper_detection_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-53. Function bkp_tamper_detection_enable

Function name	bkp_tamper_detection_enable
Function prototype	void bkp_tamper_detection_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable tamper detection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable tamper pin detection */
```

```
bkp_tamper_detection_enable();
```

bkp_tamper_detection_disable

The description of bkp_tamper_detection_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-54. Function bkp_tamper_detection_disable

Function name	bkp_tamper_detection_disable
Function prototype	void bkp_tamper_detection_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable tamper detection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable tamper pin detection */
```

```
bkp_tamper_detection_disable();
```

bkp_tamper_active_level_set

The description of bkp_tamper_active_level_set is shown as below:

Table 3-55. Function bkp_tamper_active_level_set

Function name	bkp_tamper_active_level_set
Function prototype	void bkp_tamper_active_level_set(uint16_t level);
Function descriptions	set tamper pin active level

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
level	tamper pin active level
TAMPER_PIN_ACTIVE_HIGH	the tamper pin is active high
TAMPER_PIN_ACTIVE_LOW	the tamper pin is active low
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set tamper pin active level high */
```

```
bkp_tamper_active_level_set (TAMPER_PIN_ACTIVE_HIGH);
```

bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable

The description of bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-56. Function bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable

Function name	bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable tamper interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable tamper pin interrupt */

bkp_tamper_interrupt_enable ();
```

bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable

The description of bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-57. Function bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable

Function name	bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable tamper interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable tamper pin interrupt */

bkp_tamper_interrupt_disable ();
```

bkp_flag_get

The description of bkp_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-58. Function bkp_flag_get

Function name	bkp_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus bkp_flag_get(uint16_t flag);
Function descriptions	get bkp flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
flag	bkp flag state
<i>BKP_FLAG_TAMPER</i> <i>R</i>	tamper event flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get BKP flag state */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = bkp_flag_get (BKP_FLAG_TAMPER);
```

bkp_flag_clear

The description of bkp_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-59. Function bkp_flag_clear

Function name	bkp_flag_clear
Function prototype	void bkp_flag_clear(uint16_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear bkp flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	bkp flag state
<i>BKP_FLAG_TAMPER</i> <i>R</i>	tamper event flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear BKP flag state */
```

```
bkp_flag_clear (BKP_FLAG_TAMPER);
```

bkp_interrupt_flag_get

The description of bkp_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-60. Function bkp_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	bkp_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus bkp_interrupt_flag_get(uint16_t flag);
Function descriptions	get bkp interrupt flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	bkp interrupt flag state
BKP_INT_FLAG_TAMPER	tamper interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get BKP interrupt flag state */
```

```
bkp_interrupt_flag_get (BKP_INT_FLAG_TAMPER);
```

bkp_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of bkp_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-61. Function bkp_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	bkp_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void bkp_interrupt_flag_clear(uint16_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear bkp interrupt flag state
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	bkp interrupt flag state
<i>BKP_INT_FLAG_TAMPER</i>	tamper interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear BKP interrupt flag state */
```

```
bkp_interrupt_flag_clear (BKP_INT_FLAG_TAMPER);
```

3.4. CAN

CAN bus (for Controller Area Network) is a bus standard designed to allow microcontrollers and devices to communicate with each other without a host computer. The CAN registers are listed in chapter [3.4.1](#), the CAN firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.4.2](#).

3.4.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CAN registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-62. CAN Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CAN_CTL	Control register
CAN_STAT	Status register
CAN_TSTAT	Transmit status register
CAN_RFIFO0	Receive message FIFO0 register
CAN_RFIFO1	Receive message FIFO1 register
CAN_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
CAN_ERR	Error register
CAN_BT	Bit timing register

Registers	Descriptions
CAN_TMIx	Transmit mailbox identifier register
CAN_TMPx	Transmit mailbox property register
CAN_TMDATA0x	Transmit mailbox data0 register
CAN_TMDATA1x	Transmit mailbox data1 register
CAN_RFIFOMIx	Receive FIFO mailbox identifier register
CAN_RFIFOMPx	Receive FIFO mailbox property register
CAN_RFIFOMDAT A0x	Receive FIFO mailbox data0 register
CAN_RFIFOMDAT A1x	Receive FIFO mailbox data1 register
CAN_FCTL	Filter control register
CAN_FMCFG	Filter mode configuration register
CAN_FSCFG	Filter scale configuration register
CAN_FAFIFO	Filter associated FIFO register
CAN_FW	Filter working register
CAN_FxDATAy	Filter x data y register

3.4.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CAN firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-63. CAN firmware function

Function name	Function description
can_deinit	deinitialize CAN
can_struct_para_init	initialize CAN parameter struct with a default value
can_init	initialize CAN
can_filter_init	initialize CAN filter
can1_filter_start_bank	set can1 filter start bank number
can_debug_freeze_enable	CAN debug freeze enable
can_debug_freeze_disable	CAN debug freeze disable

Function name	Function description
can_time_trigger_mode_enable	CAN time trigger mode enable
can_time_trigger_mode_disable	CAN time trigger mode disable
can_message_transmit	transmit CAN message
can_transmit_states	get CAN transmit state
can_transmission_stop	stop CAN transmission
can_message_receive	CAN receive message
can_fifo_release	CAN release fifo
can_receive_message_length_get	CAN receive message length
can_working_mode_set	CAN working mode
can_wakeup	CAN wakeup from sleep mode
can_error_get	CAN get error
can_receive_error_number_get	get CAN receive error number
can_transmit_error_number_get	get CAN transmit error number
can_interrupt_enable	CAN interrupt enable
can_interrupt_disable	CAN interrupt disable
can_flag_get	CAN get flag state
can_flag_clear	CAN clear flag state
can_interrupt_flag_get	CAN get interrupt flag state
can_interrupt_flag_clear	CAN clear interrupt flag state

Structure can_parameter_struct

Table 3-64. Structure can_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
working_mode	CAN working mode
resync_jump_width	CAN resynchronization jump width
time_segment_1	time segment 1
time_segment_2	time segment 2
time_triggered	time triggered communication mode

auto_bus_off_recovery	automatic bus-off recovery
auto_wake_up	automatic wake-up mode
auto_retrans	automatic retransmission mode
rec_fifo_overwrite	receive FIFO overwrite mode
trans_fifo_order	transmit FIFO order
prescaler	baudrate prescaler

Structure can_trasnmit_message_struct

Table 3-65. Structure can_trasnmit_message_struct

Member name	Function description
tx_sfid	standard format frame identifier
tx_efid	extended format frame identifier
tx_ff	format of frame, standard or extended format
tx_ft	type of frame, data or remote
tx_dlen	data length
tx_data[8]	transmit data

Structure can_receive_message_struct

Table 3-66. Structure can_receive_message_struct

Member name	Function description
rx_sfid	standard format frame identifier
rx_efid	extended format frame identifier
rx_ff	format of frame, standard or extended format
rx_ft	type of frame, data or remote
rx_dlen	data length
rx_data[8]	receive data
rx_fi	filtering index

Structure can_filter_parameter_struct

Table 3-67. Structure can_filter_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
filter_list_high	filter list number high bits
filter_list_low	filter list number low bits
filter_mask_high	filter mask number high bits
filter_mask_low	filter mask number low bits
filter_fifo_number	receive FIFO associated with the filter
filter_number	filter number
filter_mode	filter mode, list or mask
filter_bits	filter scale
filter_enable	filter work or not

can_deinit

The description of can_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-68. Function can_deinit

Function name	can_deinit
Function prototype	void can_deinit(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	deinitialize CAN
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_deinit

Function prototype	void can_deinit(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	deinitialize CAN
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 deinitialize*/
```

```
can_deinit (CAN0);
```

can_struct_para_init

The description of can_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-69. Function can_struct_para_init

Function name	can_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void can_struct_para_init(can_struct_type_enum type, void* p_struct)
Function descriptions	initialize CAN parameter struct with a default value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
type	CAN peripheral
<i>CAN_INIT_STRUCT</i>	CAN initialize parameters struct
<i>CAN_FILTER_STRUCT</i>	CAN filter parameters struct
<i>CAN_TX_MESSAGE_STRUCT</i>	CAN transmit message struct

<i>CAN_RX_MESSAGE_STRUCT</i>	CAN receive message struct
Output parameter{out}	
p_struct	the struct pointer that needs initialize
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void can_struct_para_init(can_struct_type_enum type, void* p_struct)
Function descriptions	initialize CAN parameter struct with a default value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
type	CAN peripheral
<i>CAN_INIT_STRUCT</i>	CAN initilize parameters struct
<i>CAN_FILTER_STRUCT</i>	CAN filter parameters struct
<i>CAN_TX_MESSAGE_STRUCT</i>	CAN transmit message struct
<i>CAN_RX_MESSAGE_STRUCT</i>	CAN receive message struct
Output parameter{out}	
p_struct	the struct pointer that needs initialize
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
can_parameter_struct can_init;
```

```
can_struct_para_init (CAN_INIT_STRUCT, &can_init);
```

can_init

The description of can_init is shown as below:

Table 3-70. Function can_init

Function name	can_init
Function prototype	ErrStatus can_init(uint32_t can_periph, can_parameter_struct* can_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
can_parameter_init	CAN parameter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-64. Structure can_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS / ERROR
Function name	can_init
Function prototype	ErrStatus can_init(uint32_t can_periph, can_parameter_struct* can_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
can_parameter_init	CAN parameter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-64. Structure can_parameter_struct

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS / ERROR
Function name	can_init
Function prototype	ErrStatus can_init(uint32_t can_periph, can_parameter_struct* can_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
can_parameter_init	CAN parameter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-64. Structure can_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS / ERROR
Function name	can_init
Function prototype	ErrStatus can_init(uint32_t can_periph, can_parameter_struct* can_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
can_parameter_init	CAN parameter initialization stuct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-64. Structure can_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS / ERROR

Example:

```
/* CAN0 initialize*/
```

```
can_init (CAN0);
```

can_filter_init

The description of can_filter_init is shown as below:

Table 3-71. Function can_filter_init

Function name	can_filter_init
Function prototype	void can_filter_init(can_filter_parameter_struct* can_filter_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN filter
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_filter_parameter_i nit	CAN filter initialization stuct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-67. Structure can_filter_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_filter_init
Function prototype	void can_filter_init(can_filter_parameter_struct* can_filter_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN filter

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_filter_parameter_init	CAN filter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-67. Structure can filter parameter struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_filter_init
Function prototype	void can_filter_init(can_filter_parameter_struct* can_filter_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN filter
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_filter_parameter_init	CAN filter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-67. Structure can filter parameter struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_filter_init
Function prototype	void can_filter_init(can_filter_parameter_struct* can_filter_parameter_init);
Function descriptions	initialize CAN filter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_filter_parameter_init	CAN filter initialization struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-67. Structure can filter parameter struct

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize CAN filter */
```

```
can_filter_init(&can_filter);
```

Function name	can_filter_mask_mode_init
Function prototype	void can_filter_mask_mode_init(uint32_t id, uint32_t mask, can_format_fifo_enum format_fifo, uint16_t filter_number)
Function descriptions	CAN filter mask mode initialization
Precondition	-
The called functions	can_filter_init()
Input parameter{in}	
id	value range (0x00000000 - 0x1FFFFFFF)
Input parameter{in}	
mask	value range (0x00000000 - 0x1FFFFFFF)
Input parameter{in}	
format_fifo	format and fifo states, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
CAN_STANDARD_FIF O0	standard format and store to FIFO0
CAN_STANDARD_FIF O1	standard format and store to FIFO1
CAN_EXTENDED_FIF O0	extended format and store to FIFO0
CAN_EXTENDED_FIF O1	extended format and store to FIFO1
Input parameter{in}	
filter_number	filter sequence number, value range(0x00 - 0x1C)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
can_filter_mask_mode_init(0x11, 0x11, CAN_STANDARD_FIFO0, 0);
```

can1_filter_start_bank

The description of can1_filter_start_bank is shown as below:

Table 3-72. Function can1_filter_start_bank

Function name	can1_filter_start_bank
Function prototype	void can1_filter_start_bank(uint8_t start_bank);
Function descriptions	set CAN1 fliter start bank number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
start_bank	CAN1 start bank number
1..27	start number
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set CAN1 fliter start bank number 15*/
```

```
can1_filter_start_bank (15);
```

can_debug_freeze_enable

The description of can_debug_freeze_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-73. Function can_debug_freeze_enable

Function name	can_debug_freeze_enable
---------------	-------------------------

Function prototype	void can_debug_freeze_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	enable CAN debug freeze
Precondition	-
The called functions	dbg_periph_enable
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_debug_freeze_enable
Function prototype	void can_debug_freeze_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	enable CAN debug freeze
Precondition	-
The called functions	dbg_periph_enable
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CAN0 debug freeze */
```

```
can_debug_freeze_enable (CAN0);
```

can_debug_freeze_disable

The description of can_debug_freeze_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-74. Function can_debug_freeze_disable

Function name	can_debug_freeze_disable
Function prototype	void can_debug_freeze_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	disable CAN debug freeze
Precondition	-
The called functions	dbg_periph_disable
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_debug_freeze_disable
Function prototype	void can_debug_freeze_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	disable CAN debug freeze
Precondition	-
The called functions	dbg_periph_disable
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CAN0 debug freeze */
can_debug_freeze_disable (CAN0);
```

can_time_trigger_mode_enable

The description of can_time_trigger_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-75. Function can_time_trigger_mode_enable

Function name	can_time_trigger_mode_enable
Function prototype	void can_time_trigger_mode_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	enable CAN time trigger mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_time_trigger_mode_enable
Function prototype	void can_time_trigger_mode_enable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	enable CAN time trigger mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CAN0 time trigger mode */
```

```
can_time_trigger_mode_enable (CAN0);
```

can_time_trigger_mode_disable

The description of can_time_trigger_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-76. Function can_time_trigger_mode_disable

Function name	can_time_trigger_mode_disable
Function prototype	void can_time_trigger_mode_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	disable CAN time trigger mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_time_trigger_mode_disable
Function prototype	void can_time_trigger_mode_disable(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	disable CAN time trigger mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* disable CAN0 time trigger mode */
```

```
can_time_trigger_mode_disable (CAN0);
```

can_message_transmit

The description of can_message_transmit is shown as below:

Table 3-77. Function can_message_transmit

Function name	can_message_transmit
Function prototype	uint8_t can_message_transmit(uint32_t can_periph, can_trasmit_message_struct* transmit_message);
Function descriptions	transmit CAN message
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
transmit_message	CAN transmit message stuct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-65. Structure can_trasmit_message_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0x00-0x03
Function name	can_message_transmit
Function prototype	uint8_t can_message_transmit(uint32_t can_periph, can_trasmit_message_struct* transmit_message);
Function descriptions	transmit CAN message
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
transmit_message	CAN transmit message struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-65. Structure can transmit message struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0x00-0x03
Function name	can_message_transmit
Function prototype	uint8_t can_message_transmit(uint32_t can_periph, can_transmit_message_struct* transmit_message);
Function descriptions	transmit CAN message
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
transmit_message	CAN transmit message struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-65. Structure can transmit message struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0x00-0x03
Function name	can_message_transmit

Function prototype	uint8_t can_message_transmit(uint32_t can_periph, can_transmit_message_struct* transmit_message);
Function descriptions	transmit CAN message
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
transmit_message	CAN transmit message struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-65. Structure can_transmit_message struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0x00-0x03

Example:

```
/* CAN0 transmit message and return the mailbox number*/
```

```
uint8_t transmit_mailbox = 0;
```

```
transmit_mailbox = can_message_transmit(CAN0, &transmit_message);
```

can_transmit_states

The description of can_transmit_states is shown as below:

Table 3-78. Function can_transmit_states

Function name	can_transmit_states
Function prototype	can_transmit_state_enum can_transmit_states(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mailbox_number);
Function descriptions	get CAN transmit state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
mailbox_number	Mailbox number
CAN_MAILBOXx	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
can_transmit_state_enum	0..4
Function name	can_transmit_states
Function prototype	can_transmit_state_enum can_transmit_states(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mailbox_number);
Function descriptions	get CAN transmit state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
mailbox_number	Mailbox number
CAN_MAILBOXx	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
can_transmit_state_enum	0..4

Example:

```
/* CAN0 mailbox0 transmit state */
```

```
uint8_t transmit_state = 0;
```

```
transmit_state = can_transmit_states (CAN0, CAN_MAILBOX0);
```

can_transmission_stop

The description of can_transmission_stop is shown as below:

Table 3-79. Function can_transmission_stop

Function name	can_transmission_stop
Function prototype	void can_transmission_stop(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mailbox_number);
Function descriptions	stop CAN transmission
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
mailbox_number	Mailbox number
CAN_MAILBOXx	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_transmission_stop
Function prototype	void can_transmission_stop(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t mailbox_number);
Function descriptions	stop CAN transmission
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral

CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
mailbox_number	Mailbox number
CAN_MAILBOXx	CAN_MAILBOXx(x=0,1,2)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* stop CAN0 mailbox0 transmission */
```

```
can_transmission_stop (CAN0, CAN_MAILBOX0);
```

can_message_receive

The description of can_message_receive is shown as below:

Table 3-80. Function can_message_receive

Function name	can_message_receive
Function prototype	void can_message_receive(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number, can_receive_message_struct* receive_message);
Function descriptions	CAN receive message
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number
CAN_FIFOx	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
receive_message	CAN message receive struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-66. Structure can_receive_message_struct

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_message_receive
Function prototype	void can_message_receive(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number, can_receive_message_struct* receive_message);
Function descriptions	CAN receive message
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number
CAN_FIFOx	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
receive_message	CAN message receive struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-66. Structure can_receive_message_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_message_receive
Function prototype	void can_message_receive(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number, can_receive_message_struct* receive_message);
Function descriptions	CAN receive message
Precondition	can_struct_para_init()
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number
CAN_FIFOx	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
receive_message	CAN message receive struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-66. Structure can receive message struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_message_receive
Function prototype	void can_message_receive(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number, can_receive_message_struct* receive_message);
Function descriptions	CAN receive message
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number
CAN_FIFOx	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
receive_message	CAN message receive struct, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-66. Structure can receive message struct
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 FIFO0 receive message */
```

```
can_message_receive(CAN0, CAN_FIFO0, &receive_message);
```

can_fifo_release

The description of can_fifo_release is shown as below:

Table 3-81. Function can_fifo_release

Function name	can_fifo_release
Function prototype	void can_fifo_release(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number);
Function descriptions	release FIFO0
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number
CAN_FIFOx	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_fifo_release
Function prototype	void can_fifo_release(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number);
Function descriptions	release FIFO0
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number
<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 release FIFO0*/
```

```
can_fifo_release (CAN0, CAN_FIFO0);
```

can_receive_message_length_get

The description of can_receive_message_length_get is shown as below:

Table 3-82. Function can_receive_message_length_get

Function name	can_receive_message_length_get
Function prototype	uint8_t can_receive_message_length_get(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number);
Function descriptions	CAN receive message length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number

<i>CAN_FIFOx</i>	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..3
Function name	can_receive_message_length_get
Function prototype	uint8_t can_receive_message_length_get(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t fifo_number);
Function descriptions	CAN receive message length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
fifo_number	Fifo number
CAN_FIFOx	CAN_FIFOx(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..3

Example:

```
/* CAN0 FIFO0 receive message length */
```

```
uint8_t frame_number = 0;
```

```
frame_number = can_receive_message_length_get (CAN0, CAN_FIFO0);
```

can_working_mode_set

The description of can_working_mode_set is shown as below:

Table 3-83. Function can_working_mode_set

Function name	can_working_mode_set
Function prototype	ErrStatus can_working_mode_set(uint32_t can_periph, uint8_t working_mode);
Function descriptions	set CAN working mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
can_working_mode	Mode select
CAN_MODE_INITIALIZE	Initialize mode
CAN_MODE_NORMAL	Normal mode
CAN_MODE_SLEEP	Sleep mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS / ERROR

Example:

```
/* set CAN0 working at initialize mode */
```

```
can_working_mode_set(CAN0, CAN_MODE_INITIALIZE);
```

can_wakeup

The description of can_wakeup is shown as below:

Table 3-84. Function can_wakeup

Function name	can_wakeup
Function prototype	ErrStatus can_wakeup(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	wake up CAN

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS / ERROR
Function name	can_wakeup
Function prototype	ErrStatus can_wakeup(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	wake up CAN
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS / ERROR

Example:

```
/* wake up CAN0 */
can_wakeup (CAN0);
```

can_error_get

The description of can_error_get is shown as below:

Table 3-85. Function can_error_get

Function name	can_error_get
---------------	---------------

Function prototype	can_error_enum can_error_get(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	get CAN error type
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
can_error_enum	0..7
Function name	can_error_get
Function prototype	can_error_enum can_error_get(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	get CAN error type
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
can_error_enum	0..7

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 error type */
```

```
can_error_get (CAN0);
```

can_receive_error_number_get

The description of can_receive_error_number_get is shown as below:

Table 3-86. Function can_receive_error_number_get

Function name	can_receive_error_number_get
Function prototype	uint8_t can_receive_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	get CAN receive error number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255
Function name	can_receive_error_number_get
Function prototype	uint8_t can_receive_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	get CAN receive error number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255

Example:

```

/* get CAN0 receive error number */
can_receive_error_number_get (CAN0);

```

can_transmit_error_number_get

The description of can_transmit_error_number_get is shown as below:

Table 3-87. Function can_transmit_error_number_get

Function name	can_transmit_error_number_get
Function prototype	uint8_t can_transmit_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	get CAN transmit error number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255
Function name	can_transmit_error_number_get
Function prototype	uint8_t can_transmit_error_number_get(uint32_t can_periph);
Function descriptions	get CAN transmit error number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 transmit error number */
```

```
can_transmit_error_number_get (CAN0);
```

can_interrupt_enable

The description of can_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-88. Function can_interrupt_enable

Function name	can_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void can_interrupt_enable(uint32_t can_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable CAN interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	Interrupt type
CAN_INT_TME	transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFNE0	receive FIFO0 not empty interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFF0	receive FIFO0 full interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFO0	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFNE1	receive FIFO1 not empty interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFF1	receive FIFO1 full interrupt enable
CAN_INT_RFO1	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt enable
CAN_INT_WERR	warning error interrupt enable
CAN_INT_PERR	passive error interrupt enable
CAN_INT_BO	bus-off interrupt enable
CAN_INT_ERRN	error number interrupt enable
CAN_INT_ERR	error interrupt enable
CAN_INT_WU	wakeup interrupt enable

<i>CAN_INT_SLPW</i>	sleep working interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	can_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void can_interrupt_enable(uint32_t can_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable CAN interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	Interrupt type
<i>CAN_INT_TME</i>	transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE0</i>	receive FIFO0 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE1</i>	receive FIFO1 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_WERR</i>	warning error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_PERR</i>	passive error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_BO</i>	bus-off interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_ERRN</i>	error number interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_WU</i>	wakeup interrupt enable

<i>CAN_INT_SLPW</i>	sleep working interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable */
```

```
can_interrupt_enable (CAN0, CAN_INT_TME);
```

can_interrupt_disable

The description of can_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-89. Function can_interrupt_disable

Function name	can_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void can_interrupt_disable(uint32_t can_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable CAN interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	Interrupt type
<i>CAN_INT_TME</i>	transmit mailbox empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE0</i>	receive FIFO0 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFNE1</i>	receive FIFO1 not empty interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full interrupt enable
<i>CAN_INT_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt enable

<code>CAN_INT_WERR</code>	warning error interrupt enable
<code>CAN_INT_PERR</code>	passive error interrupt enable
<code>CAN_INT_BO</code>	bus-off interrupt enable
<code>CAN_INT_ERRN</code>	error number interrupt enable
<code>CAN_INT_ERR</code>	error interrupt enable
<code>CAN_INT_WU</code>	wakeup interrupt enable
<code>CAN_INT_SLPW</code>	sleep working interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CAN0 transmit mailbox empty interrupt disable */
```

```
can_interrupt_disable (CAN0, CAN_INT_TME);
```

can_flag_get

The description of can_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-90. Function can_flag_get

Function name	can_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus can_flag_get(uint32_t can_periph, can_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	get CAN flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
<code>CANx(x=0,1)</code>	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CAN flags
<code>CAN_FLAG_MTE2</code>	mailbox 2 transmit error

<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full
<i>CAN_FLAG_BOERR</i>	bus-off error
<i>CAN_FLAG_PERR</i>	passive error
<i>CAN_FLAG_WERR</i>	warning error
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit finished flag */
```

```
can_flag_get (CAN0, CAN_FLAG_MTF0);
```

can_flag_clear

The description of can_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-91. Function can_flag_clear

Function name	can_flag_clear
Function prototype	void can_flag_clear(uint32_t can_periph, can_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	clear CAN flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

can_periph	CAN peripheral
<i>CANx(x=0,1)</i>	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CAN flags
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTE0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit error
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF2</i>	mailbox 2 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF1</i>	mailbox 1 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_MTF0</i>	mailbox 0 transmit finished
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO0</i>	receive FIFO0 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF0</i>	receive FIFO0 full
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFO1</i>	receive FIFO1 overfull
<i>CAN_FLAG_RFF1</i>	receive FIFO1 full
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit error flag*/
```

```
can_flag_clear (CAN0, CAN_FLAG_MTE0);
```

can_interrupt_flag_get

The description of can_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-92. Function can_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	can_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus can_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t can_periph, can_interrupt_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	get CAN interrupt flag state

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
$CANx(x=0,1)$	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CAN interrupt flags
$CAN_INT_FLAG_SLPIF$	status change interrupt flag of sleep working mode entering
$CAN_INT_FLAG_WUIF$	status change interrupt flag of wakeup from sleep working mode
$CAN_INT_FLAG_ERRIF$	error interrupt flag
$CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF2$	mailbox 2 transmit finished interrupt flag
$CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF1$	mailbox 1 transmit finished interrupt flag
$CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0$	mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag
$CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO0$	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt flag
$CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF0$	receive FIFO0 full interrupt flag
$CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO1$	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt flag
$CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF1$	receive FIFO1 full interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* get CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag */
can_interrupt_flag_get(CAN0, CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0);
```

can_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of can_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-93. Function can_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	can_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void can_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t can_periph, can_interrupt_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	clear CAN interrupt flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
can_periph	CAN peripheral
CANx(x=0,1)	CAN peripheral selection, the CAN1 only for GD32F30X_CL
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CAN interrupt flags
CAN_INT_FLAG_SLPIF	status change interrupt flag of sleep working mode entering
CAN_INT_FLAG_WUIF	status change interrupt flag of wakeup from sleep working mode
CAN_INT_FLAG_ERRIF	error interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF2	mailbox 2 transmit finished interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF1	mailbox 1 transmit finished interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0	mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO0	receive FIFO0 overfull interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF0	receive FIFO0 full interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFO1	receive FIFO1 overfull interrupt flag
CAN_INT_FLAG_RFF1	receive FIFO1 full interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CAN0 mailbox 0 transmit finished interrupt flag */
```

can_interrupt_flag_clear (CAN0, CAN_INT_FLAG_MTF0);

3.5. CRC

A cyclic redundancy check (CRC) is an error-detecting code commonly used in digital networks and storage devices to detect accidental changes to raw data. The CRC registers are listed in chapter [3.5.1](#), the CRC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.5.2](#).

3.5.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CRC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-94. CRC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CRC_DATA	CRC data register
CRC_FDATA	CRC free data register
CRC_CTL	CRC control register

3.5.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CRC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-95. CRC firmware function

Function name	Function description
crc_deinit	deinit CRC calculation unit
crc_data_register_reset	reset data register(CRC_DATA) to the value of 0xFFFFFFFF
crc_data_register_read	read the value of the data register
crc_free_data_register_read	read the value of the free data register
crc_free_data_register_write	write data to the free data register
crc_single_data_calculate	calculate the CRC value of a 32-bit data
crc_block_data_calculate	calculate the CRC value of an array of 32-bit values

crc_deinit

The description of crc_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-96. Function crc_deinit

Function name	crc_deinit
---------------	------------

Function prototype	void crc_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinit CRC calculation unit
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset crc */
```

```
crc_deinit();
```

crc_data_register_reset

The description of crc_data_register_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-97. Function crc_data_register_reset

Function name	crc_data_register_reset
Function prototype	void crc_data_register_reset(void);
Function descriptions	reset data register(CRC_DATA) to the value of 0xFFFFFFFF
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset crc data register */
```

```
crc_data_register_reset();
```

crc_data_register_read

The description of `crc_data_register_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-98. Function `crc_data_register_read`

Function name	<code>crc_data_register_read</code>
Function prototype	<code>uint32_t crc_data_register_read(void);</code>
Function descriptions	read the value of the data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>uint32_t</code>	32-bit value of the data register (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read crc data register */
```

```
uint32_t crc_value = 0;
```

```
crc_value = crc_data_register_read();
```

crc_free_data_register_read

The description of `crc_free_data_register_read` is shown as below:

Table 3-99. Function `crc_free_data_register_read`

Function name	<code>crc_free_data_register_read</code>
Function prototype	<code>uint8_t crc_free_data_register_read(void);</code>
Function descriptions	read the value of the free data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	8-bit value of the free data register (0-0xFF)

Example:

```
/* read crc free data register */
uint8_t crc_value = 0;
crc_value = crc_free_data_register_read();
```

crc_free_data_register_write

The description of crc_free_data_register_write is shown as below:

Table 3-100. Function crc_free_data_register_write

Function name	crc_free_data_register_write
Function prototype	void crc_free_data_register_write(uint8_t free_data);
Function descriptions	write data to the free data register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
free_data	specified 8-bit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write the free data register */
crc_free_data_register_write(0x11);
```

crc_single_data_calculate

The description of crc_single_data_calculate is shown as below:

Table 3-101. Function crc_single_data_calculate

Function name	crc_single_data_calculate
Function prototype	uint32_t crc_single_data_calculate(uint32_t sdata);
Function descriptions	calculate the CRC value of a 32-bit data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sdata	specified 32-bit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	32-bit CRC calculate value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* CRC calculate a 32-bit data */
uint32_t val = 0, valcrc = 0;
val = (uint32_t)0xabcd1234;
rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_CRC);
valcrc = crc_single_data_calculate(val);
```

crc_block_data_calculate

The description of crc_block_data_calculate is shown as below:

Table 3-102. Function crc_block_data_calculate

Function name	crc_block_data_calculate
Function prototype	uint32_t crc_block_data_calculate(uint32_t array[], uint32_t size);
Function descriptions	calculate the CRC value of an array of 32-bit values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
array	pointer to an array of 32 bit data words
Input parameter{in}	
size	size of the array
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	32-bit CRC calculate value (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```

/* CRC calculate a 32-bit data array */

#define BUFFER_SIZE    6

uint32_t valcrc = 0;

static const uint32_t data_buffer[BUFFER_SIZE] = {
0x00001111, 0x00002222, 0x00003333, 0x00004444, 0x00005555, 0x00006666};

rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_CRC);

valcrc = crc_block_data_calculate((uint32_t*) data_buffer, BUFFER_SIZE);

```

3.6. CTC

The CTC unit trims the frequency of the IRC48M which is based on an external accurate reference signal source. It can adjust the calibration value to provide a precise IRC48M clock automatically or manually. The CTC registers are listed in chapter [3.6.1](#), the CTC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.6.2](#)

3.6.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

CTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-103. CTC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CTC_CTL0	CTC control register 0
CTC_CTL1	CTC control register 1
CTC_STAT	CTC status register

Registers	Descriptions
CTC_INTC	CTC Interrupt clear register

3.6.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

CTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-104. CTC firmware function

Function name	Function description
ctc_deinit	reset CTC clock trim controller
ctc_counter_enable	enable CTC trim counter
ctc_counter_disable	disable CTC trim counter
ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config	configure the IRC48M trim value
ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate	generate software reference source sync pulse
ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config	configure hardware automatically trim mode
ctc_refsource_polarity_config	configure reference signal source polarity
ctc_refsource_signal_select	select reference signal source
ctc_refsource_prescaler_config	configure reference signal source prescaler
ctc_clock_limit_value_config	configure clock trim base limit value
ctc_counter_reload_value_config	configure CTC counter reload value
ctc_counter_capture_value_read	read CTC counter capture value when reference sync pulse occurred
ctc_counter_direction_read	read CTC trim counter direction when reference sync pulse occurred
ctc_counter_reload_value_read	read CTC counter reload value
ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read	read the IRC48M trim value
ctc_interrupt_enable	enable the CTC interrupt
ctc_interrupt_disable	disable the CTC interrupt
ctc_interrupt_flag_get	get CTC interrupt flag
ctc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear CTC interrupt flag

Function name	Function description
ctc_flag_get	get CTC flag
ctc_flag_clear	clear CTC flag

ctc_deinit

The description of ctc_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-105. Function ctc_deinit

Function name	ctc_deinit
Function prototype	void ctc_deinit(void)
Function descriptions	Reset CTC peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset CTC */
```

```
ctc_deinit();
```

ctc_counter_enable

The description of ctc_counter_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-106. Function ctc_counter_enable

Function name	ctc_counter_enable
Function prototype	void ctc_counter_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable CTC counter
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC trim counter*/
```

```
ctc_counter_enable ();
```

ctc_counter_disable

The description of ctc_counter_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-107. Function ctc_counter_disable

Function name	ctc_counter_disable
Function prototype	void ctc_counter_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable CTC counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CTC trim counter */
```

```
ctc_counter_disable ();
```

ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config

The description of ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-108. Function ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config

Function name	ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config
Function prototype	void ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config(uint8_t trim_value);
Function descriptions	configure the IRC48M trim value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
trim_value	0~63
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* IRC48M trim value configuration */
ctc_irc48m_trim_value_config (0x01);
```

ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate

The description of ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate is shown as below:

Table 3-109. Function ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate

Function name	ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate
Function prototype	void ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate (void)
Function descriptions	generate software reference source sync pulse
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* generate reference source sync pulse */
ctc_software_refsource_pulse_generate ();
```

ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config

The description of ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-110. Function ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config

Function name	ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config
Function prototype	void ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config(uint32_t hardmode);
Function descriptions	configure hardware automatically trim mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
hardmode	hardware automatically trim mode enable or disable
CTC_HARDWARE_TRIM_MODE_ENABLE	hardware automatically trim mode enable
CTC_HARDWARE_TRIM_MODE_DISABLE	hardware automatically trim mode disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC hardware trim */
ctc_hardware_trim_mode_config (CTC_HARDWARE_TRIM_MODE_ENABLE);
```

ctc_refsource_polarity_config

The description of ctc_refsource_polarity_config is shown as below:

Table 3-111. Function ctc_refsource_polarity_config

Function name	ctc_refsource_polarity_config
Function prototype	void ctc_refsource_polarity_config(uint32_t polarity);
Function descriptions	configure reference signal source polarity
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
polarity	reference signal source polarity
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_POLARITY_FALLING</i>	reference signal source polarity is falling edge
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_POLARITY_RISING</i>	reference signal source polarity is rising edge
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set reference source polarity */
```

```
ctc_refsource_polarity_config (CTC_REFSOURCE_POLARITY_RISING);
```

ctc_refsource_signal_select

The description of ctc_refsource_signal_select is shown as below:

Table 3-112. Function ctc_refsource_signal_select

Function name	ctc_refsource_signal_select
Function prototype	void ctc_refsource_signal_select(uint32_t refs);
Function descriptions	select reference signal source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
refs	reference signal source
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_GPIO</i>	GPIO is selected
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_LXTAL</i>	LXTAL is selected
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reference signal selection */
```

```
ctc_refsource_signal_select (CTC_REFSOURCE_LXTAL);
```

ctc_refsource_prescaler_config

The description of ctc_refsource_prescaler_config is shown as below:

Table 3-113. Function ctc_refsource_prescaler_config

Function name	ctc_refsource_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void ctc_refsource_prescaler_config(uint32_t prescaler);
Function descriptions	configure reference signal source prescaler
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	Prescaler factor
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_PSC_OFF</i>	reference signal not divided
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_PSC_DIV2</i>	reference signal divided by 2
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_PSC_DIV4</i>	reference signal divided by 4
<i>CTC_REFSOURCE_PSC_DIV8</i>	reference signal divided by 8

SC_DIV8	
CTC_REFSOURCE_P SC_DIV16	reference signal divided by 16
CTC_REFSOURCE_P SC_DIV32	reference signal divided by 32
CTC_REFSOURCE_P SC_DIV64	reference signal divided by 64
CTC_REFSOURCE_P SC_DIV128	reference signal divided by 128
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure reference signal source prescaler */
```

```
ctc_refsource_prescaler_config(CTC_REFSOURCE_PSC_DIV2);
```

ctc_clock_limit_value_config

The description of ctc_clock_limit_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-114. Function ctc_clock_limit_value_config

Function name	ctc_clock_limit_value_config
Function prototype	void ctc_clock_limit_value_config(uint8_t limit_value);
Function descriptions	configure clock trim base limit value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
limit_value	0x00 - 0xFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure clock trim base limit value */
```

```
ctc_clock_limit_value_config (0x1F);
```

ctc_counter_reload_value_config

The description of ctc_counter_reload_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-115. Function ctc_counter_reload_value_config

Function name	ctc_counter_reload_value_config
Function prototype	void ctc_counter_reload_value_config(uint16_t reload_value);
Function descriptions	configure CTC counter reload value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
reload_value	0x0000 - 0xFFFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CTC counter reload value */
```

```
ctc_counter_reload_value_config (0x00FF);
```

ctc_counter_capture_value_read

The description of ctc_counter_capture_value_read is shown as below:

Table 3-116. Function ctc_counter_capture_value_read

Function name	ctc_counter_capture_value_read
Function prototype	uint16_t ctc_counter_capture_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read CTC counter capture value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	capture value(0x0000 - 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read CTC counter capture value */
uint16_t ctc_value = 0;
ctc_value = ctc_counter_capture_value_read ();
```

ctc_counter_direction_read

The description of ctc_counter_direction_read is shown as below:

Table 3-117. Function ctc_counter_direction_read

Function name	ctc_counter_direction_read
Function prototype	FlagStatus ctc_counter_direction_read(void);
Function descriptions	read CTC trim counter direction
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET(down counting) / RESET(up counting)

Example:

```
/* read ctc counter direction */
FlagStatus ctc_direction = SET;
ctc_direction = ctc_counter_direction_read ();
```

ctc_counter_reload_value_read

The description of ctc_counter_reload_value_read is shown as below:

Table 3-118. Function ctc_counter_reload_value_read

Function name	ctc_counter_reload_value_read
Function prototype	uint16_t ctc_counter_reload_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read CTC counter reload value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	reload value (0x0000 - 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read CTC counter reload value */
uint16_t ctc_reload_value = 0;
ctc_reload_value = ctc_counter_reload_value_read ();
```

ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read

The description of ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read is shown as below:

Table 3-119. Function ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read

Function name	ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read
Function prototype	uint8_t ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read(void);
Function descriptions	read the IRC48M trim value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	6-bit IRC48M trim value (0-63)

Example:

```
/* read the IRC48M trim value */
uint8_t ctc_trim_value = 0;
ctc_trim_value = ctc_irc48m_trim_value_read ();
```

ctc_interrupt_enable

The description of ctc_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-120. Function ctc_interrupt_enable

Function name	ctc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void ctc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable the CTC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	CTC interrupt
CTC_INT_CKOK	clock trim OK interrupt
CTC_INT_CKWARN	clock trim warning interrupt
CTC_INT_ERR	error interrupt
CTC_INT_EREf	expect reference interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable CTC clock trim OK interrupt */
```

```
ctc_interrupt_enable (CTC_INT_CKOK);
```

ctc_interrupt_disable

The description of ctc_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-121. Function ctc_interrupt_disable

Function name	ctc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void ctc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable the CTC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	CTC interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_EREf</i>	expect reference interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable CTC clock trim OK interrupt */
```

```
ctc_interrupt_disable (CTC_INT_CKOK);
```

ctc_interrupt_flag_get

The description of ctc_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-122. Function ctc_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	ctc_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus ctc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	get CTC interrupt flag

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	CTC interrupt flag
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_EREFS</i>	expect reference interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_CKEERR</i>	clock trim error bit interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_REFMISS</i>	reference sync pulse miss interrupt
<i>CTC_INT_FLAG_TRIMERR</i>	trim value error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get CTC interrupt flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus state = ctc_interrupt_flag_get (CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK);
```

ctc_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of ctc_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-123. Function ctc_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	ctc_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void ctc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	clear CTC interrupt flag
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	CTC interrupt flag
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK	clock trim OK interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKWARN	clock trim warning interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_ERR	error interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_EREFS	expect reference interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_CKERR	clock trim error bit interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_REFMISS	reference sync pulse miss interrupt
CTC_INT_FLAG_TRIMERR	trim value error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CTC interrupt flag status */
```

```
ctc_interrupt_flag_clear (CTC_INT_FLAG_CKOK);
```

ctc_flag_get

The description of ctc_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-124. Function ctc_flag_get

Function name	ctc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus ctc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get CTC status flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
flag	CTC status flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_EREf</i>	expect reference interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKERR</i>	clock trim error bit
<i>CTC_FLAG_REFMISS</i>	reference sync pulse miss flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_TRIMERR</i>	trim value error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get CTC flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus state = ctc_flag_get (CTC_FLAG_CKOK);
```

ctc_flag_clear

The description of ctc_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-125. Function ctc_flag_clear

Function name	ctc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void ctc_flag_clear (uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear CTC status flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	CTC status flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKOK</i>	clock trim OK interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKWARN</i>	clock trim warning interrupt flag

<i>CTC_FLAG_ERR</i>	error interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_EREf</i>	expect reference interrupt flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_CKERR</i>	clock trim error bit
<i>CTC_FLAG_REFMISs</i>	reference sync pulse miss flag
<i>CTC_FLAG_TRIMERR</i>	trim value error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear CTC flag status */
ctc_flag_clear(CTC_FLAG_CKOK);
```

3.7. DAC

The Digital-to-analog converter converts 12-bit digital data to a voltage on the external pins. The DAC registers are listed in chapter [3.7.1](#), the DAC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.7.2](#).

3.7.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

DAC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-126. DAC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
DAC_CTL	DAC control register
DAC_SWT	DAC software trigger register
DAC0_R12DH	DAC0 12-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC0_L12DH	DAC0 12-bit left-aligned data holding register
DAC0_R8DH	DAC0 8-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC1_R12DH	DAC1 12-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC1_L12DH	DAC1 12-bit left-aligned data holding register

Registers	Descriptions
DAC1_R8DH	DAC1 8-bit right-aligned data holding register
DACC_R12DH	DAC concurrent mode 12-bit right-aligned data holding register
DACC_L12DH	DAC concurrent mode 12-bit left-aligned data holding register
DACC_R8DH	DAC concurrent mode 8-bit right-aligned data holding register
DAC0_DO	DAC0 data output register
DAC1_DO	DAC1 data output register

3.7.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DAC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-127. DAC firmware function

Function name	Function description
dac_deinit	deinitialize DAC
dac_enable	enable DAC
dac_disable	disable DAC
dac_dma_enable	dac_dma_enable
dac_dma_disable	dac_dma_disable
dac_output_buffer_enable	enable DAC output buffer
dac_output_buffer_disable	disable DAC output buffer
dac_output_value_get	get the last data output value
dac_data_set	set DAC data holding register value
dac_trigger_enable	enable DAC trigger
dac_trigger_disable	disable DAC trigger
dac_trigger_source_config	configure DAC trigger source
dac_software_trigger_enable	enable DAC software trigger
dac_software_trigger_disable	disable DAC software trigger
dac_wave_mode_config	configure DAC wave mode
dac_wave_bit_width_config	configure DAC wave bit width
dac_lfsr_noise_config	configure DAC LFSR noise mode

Function name	Function description
<code>dac_triangle_noise_config</code>	configure DAC triangle noise mode
<code>dac_concurrent_enable</code>	enable DAC concurrent mode
<code>dac_concurrent_disable</code>	disable DAC concurrent mode
<code>dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable</code>	enable DAC concurrent software trigger
<code>dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable</code>	disable DAC concurrent software trigger
<code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable</code>	enable DAC concurrent buffer function
<code>dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable</code>	disable DAC concurrent buffer function
<code>dac_concurrent_data_set</code>	set DAC concurrent mode data holding register value

dac_deinit

The description of `dac_deinit` is shown as below:

Table 3-128. Function `dac_deinit`

Function name	<code>dac_deinit</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_deinit(void);</code>
Function descriptions	Reset DAC peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	<code>rcu_periph_reset_enable</code> / <code>rcu_periph_reset_disable</code>
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* deinitialize DAC */
dac_deinit();

```

dac_enable

The description of dac_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-129. Function dac_enable

Function name	dac_enable
Function prototype	void dac_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);
Function descriptions	enable DAC
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
DACx	peripheral selection(x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 */
dac_enable(DAC0);
```

dac_disable

The description of dac_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-130. Function dac_disable

Function name	dac_disable
Function prototype	void dac_disable(uint32_t dac_periph);
Function descriptions	disable DAC
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral

<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection(x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 */
dac_disable(DAC0);
```

dac_dma_enable

The description of dac_dma_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-131. Function dac_dma_enable

Function name	dac_dma_enable
Function prototype	void dac_dma_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);
Function descriptions	enable DAC DMA function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 DMA function */
dac_dma_enable(DAC0);
```

dac_dma_disable

The description of dac_dma_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-132. Function `dac_dma_disable`

Function name	<code>dac_dma_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_dma_disable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	disable DAC DMA function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>dac_periph</code>	peripheral
<code>DACx</code>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 DMA function */
```

```
dac_dma_disable(DAC0);
```

`dac_output_buffer_enable`

The description of `dac_output_buffer_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-133. Function `dac_output_buffer_enable`

Function name	<code>dac_output_buffer_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_output_buffer_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	enable DAC output buffer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>dac_periph</code>	peripheral
<code>DACx</code>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 output buffer */
dac_output_buffer_enable(DAC0);
```

dac_output_buffer_disable

The description of dac_output_buffer_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-134. Function dac_output_buffer_disable

Function name	dac_output_buffer_disable
Function prototype	void dac_output_buffer_disable(uint32_t dac_periph);
Function descriptions	disable DAC output buffer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 output buffer */
dac_output_buffer_disable(DAC0);
```

dac_output_value_get

The description of dac_output_value_get is shown as below:

Table 3-135. Function dac_output_value_get

Function name	dac_output_value_get
----------------------	----------------------

Function prototype	uint16_t dac_output_value_get(uint32_t dac_periph);
Function descriptions	get DAC output value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	DAC output data (0x0000 – 0x07FF)-

Example:

```
/* get DAC0 output value */
data = dac_output_value_get(DAC0);
```

dac_data_set

The description of dac_data_set is shown as below:

Table 3-136. Function dac_data_set

Function name	dac_data_set
Function prototype	void dac_data_set(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t dac_align, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	set the DAC specified data holding register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection(x =0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
dac_align	DAC align mode
<i>DAC_ALIGN_8B_R</i>	data right 8 bit alignment

<i>DAC_ALIGN_12B_R</i>	data right 12 bit alignment
<i>DAC_ALIGN_12B_L</i>	data left 12 bit alignment
Input parameter{in}	
data	The data sending to holding register
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the DAC0 specified data holding register value */
```

```
dac_data_set(DAC0, DAC_ALIGN_8B_R, 0xff);
```

dac_trigger_enable

The description of `dac_trigger_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-137. Function `dac_trigger_enable`

Function name	<code>dac_trigger_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_trigger_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	enable DAC trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 trigger */
```

```
dac_trigger_enable(DAC0);
```

dac_trigger_disable

The description of `dac_trigger_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-138. Function `dac_trigger_disable`

Function name	<code>dac_trigger_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_trigger_disable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	disable DAC trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>dac_periph</code>	peripheral
<code>DACx</code>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 trigger */
dac_trigger_disable(DAC0);
```

dac_trigger_source_config

The description of `dac_trigger_source_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-139. Function `dac_trigger_source_config`

Function name	<code>dac_trigger_source_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_trigger_source_config(uint32_t dac_periph,uint32_t triggersource);</code>
Function descriptions	set DAC trigger source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
triggersource	external triggers of DAC
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T1_TRGO</i>	TIMER1 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T2_TRGO</i>	TIMER2 TRGO (for GD32F30X_CL)
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T3_TRGO</i>	TIMER3 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T4_TRGO</i>	TIMER4 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T5_TRGO</i>	TIMER5 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T6_TRGO</i>	TIMER6 TRGO
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_T7_TRGO</i>	TIMER7 TRGO (for GD32F30X_HD and GD32F30X_XD)
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_EXTI_9</i>	EXTI interrupt line 9 event
<i>DAC_TRIGGER_SOFTWARE</i>	software trigger
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set DAC0 trigger source*/
```

```
dac_trigger_source_config(DAC0, DAC_TRIGGER_T1_TRGO);
```

dac_software_trigger_enable

The description of `dac_software_trigger_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-140. Function `dac_software_trigger_enable`

Function name	<code>dac_software_trigger_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_software_trigger_enable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	enable DAC software trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>dac_periph</code>	peripheral
<code>DACx</code>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC0 software trigger */
dac_software_trigger_enable(DAC0);
```

`dac_software_trigger_disable`

The description of `dac_software_trigger_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-141. Function `dac_software_trigger_disable`

Function name	<code>dac_software_trigger_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_software_trigger_disable(uint32_t dac_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	disable DAC software trigger
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>dac_periph</code>	peripheral
<code>DACx</code>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC0 software trigger */
```

```
dac_software_trigger_disable(DAC0);
```

dac_wave_mode_config

The description of `dac_wave_mode_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-142. Function `dac_wave_mode_config`

Function name	<code>dac_wave_mode_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_wave_mode_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t wave_mode);</code>
Function descriptions	configure DAC wave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection(x =0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
wave_mode	wave mode
<i>DAC_WAVE_DISABLE</i>	wave disable
<i>DAC_WAVE_MODE_LFSR</i>	LFSR noise mode
<i>DAC_WAVE_MODE_TRIANGLE</i>	triangle noise mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0 wave mode */
```

```
dac_wave_mode_config(DAC0, DAC_WAVE_DISABLE);
```

dac_wave_bit_width_config

The description of `dac_wave_bit_width_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-143. Function `dac_wave_bit_width_config`

Function name	<code>dac_wave_bit_width_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_wave_bit_width_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t bit_width);</code>
Function descriptions	configure DAC wave bit width
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
bit_width	noise wave bit width
<i>DAC_WAVE_BIT_WIDTH_x</i>	noise wave bit width (x = 1..12)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0 wave bit width */
```

```
dac_wave_bit_width_config(DAC0, DAC_WAVE_BIT_WIDTH_1);
```

dac_lfsr_noise_config

The description of `dac_lfsr_noise_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-144. Function `dac_lfsr_noise_config`

Function name	<code>dac_lfsr_noise_config</code>
----------------------	------------------------------------

Function prototype	void dac_lfsr_noise_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t unmask_bits);
Function descriptions	configure DAC LFSR noise mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral
<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection (x =0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
unmask_bits	noise wave unmask bit width
<i>DAC_LFSR_BIT0</i>	unmask the LFSR bit 0
<i>DAC_LFSR_BITSx_0</i>	unmask the LFSR bits[x:0]
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0 LFSR noise mode */
```

```
dac_lfsr_noise_config(DAC0, DAC_LFSR_BIT0);
```

dac_triangle_noise_config

The description of dac_triangle_noise_config is shown as below:

Table 3-145. Function dac_triangle_noise_config

Function name	dac_triangle_noise_config
Function prototype	void dac_triangle_noise_config(uint32_t dac_periph, uint32_t amplitude);
Function descriptions	configure DAC triangle noise mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_periph	peripheral

<i>DACx</i>	peripheral selection(x =0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
amplitude	the amplitude of triangle noise
<i>DAC_TRIANGLE_</i> <i>AMPLITUDE_x</i>	$x = 2^n - 1$ (n = 1..12)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure DAC0 triangle noise mode */
dac_triangle_noise_config(DAC0, DAC_TRIANGLE_AMPLITUDE_1);
```

dac_concurrent_enable

The description of `dac_concurrent_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-146. Function `dac_concurrent_enable`

Function name	<code>dac_concurrent_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_concurrent_enable(void);</code>
Function descriptions	enable DAC concurrent mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC concurrent mode */
```

`dac_concurrent_enable();`

dac_concurrent_disable

The description of `dac_concurrent_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-147. Function `dac_concurrent_disable`

Function name	<code>dac_concurrent_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_concurrent_disable(void);</code>
Function descriptions	disable DAC concurrent mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC concurrent mode */
```

```
dac_concurrent_disable();
```

dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable

The description of `dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-148. Function `dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable`

Function name	<code>dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable(void);</code>
Function descriptions	enable DAC concurrent software trigger function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC concurrent software trigger function */
```

```
dac_concurrent_software_trigger_enable();
```

dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable

The description of dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-149. Function dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable

Function name	dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable
Function prototype	void dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable DAC concurrent software trigger function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC concurrent software trigger function */
```

```
dac_concurrent_software_trigger_disable();
```

dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable

The description of dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-150. Function dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable

Function name	dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable
---------------	-------------------------------------

Function prototype	void dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable DAC concurrent buffer function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DAC concurrent buffer function */
```

```
dac_concurrent_output_buffer_enable();
```

dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable

The description of dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-151. Function dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable

Function name	dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable
Function prototype	void dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable DAC concurrent buffer function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DAC concurrent buffer function */
```

```
dac_concurrent_output_buffer_disable();
```

dac_concurrent_data_set

The description of `dac_concurrent_data_set` is shown as below:

Table 3-152. Function `dac_concurrent_data_set`

Function name	<code>dac_concurrent_data_set</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dac_concurrent_data_set(uint32_t dac_align, uint16_t data0, uint16_t data1);</code>
Function descriptions	set DAC concurrent mode data holding register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dac_align	DAC align mode
<code>DAC_ALIGN_8B_R</code>	data right 8 bit alignment
<code>DAC_ALIGN_12B_R</code>	data right 12 bit alignment
<code>DAC_ALIGN_12B_L</code>	data left 12 bit alignment
Input parameter{in}	
data0	The data sending to holding register of DAC0
Input parameter{in}	
data1	The data sending to holding register of DAC1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set DAC concurrent mode data holding register value */
```

```
dac_concurrent_data_set(DAC_ALIGN_8B_R, 0xff, 0xff);
```

3.8. DBG

The DBG hold unit helps debugger to debug power saving mode. The DBG registers are listed in chapter [3.8.1](#), the DBG firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.8.2](#).

3.8.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

DBG registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-153. DBG Registers

Registers	Descriptions
DBG_ID	DBG ID code register
DBG_CTL0	DBG control register 0

3.8.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DBG firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-154. DBG firmware function

Function name	Function description
dbg_deinit	deinitialize the DBG
dbg_id_get	read DBG_ID code register
dbg_low_power_enable	enable low power behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_low_power_disable	disable low power behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_periph_enable	enable peripheral behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_periph_disable	disable peripheral behavior when the MCU is in debug mode
dbg_trace_pin_enable	enable trace pin assignment
dbg_trace_pin_disable	disable trace pin assignment

Enum dbg_periph_enum

Table 3-155. Enum dbg_periph_enum

Member name	Function description
DBG_FWDGT_HOLD	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
DBG_WWDGT_HOLD	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted

DBG_TIMER0_HOLD	hold TIMER0 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER1_HOLD	hold TIMER1 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER2_HOLD	hold TIMER2 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER3_HOLD	hold TIMER3 counter when core is halted
DBG_CAN0_HOLD	debug CAN0 kept when core is halted
DBG_I2C0_HOLD	hold I2C0 smbus when core is halted
DBG_I2C1_HOLD	hold I2C1 smbus when core is halted
DBG_TIMER4_HOLD	hold TIMER4 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER5_HOLD	hold TIMER5 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER6_HOLD	hold TIMER6 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER7_HOLD	hold TIMER7 counter when core is halted
DBG_CAN1_HOLD	debug CAN1 kept when core is halted
DBG_TIMER11_HOLD	hold TIMER11 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER12_HOLD	hold TIMER12 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER13_HOLD	hold TIMER13 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER8_HOLD	hold TIMER8 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER9_HOLD	hold TIMER9 counter when core is halted
DBG_TIMER10_HOLD	hold TIMER10 counter when core is halted

dbg_deinit

The description of dbg_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-156. Function dbg_deinit

Function name	dbg_deinit
Function prototype	void dbg_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the DBG
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the DBG */
```

```
dbg_deinit();
```

dbg_id_get

The description of dbg_id_get is shown as below:

Table 3-157. Function dbg_id_get

Function name	dbg_id_get
Function prototype	uint32_t dbg_id_get(void);
Function descriptions	Read DBG_ID code register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	DBG_ID code (0-0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read DBG_ID code register */
```

```
uint32_t id_value = 0;
```

```
id_value = dbg_id_get();
```

dbg_low_power_enable

The description of dbg_low_power_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-158. Function dbg_low_power_enable

Function name	dbg_low_power_enable
Function prototype	void dbg_low_power_enable(uint32_t dbg_low_power);
Function descriptions	Enable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dbg_low_power	low power mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP	keep debugger connection during sleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_DEEPSLEEP	keep debugger connection during deepsleep mode
DBG_LOW_POWER_STANDBY	keep debugger connection during standby mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
dbg_low_power_enable(DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP);
```

dbg_low_power_disable

The description of dbg_low_power_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-159. Function dbg_low_power_disable

Function name	dbg_low_power_disable
Function prototype	void dbg_low_power_disable(uint32_t dbg_low_power);
Function descriptions	Disable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
dbg_low_power	low power mode
<i>DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP</i>	keep debugger connection during sleep mode
<i>DBG_LOW_POWER_DEEPSLEEP</i>	keep debugger connection during deepsleep mode
<i>DBG_LOW_POWER_STANDBY</i>	keep debugger connection during standby mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable low power behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
```

```
dbg_low_power_disable(DBG_LOW_POWER_SLEEP);
```

dbg_periph_enable

The description of dbg_periph_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-160. Function dbg_periph_enable

Function name	dbg_periph_enable
Function prototype	void dbg_periph_enable(dbg_periph_enum dbg_periph);
Function descriptions	Enable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dbg_periph	Peripheral refer to Enum dbg_periph_enum
<i>DBG_FWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_WWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_CANx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold CANx counter when core is halted
<i>DBG_I2Cx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold I2Cx smbus when core is halted

<i>DBG_TIMERx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13, hold TIMERx counter when core is halted
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
```

```
dbg_periph_enable(DBG_TIMER0_HOLD);
```

dbg_periph_disable

The description of dbg_periph_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-161. Function dbg_periph_disable

Function name	dbg_periph_disable
Function prototype	void dbg_periph_disable(dbg_periph_enum dbg_periph);
Function descriptions	Disable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dbg_periph	peripheral refer to Enum dbg_periph_enum
<i>DBG_FWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug FWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_WWDGT_HOLD</i>	debug WWDGT kept when core is halted
<i>DBG_CANx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold CANx counter when core is halted
<i>DBG_I2Cx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1, hold I2Cx smbus when core is halted
<i>DBG_TIMERx_HOLD</i>	x=0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13, hold TIMERx counter when core is halted
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable peripheral behavior when the mcu is in debug mode */
```

```
dbg_periph_disable(DBG_TIMER0_HOLD);
```

dbg_trace_pin_enable

The description of dbg_trace_pin_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-162. Function dbg_trace_pin_enable

Function name	dbg_trace_pin_enable
Function prototype	void dbg_trace_pin_enable(void);
Function descriptions	Enable trace pin assignment
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable trace pin assignment */
```

```
dbg_trace_pin_enable();
```

dbg_trace_pin_disable

The description of dbg_trace_pin_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-163. Function dbg_trace_pin_disable

Function name	dbg_trace_pin_disable
Function prototype	void dbg_trace_pin_disable(void);
Function descriptions	Disable trace pin assignment
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable trace pin assignment */
dbg_trace_pin_disable();
```

3.9. DMA

The direct memory access (DMA) controller provides a hardware method of transferring data between peripherals and/or memory without intervention from the CPU, thereby freeing up bandwidth for other system functions. The DMA registers are listed in chapter [3.9.1](#), the DMA firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.9.2](#).

3.9.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

DMA registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-164. DMA Registers

Registers	Descriptions
DMA_INTF	Interrupt flag register
DMA_INTC	Interrupt flag clear register
DMA_CHxCTL (x=0..6)	Channel x control register
DMA_CHxCNT (x=0..6)	Channel x counter register
DMA_CHxPADDR (x=0..6)	Channel x peripheral base address register
DMA_CHxMADDR (x=0..6)	Channel x memory base address register

3.9.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

DMA firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-165. DMA firmware function

Function name	Function description
<code>dma_deinit</code>	deinitialize DMA a channel registers
<code>dma_struct_para_init</code>	initialize the parameters of DMA struct with the default values
<code>dma_init</code>	initialize DMA channel
<code>dma_circulation_enable</code>	enable DMA circulation mode
<code>dma_circulation_disable</code>	disable DMA circulation mode
<code>dma_memory_to_memory_enable</code>	enable memory to memory mode
<code>dma_memory_to_memory_disable</code>	disable memory to memory mode
<code>dma_channel_enable</code>	enable DMA channel
<code>dma_channel_disable</code>	disable DMA channel
<code>dma_periph_address_config</code>	set DMA peripheral base address
<code>dma_memory_address_config</code>	set DMA memory base address
<code>dma_transfer_number_config</code>	set the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
<code>dma_transfer_number_get</code>	get the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
<code>dma_priority_config</code>	configure priority level of DMA channel
<code>dma_memory_width_config</code>	configure transfer data size of memory
<code>dma_periph_width_config</code>	configure transfer data size of peripheral
<code>dma_memory_increase_enable</code>	enable next address increasement algorithm of memory
<code>dma_memory_increase_disable</code>	disable next address increasement algorithm of memory
<code>dma_periph_increase_enable</code>	enable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
<code>dma_periph_increase_disable</code>	disable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
<code>dma_transfer_direction_config</code>	configure the direction of data transfer on the channel
<code>dma_flag_get</code>	check DMA flag is set or not
<code>dma_flag_clear</code>	clear the flag of a DMA channel

Function name	Function description
<code>dma_interrupt_flag_get</code>	check DMA flag and interrupt enable bit is set or not
<code>dma_interrupt_flag_clear</code>	clear the interrupt flag of a DMA channel
<code>dma_interrupt_enable</code>	enable DMA interrupt
<code>dma_interrupt_disable</code>	disable DMA interrupt

Structure `dma_parameter_struct`

Table 3-166. Structure `dma_parameter_struct`

Member name	Function description
<code>periph_addr</code>	peripheral base address
<code>periph_width</code>	transfer data size of peripheral
<code>memory_addr</code>	memory base address
<code>memory_width</code>	transfer data size of memory
<code>number</code>	channel transfer number
<code>priority</code>	channel priority level
<code>periph_inc</code>	peripheral increasing mode
<code>memory_inc</code>	memory increasing mode
<code>direction</code>	channel data transfer direction

`dma_deinit`

The description of `dma_deinit` is shown as below:

Table 3-167. Function `dma_deinit`

Function name	<code>dma_deinit</code>
Function prototype	<code>void dma_deinit(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);</code>
Function descriptions	deinitialize DMA a channel registers
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>dma_periph</code>	DMA peripheral

<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 initialize */
dma_deinit(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_struct_para_init

The description of dma_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-168. Function dma_struct_para_init

Function name	dma_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void dma_struct_para_init(dma_parameter_struct* init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of DMA struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
*init_struct	a spi_parameter_struct address
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the parameters of DMA */
dma_parameter_struct dma_init_struct;
```

```
dma_struct_para_init(&dma_init_struct);
```

dma_init

The description of dma_init is shown as below:

Table 3-169. Function dma_init

Function name	dma_init
Function prototype	void dma_init(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, dma_parameter_struct* init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
DMAx(x=0,1)	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-166. Structure dma_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 initialize */
dma_parameter_struct dma_init_struct;
dma_deinit(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
dma_struct_para_init(&dma_init_struct);
```

```
dma_init_struct.direction = DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY;
```

```

dma_init_struct.memory_addr = (uint32_t)g_destbuf;
dma_init_struct.memory_inc = DMA_MEMORY_INCREASE_ENABLE;
dma_init_struct.memory_width = DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT;
dma_init_struct.number = TRANSFER_NUM;
dma_init_struct.periph_addr = (uint32_t)BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR;
dma_init_struct.periph_inc = DMA_PERIPH_INCREASE_ENABLE;
dma_init_struct.periph_width = DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT;
dma_init_struct.priority = DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH;
dma_init(DMA0, DMA_CH0, &dma_init_struct);

```

dma_circulation_enable

The description of dma_circulation_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-170. Function dma_circulation_enable

Function name	dma_circulation_enable
Function prototype	void dma_circulation_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable DMA circulation mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable DMA0 channel0 circulation mode */
dma_circulation_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);

```

dma_circulation_disable

The description of dma_circulation_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-171. Function dma_circulation_disable

Function name	dma_circulation_disable
Function prototype	void dma_circulation_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable DMA circulation mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA0 channel0 circulation mode */
dma_circulation_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_memory_to_memory_enable

The description of dma_memory_to_memory_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-172. Function dma_memory_to_memory_enable

Function name	dma_memory_to_memory_enable
Function prototype	void dma_memory_to_memory_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);

Function descriptions	enable memory to memory mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA0 channel0 memory to memory mode */
dma_memory_to_memory_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_memory_to_memory_disable

The description of dma_memory_to_memory_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-173. Function dma_memory_to_memory_disable

Function name	dma_memory_to_memory_disable
Function prototype	void dma_memory_to_memory_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable memory to memory mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA0 channel0 memory to memory mode */
dma_memory_to_memory_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_channel_enable

The description of dma_channel_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-174. Function dma_channel_enable

Function name	dma_channel_enable
Function prototype	void dma_channel_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA0 channel0 */
dma_channel_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_channel_disable

The description of dma_channel_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-175. Function dma_channel_disable

Function name	dma_channel_disable
Function prototype	void dma_channel_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable DMA0 channel0 */
dma_channel_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_periph_address_config

The description of dma_periph_address_config is shown as below:

Table 3-176. Function dma_periph_address_config

Function name	dma_periph_address_config
Function prototype	void dma_periph_address_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t address);
Function descriptions	set DMA peripheral base address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
DMAx(x=0,1)	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
address	peripheral base address
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
#define BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR      ((uint32_t)0x08004000)

dma_periph_address_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, BANK0_WRITE_START_ADDR);
```

dma_memory_address_config

The description of dma_memory_address_config is shown as below:

Table 3-177. Function dma_memory_address_config

Function name	dma_memory_address_config
---------------	---------------------------

Function prototype	void dma_memory_address_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t address);
Function descriptions	set DMA memory base address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
address	memory base address
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
uint8_t g_destbuf[TRANSFER_NUM];
dma_memory_address_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, (uint32_t) g_destbuf);
```

dma_transfer_number_config

The description of dma_transfer_number_config is shown as below:

Table 3-178. Function dma_transfer_number_config

Function name	dma_transfer_number_config
Function prototype	void dma_transfer_number_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t number);
Function descriptions	set the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
number	data transfer number
<i>0-0xffff</i>	number
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
#define TRANSFER_NUM                0x400

dma_transfer_number_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, TRANSFER_NUM);
```

dma_transfer_number_get

The description of dma_transfer_number_get is shown as below:

Table 3-179. Function dma_transfer_number_get

Function name	dma_transfer_number_get
Function prototype	uint32_t dma_transfer_number_get(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	get the number of remaining data to be transferred by the DMA
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral

<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	0-0xffff

Example:

```
uint32_t number = 0;
```

```
number = dma_transfer_number_get(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_priority_config

The description of dma_priority_config is shown as below:

Table 3-180. Function dma_priority_config

Function name	dma_priority_config
Function prototype	void dma_priority_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t priority);
Function descriptions	configure priority level of DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	

priority	priority Level of this channel
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_LOW</i>	low priority
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_MEDIUM</i>	medium priority
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_HIGH</i>	high priority
<i>DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH</i>	ultra high priority
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_priority_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_PRIORITY_ULTRA_HIGH);
```

dma_memory_width_config

The description of dma_memory_width_config is shown as below:

Table 3-181. Function dma_memory_width_config

Function name	dma_memory_width_config
Function prototype	void dma_memory_width_config (uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t mwidth);
Function descriptions	configure transfer data size of memory
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection

Input parameter{in}	
mwidth	transfer data width of memory
<i>DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT</i>	transfer data width of memory is 8-bit
<i>DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_16BIT</i>	transfer data width of memory is 16-bit
<i>DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_32BIT</i>	transfer data width of memory is 32-bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_memory_width_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_MEMORY_WIDTH_8BIT);
```

dma_periph_width_config

The description of dma_periph_width_config is shown as below:

Table 3-182. Function dma_periph_width_config

Function name	dma_periph_width_config
Function prototype	void dma_periph_width_config (uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t pwidth);
Function descriptions	configure transfer data size of peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection

Input parameter{in}	
pwidth	transfer data width of peripheral
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT</i>	transfer data width of peripheral is 8-bit
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_16BIT</i>	transfer data width of peripheral is 16-bit
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_32BIT</i>	transfer data width of peripheral is 32-bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_periph_width_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_PERIPHERAL_WIDTH_8BIT);
```

dma_memory_increase_enable

The description of dma_memory_increase_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-183. Function dma_memory_increase_enable

Function name	dma_memory_increase_enable
Function prototype	void dma_memory_increase_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable next address increasement algorithm of memory
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_memory_increase_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_memory_increase_disable

The description of dma_memory_increase_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-184. Function dma_memory_increase_disable

Function name	dma_memory_increase_disable
Function prototype	void dma_memory_increase_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable next address increasement algorithm of memory
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_memory_increase_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_periph_increase_enable

The description of dma_periph_increase_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-185. Function dma_periph_increase_enable

Function name	dma_periph_increase_enable
Function prototype	void dma_periph_increase_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	enable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_periph_increase_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_periph_increase_disable

The description of dma_periph_increase_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-186. Function dma_periph_increase_disable

Function name	dma_periph_increase_disable
Function prototype	void dma_periph_increase_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx);
Function descriptions	disable next address increasement algorithm of peripheral

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_periph_increase_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0);
```

dma_transfer_direction_config

The description of dma_transfer_direction_config is shown as below:

Table 3-187. Function dma_transfer_direction_config

Function name	dma_transfer_direction_config
Function prototype	void dma_transfer_direction_config(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t direction);
Function descriptions	configure the direction of data transfer on the channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel

<i>DMA_CHx</i> (DMA0: <i>x</i> =0..6; DMA1: <i>x</i> =0..4)	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
direction	specify the direction of data transfer
<i>DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY</i>	read from peripheral and write to memory
<i>DMA_MEMORY_TO_PERIPHERAL</i>	read from memory and write to peripheral
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_transfer_direction_config(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_PERIPHERAL_TO_MEMORY);
```

dma_flag_get

The description of dma_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-188. Function dma_flag_get

Function name	dma_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus dma_flag_get(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	check DMA flag is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx</i> (<i>x</i> =0,1)	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx</i> (DMA0: <i>x</i> =0..6; DMA1: <i>x</i> =0..4)	DMA channel selection

Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_FLAG_G</i>	global interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_ERR</i>	error flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
FlagStatus flag = RESET;
```

```
flag = dma_flag_get(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_FLAG_FTF);
```

dma_flag_clear

The description of dma_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-189. Function dma_flag_clear

Function name	dma_flag_clear
Function prototype	void dma_flag_clear(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the flag of a DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection

Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_FLAG_G</i>	global interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish flag of channel
<i>DMA_FLAG_ERR</i>	error flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
dma_flag_clear(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_FLAG_FTF);
```

dma_interrupt_flag_get

The description of dma_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-190. Function dma_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	dma_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus dma_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	check DMA flag and interrupt enable bit is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	

flag	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_ER</i>	error interrupt flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
if(dma_interrupt_flag_get(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF)){
    dma_interrupt_flag_clear(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_G);
}
```

dma_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of dma_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-191. Function dma_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	dma_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void dma_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the interrupt flag of a DMA channel
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..</i>	DMA channel selection

6; DMA1: x=0..4)	
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_G</i>	global interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt flag of channel
<i>DMA_INT_FLAG_ER</i>	error interrupt flag of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
if(dma_interrupt_flag_get(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_FTF)){
    dma_interrupt_flag_clear(DMA0, DMA_CH3, DMA_INT_FLAG_G);
}
```

dma_interrupt_enable

The description of dma_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-192. Function dma_interrupt_enable

Function name	dma_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void dma_interrupt_enable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t source);
Function descriptions	enable DMA interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection

Input parameter{in}	
channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0:x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
source	DMA interrupt source
<i>DMA_INT_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 interrupt configuration */
dma_interrupt_enable(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_INT_FTF);
```

dma_interrupt_disable

The description of dma_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-193. Function dma_interrupt_disable

Function name	dma_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void dma_interrupt_disable(uint32_t dma_periph, dma_channel_enum channelx, uint32_t source);
Function descriptions	disable DMA interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dma_periph	DMA peripheral
<i>DMAx(x=0,1)</i>	DMA peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	

channelx	DMA channel
<i>DMA_CHx(DMA0: x=0..6; DMA1: x=0..4)</i>	DMA channel selection
Input parameter{in}	
source	DMA interrupt source
<i>DMA_INT_FTF</i>	full transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_HTF</i>	half transfer finish interrupt of channel
<i>DMA_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt of channel
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* DMA0 channel0 interrupt configuration */
dma_interrupt_disable(DMA0, DMA_CH0, DMA_INT_FTF);
```

3.10. ENET

There is a media access controller (MAC) designed in Ethernet module to support 10/100Mbps interface speed. For more efficient data transfer between Ethernet and memory, a DMA controller is designed in this module. The support interface protocol for Ethernet is media independent interface (MII) and reduced media independent interface (RMII). The ENET registers are listed in chapter [3.10.1](#), the ENET firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.10.2](#).

3.10.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

ENET registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-194. ENET Registers

Registers	Descriptions
ENET_MAC_CFG	MAC configuration register
ENET_MAC_FRMF	MAC frame filter register
ENET_MAC_HLH	MAC hash list high register

Registers	Descriptions
ENET_MAC_HLL	MAC hash list low register
ENET_MAC_PHY_CTL	MAC PHY control register
ENET_MAC_PHY_DATA	MAC PHY data register
ENET_MAC_FCTL	MAC flow control register
ENET_MAC_VLT	MAC VLAN tag register
ENET_MAC_RWFF	MAC remote wakeup frame filter register
ENET_MAC_WUM	MAC wakeup management register
ENET_MAC_DBG	MAC debug register
ENET_MAC_INTF	MAC interrupt flag register
ENET_MAC_INTMSK	MAC interrupt mask register
ENET_MAC_ADDR0H	MAC address 0 high register
ENET_MAC_ADDR0L	MAC address 0 low register
ENET_MAC_ADDR1H	MAC address 1 high register
ENET_MAC_ADDR1L	MAC address 1 low register
ENET_MAC_ADDT2H	MAC address 2 high register
ENET_MAC_ADDR2L	MAC address 2 low register
ENET_MAC_ADDR3H	MAC address 3 high register
ENET_MAC_ADDR3L	MAC address 3 low register
ENET_MAC_FCTH	MAC flow control threshold register
ENET_MSC_CTL	MSC control register

Registers	Descriptions
ENET_MSC_RINTF	MSC receive interrupt flag register
ENET_MSC_TINTF	MSC transmit interrupt flag register
ENET_MSC_RINT MSK	MSC receive interrupt mask register
ENET_MSC_TINTM SK	MSC transmit interrupt mask register
ENET_MSC_SCCN T	MSC transmitted good frames after a single collision counter register
ENET_MSC_MSCC NT	MSC transmitted good frames after more than a single collision counter register
ENET_MSC_TGFC NT	MSC transmitted good frames counter register
ENET_MSC_RFCE CNT	MSC received frames with CRC error counter register
ENET_MSC_RFAE CNT	MSC received frames with alignment error counter register
ENET_MSC_RGUF CNT	MSC received good unicast frames counter register
ENET_PTP_TSCTL	PTP time stamp control register
ENET_PTP_SSINC	PTP subsecond increment register
ENET_PTP_TSH	PTP time stamp high register
ENET_PTP_TSL	PTP time stamp low register
ENET_PTP_TSUH	PTP time stamp update high register
ENET_PTP_TSUL	PTP time stamp update low register
ENET_PTP_TSADD END	PTP time stamp addend register
ENET_PTP_ETH	PTP expected time high register
ENET_PTP_ETL	PTP expected time low register
ENET_PTP_TSF	PTP time stamp flag register
ENET_PTP_PPSCT L	PTP PPS control register

Registers	Descriptions
ENET_DMA_BCTL	DMA bus control register
ENET_DMA_TPEN	DMA transmit poll enable register
ENET_DMA_RPEN	DMA receive poll enable register
ENET_DMA_RDTA DDR	DMA receive descriptor table address register
ENET_DMA_TDTA DDR	DMA transmit descriptor table address register
ENET_DMA_STAT	DMA status register
ENET_DMA_CTL	DMA control register
ENET_DMA_INTEN	DMA interrupt enable register
ENET_DMA_MFBO CNT	DMA missed frame and buffer overflow counter register
ENET_DMA_RSWD C	DMA receive state watchdog counter register
ENET_DMA_CTDA DDR	DMA current transmit descriptor address register
ENET_DMA_CRDA DDR	DMA current receive descriptor address register
ENET_DMA_CTBA DDR	DMA current transmit buffer address register
ENET_DMA_CRBA DDR	DMA current receive buffer address register

3.10.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

ENET firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-195. ENET firmware function

Function name	Function description
	main function
enet_deinit	deinitialize the ENET, and reset structure parameters for ENET initialization
enet_initpara_config	configure the parameters which are usually less cared for

Function name	Function description
	initialization
enet_init	initialize ENET peripheral with generally concerned parameters and the less cared parameters
enet_software_reset	reset all core internal registers located in CLK_TX and CLK_RX
enet_rxframe_size_get	check receive frame valid and return frame size
enet_descriptors_chain_init	initialize the dma tx/rx descriptors's parameters in chain mode
enet_descriptors_ring_init	initialize the dma tx/rx descriptors's parameters in ring mode
enet_frame_receive	handle current received frame data to application buffer
enet_frame_transmit	handle application buffer data to transmit it
enet_transmit_checksum_config	configure the transmit IP frame checksum offload calculation and insertion
enet_enable	ENET Tx and Rx function enable (include MAC and DMA module)
enet_disable	ENET Tx and Rx function disable (include MAC and DMA module)
enet_mac_address_set	configure MAC address
enet_mac_address_get	get MAC address
enet_flag_get	get the ENET MAC/MSR/PTP/DMA status flag
enet_flag_clear	clear the ENET DMA status flag
enet_interrupt_enable	enable ENET MAC/MSR/DMA interrupt
enet_interrupt_disable	disable ENET MAC/MSR/DMA interrupt
enet_interrupt_flag_get	get ENET MAC/MSR/DMA interrupt flag
enet_interrupt_flag_clear	clear ENET DMA interrupt flag
MAC function	
enet_tx_enable	ENET Tx function enable (include MAC and DMA module)
enet_tx_disable	ENET Tx function disable (include MAC and DMA module)
enet_rx_enable	ENET Rx function enable (include MAC and DMA module)
enet_rx_disable	ENET Rx function disable (include MAC and DMA module)

Function name	Function description
enet_registers_get	put registers value into the application buffer
enet_debug_status_get	get the enet debug status from the debug register
enet_address_filter_enable	enable the MAC address filter
enet_address_filter_disable	disable the MAC address filter
enet_address_filter_config	configure the MAC address filter
enet_phy_config	PHY interface configuration (configure SMI clock and reset PHY chip)
enet_phy_write_read	write to/read from a PHY register
enet_phyloopback_enable	enable the loopback function of phy chip
enet_phyloopback_disable	disable the loopback function of phy chip
enet_forward_feature_enable	enable ENET forward feature
enet_forward_feature_disable	disable ENET forward feature
enet_fliter_feature_enable	enable ENET fliter feature
enet_fliter_feature_disable	disable ENET fliter feature
flow control function	
enet_pauseframe_generate	generate the pause frame, ENET will send pause frame after enable transmit flow control
enet_pauseframe_detect_config	configure the pause frame detect type
enet_pauseframe_config	configure the pause frame parameters
enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config	configure the threshold of the flow control(deactive and active threshold)
enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable	enable ENET flow control feature
enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable	disable ENET flow control feature
DMA function	
enet_dmaprocess_state_get	get the dma transmit/receive process state
enet_dmaprocess_resume	poll the dma transmission/reception enable
enet_rxprocess_check_recovery	check and recover the Rx process
enet_txfifo_flush	flush the ENET transmit fifo, and wait until the flush operation completes

Function name	Function description
enet_current_desc_address_get	get the transmit/receive address of current descriptor, or current buffer, or descriptor table
enet_desc_information_get	get the Tx or Rx descriptor information
enet_missed_frame_counter_get	get the number of missed frames during receiving
descriptor function	
enet_desc_flag_get	get the bit flag of ENET dma descriptor
enet_desc_flag_set	set the bit flag of ENET dma tx descriptor
enet_desc_flag_clear	clear the bit flag of ENET dma tx descriptor
enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt	when receiving the completed, set RS bit in ENET_DMA_STAT register will immediately set
enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt	when receiving the completed, set RS bit in ENET_DMA_STAT register will be set after a configurable delay time
enet_rxframe_drop	drop current receive frame
enet_dma_feature_enable	enable DMA feature
enet_dma_feature_disable	disable DMA feature
enhanced descriptor	
enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get	get the bit of extended status flag in ENET DMA descriptor
enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode	configure descriptor to work in enhanced mode
enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init	initialize the dma Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in enhanced chain mode with ptp function
enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init	initialize the dma Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in enhanced ring mode with ptp function
enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode	receive a packet data with timestamp values to application buffer, when the DMA is in enhanced mode
enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode	send data with timestamp values in application buffer as a transmit packet, when the DMA is in enhanced mode
normal descriptor	
enet_desc_select_normal_mode	configure descriptor to work in normal mode
enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init	initialize the dma Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in normal

Function name	Function description
nit	chain mode with ptp function
enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init	initialize the dma Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in normal ring mode with ptp function
enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode	receive a packet data with timestamp values to application buffer, when the DMA is in normal mode
enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode	send data with timestamp values in application buffer as a transmit packet, when the DMA is in normal mode
WUM function	
enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset	wakeup frame filter register pointer reset
enet_wum_filter_config	set the remote wakeup frame registers
enet_wum_feature_enable	enable wakeup management features
enet_wum_feature_disable	disable wakeup management features
MSC function	
enet_msc_counters_reset	reset the MAC statistics counters
enet_msc_feature_enable	enable the MAC statistics counter features
enet_msc_feature_disable	disable the MAC statistics counter features
enet_msc_counters_preset_config	configure MAC statistics counters preset mode
enet_msc_counters_get	get MAC statistics counter
PTP function	
enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond	change subsecond to nanosecond
enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond	change nanosecond to subsecond
enet_ptp_feature_enable	enable the PTP features
enet_ptp_feature_disable	disable the PTP features
enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config	configure the PTP timestamp function
enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config	configure the PTP system time subsecond increment value
enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config	adjusting the PTP clock frequency only in fine update mode
enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config	initializing or adding/subtracting to second of the PTP system time

Function name	Function description
enet_ptp_expected_time_config	configure the PTP expected target time
enet_ptp_system_time_get	get the PTP current system time
enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config	configure the PPS output frequency
enet_ptp_start	configure and start PTP timestamp counter
enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq	adjust frequency in fine method by configure addend register
enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update	update system time in coarse method
enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime	set system time in fine method
enet_ptp_flag_get	get the ptp flag status
internal function	
enet_initpara_reset	reset the ENET initpara struct, call it before using enet_initpara_config()

Structure enet_initpara_struct

Table 3-196. Structure enet_initpara_struct

member name	Function description
option_enable	select which function to configure
forward_frame	frame forward related parameters
dmabus_mode	DMA bus mode related parameters
dma_maxburst	DMA max burst related parameters
dma_arbitration	DMA Tx and Rx arbitration related parameters
store_forward_mode	store forward mode related parameters
dma_function	DMA control related parameters
vlan_config	VLAN tag related parameters
flow_control	flow control related parameters
hashtable_high	hash list high 32-bit related parameters
hashtable_low	hash list low 32-bit related parameters
framesfilter_mode	frame filter control related parameters

halfduplex_param	halfduplex related parameters
timer_config	frame timer related parameters
interframegap	inter frame gap related parameters

Structure enet_descriptors_struct

Table 3-197. Structure enet_descriptors_struct

member name	Function description
status	status
control_buffer_size	control and buffer1, buffer2 lengths
buffer1_addr	buffer1 address pointer/timestamp low
buffer2_next_desc_addr	buffer2 or next descriptor address pointer/timestamp high
extended_status	extended status
reserved	reserved
timestamp_low	timestamp low
timestamp_high	timestamp high

Structure enet_ptp_systime_struct

Table 3-198. Structure enet_ptp_systime_struct

member name	Function description
second	second of system time
nanosecond	nanosecond of system time
sign	sign of system time

enet_deinit

The description of enet_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-199. Function enet_deinit

Function name	enet_deinit
Function prototype	void enet_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the ENET, and reset structure parameters for ENET initialization

Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable()/rcu_periph_reset_disable()/enet_initpara_reset()
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the ENET */
```

```
enet_deinit();
```

enet_initpara_config

The description of enet_initpara_config is shown as below:

Table 3-200. Function enet_initpara_config

Function name	enet_initpara_config
Function prototype	void enet_initpara_config(enet_option_enum option, uint32_t para)
Function descriptions	configure the parameters which are usually less cared for initialization, this function must be called before enet_init(), otherwise configuration will be no effect
Precondition	enet_initpara_reset(void)
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
option	different function option, which is related to several parameters only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>FORWARD_OPTION</i>	choose to configure the frame forward related parameters
<i>DMABUS_OPTION</i>	choose to configure the DMA bus mode related parameters
<i>DMA_MAXBURST_OPTION</i>	choose to configure the DMA max burst related parameters
<i>DMA_ARBITRATION_OPTION</i>	choose to configure the DMA arbitration related parameters

<i>STORE_OPTION</i>	choose to configure the store forward mode related parameters
<i>DMA_OPTION</i>	choose to configure the DMA related parameters
<i>VLAN_OPTION</i>	choose to configure vlan related parameters
<i>FLOWCTL_OPTION</i>	choose to configure flow control related parameters
<i>HASHH_OPTION</i>	choose to configure hash high
<i>HASHL_OPTION</i>	choose to configure hash low
<i>FILTER_OPTION</i>	choose to configure frame filter related parameters
<i>HALFDUPLEX_OPTION</i>	choose to configure halfduplex mode related parameters
<i>TIMER_OPTION</i>	choose to configure time counter related parameters
<i>INTERFRAMEGAP_OPTION</i>	choose to configure the inter frame gap related parameters
Input parameter{in}	
para (the value according to the parameter option)	all the related values should be configured which are shown as below example: para = (value1 value2 value3...)
When value of parameter option is <i>FORWARD_OPTION</i>	
value1	<i>ENET_AUTO_PADCRC_DROP_ENABLE</i> / <i>ENET_AUTO_PADCRC_DROP_DISABLE</i>
value2	<i>ENET_FORWARD_ERRFRAMES_ENABLE</i> / <i>ENET_FORWARD_ERRFRAMES_DISABLE</i>
value3	<i>ENET_FORWARD_UNDEFSZ_GOODFRAMES_ENABLE</i> / <i>ENET_FORWARD_UNDEFSZ_GOODFRAMES_DISABLE</i>
value4	<i>ENET_FORWARD_UNDEFSZ_GOODFRAMES_ENABLE</i> / <i>ENET_FORWARD_UNDEFSZ_GOODFRAMES_DISABLE</i>
When value of parameter option is <i>DMABUS_OPTION</i>	
value1	<i>ENET_ADDRESS_ALIGN_ENABLE</i> / <i>ENET_ADDRESS_ALIGN_DISABLE</i>
value2	<i>ENET_FIXED_BURST_ENABLE</i> / <i>ENET_FIXED_BURST_DISABLE</i>
value3	<i>ENET_MIXED_BURST_ENABLE</i> / <i>ENET_MIXED_BURST_DISABLE</i>
When value of parameter option is <i>DMA_MAXBURST_OPTION</i>	
value1	<i>ENET_RXDP_1BEAT</i> / <i>ENET_RXDP_2BEAT</i> / <i>ENET_RXDP_4BEAT</i> /

	<i>ENET_RXDP_8BEAT / ENET_RXDP_16BEAT / ENET_RXDP_32BEAT / ENET_RXDP_4xPGBL_4BEAT / ENET_RXDP_4xPGBL_8BEAT / ENET_RXDP_4xPGBL_16BEAT / ENET_RXDP_4xPGBL_32BEAT / ENET_RXDP_4xPGBL_64BEAT / ENET_RXDP_4xPGBL_128BEAT</i>
value2	<i>ENET_PGBL_1BEAT / ENET_PGBL_2BEAT / ENET_PGBL_4BEAT / ENET_PGBL_8BEAT / ENET_PGBL_16BEAT / ENET_PGBL_32BEAT / ENET_PGBL_4xPGBL_4BEAT / ENET_PGBL_4xPGBL_8BEAT / ENET_PGBL_4xPGBL_16BEAT / ENET_PGBL_4xPGBL_32BEAT / ENET_PGBL_4xPGBL_64BEAT / ENET_PGBL_4xPGBL_128BEAT</i>
value3	<i>ENET_RXTX_DIFFERENT_PGBL / ENET_RXTX_SAME_PGBL</i>
When value of parameter option is DMA_ARBITRATION_OPTION	
value1	<i>ENET_ARBITRATION_RXPRIORTX</i>
value2	<i>ENET_ARBITRATION_RXTX_1_1 / ENET_ARBITRATION_RXTX_2_1 / ENET_ARBITRATION_RXTX_3_1 / ENET_ARBITRATION_RXTX_4_1</i>
When value of parameter option is STORE_OPTION	
value1	<i>ENET_RX_MODE_STOREFORWARD / ENET_RX_MODE_CUTTHROUGH</i>
value2	<i>ENET_TX_MODE_STOREFORWARD / ENET_TX_MODE_CUTTHROUGH</i>
value3	<i>ENET_RX_THRESHOLD_64BYTES / ENET_RX_THRESHOLD_32BYTES / ENET_RX_THRESHOLD_96BYTES / ENET_RX_THRESHOLD_128BYTES</i>
value4	<i>ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_64BYTES / ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_128BYTES / ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_192BYTES / ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_256BYTES / ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_40BYTES / ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_32BYTES / ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_24BYTES / ENET_TX_THRESHOLD_16BYTES</i>
When value of parameter option is DMA_OPTION	
value1	<i>ENET_FLUSH_RXFRAME_ENABLE / ENET_FLUSH_RXFRAME_DISABLE</i>
value2	<i>ENET_SECONDFRAME_OPT_ENABLE / ENET_SECONDFRAME_OPT_DISABLE</i>
value3	<i>ENET_ENHANCED_DESCRIPTOR/ ENET_NORMAL_DESCRIPTOR</i>
When value of parameter option is VLAN_OPTION	
value1	<i>ENET_VLANTAGCOMPARISON_12BIT/ ENET_VLANTAGCOMPARISON_16BIT</i>

value2	MAC_VLT_VLTI(regval)
When value of parameter option is <i>FLOWCTL_OPTION</i>	
value1	MAC_FCTL_PTM(regval)
value2	ENET_ZERO_QUANTA_PAUSE_ENABLE / ENET_ZERO_QUANTA_PAUSE_DISABLE
value3	ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS4 / ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS28 / ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS144/ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS256
value4	ENET_MAC0_AND_UNIQUE_ADDRESS_PAUSEDetect / ENET_UNIQUE_PAUSEDetect
value5	ENET_RX_FLOWCONTROL_ENABLE / ENET_RX_FLOWCONTROL_DISABLE
value6	ENET_TX_FLOWCONTROL_ENABLE / ENET_TX_FLOWCONTROL_DISABLE
When value of parameter option is <i>HASHH_OPTION</i>	
value1	0x0-0xFFFF FFFFU
When value of parameter option is <i>HASHL_OPTION</i>	
value1	0x0-0xFFFF FFFFU
When value of parameter option is <i>FILTER_OPTION</i>	
value1	ENET_SRC_FILTER_NORMAL_ENABLE / ENET_SRC_FILTER_INVERSE_ENABLE / ENET_SRC_FILTER_DISABLE
value2	ENET_DEST_FILTER_INVERSE_ENABLE / ENET_DEST_FILTER_INVERSE_DISABLE
value3	ENET_MULTICAST_FILTER_HASH_OR_PERFECT / ENET_MULTICAST_FILTER_HASH / ENET_MULTICAST_FILTER_PERFECT / ENET_MULTICAST_FILTER_NONE
value4	ENET_UNICAST_FILTER_EITHER / ENET_UNICAST_FILTER_HASH / ENET_UNICAST_FILTER_PERFECT
value5	ENET_PCFRM_PREVENT_ALL / ENET_PCFRM_PREVENT_PAUSEFRAME / ENET_PCFRM_FORWARD_ALL / ENET_PCFRM_FORWARD_FILTERED
When value of parameter option is <i>HALFDUPLEX_OPTION</i>	
value1	ENET_CARRIERSENSE_ENABLE / ENET_CARRIERSENSE_DISABLE

value2	<i>ENET_RECEIVEOWN_ENABLE / ENET_RECEIVEOWN_DISABLE</i>
value3	<i>ENET_RETRYTRANSMISSION_ENABLE / ENET_RETRYTRANSMISSION_DISABLE</i>
value4	<i>ENET_BACKOFFLIMIT_10 / ENET_BACKOFFLIMIT_8 / ENET_BACKOFFLIMIT_4 / ENET_BACKOFFLIMIT_1</i>
value5	<i>ENET_DEFERRALCHECK_ENABLE / ENET_DEFERRALCHECK_DISABLE</i>
When value of parameter option is <i>TIMER_OPTION</i>	
value1	<i>ENET_WATCHDOG_ENABLE / ENET_WATCHDOG_DISABLE</i>
value2	<i>ENET_JABBER_ENABLE / ENET_JABBER_DISABLE</i>
When value of parameter option is <i>INTERFRAMEGAP_OPTION</i>	
value1	<i>ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_96BIT / ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_88BIT / ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_80BIT / ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_72BIT / ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_64BIT / ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_56BIT / ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_48BIT / ENET_INTERFRAMEGAP_40BIT</i>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config DMA option of the ENET */
```

```
enet_initpara_reset();
```

```
enet_initpara_config(DMA_OPTION, ENET_FLUSH_RXFRAME_ENABLE | ENET_SECONDFRAME_OPT_ENABLE | ENET_NORMAL_DESCRIPTOR);
```

enet_init

The description of enet_init is shown as below:

Table 3-201. Function enet_init

Function name	enet_init
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_init(enet_mediamode_enum mediamode, enet_chksumconf_enum checksum, enet_frmrecept_enum recept);
Function descriptions	initialize ENET peripheral with generally concerned parameters and the less

	cared parameters
Precondition	enet_deinit ()
The called functions	enet_phy_config /enet_phy_write_read
Input parameter{in}	
mediamode	PHY mode and mac loopback configurations, only one parameter can be selected
ENET_AUTO_NEGOTIATION	PHY auto negotiation
ENET_100M_FULLDUPLEX	100Mbit/s, full-duplex
ENET_100M_HALFDUPLEX	100Mbit/s, half-duplex
ENET_10M_FULLDUPLEX	10Mbit/s, full-duplex
ENET_10M_HALFDUPLEX	10Mbit/s, half-duplex
ENET_LOOPBACKMODE	MAC in loopback mode at the MII
Input parameter{in}	
checksum	IP frame checksum offload function, only one parameter can be selected
ENET_NO_AUTOCHECKSUM	disable IP frame checksum function
ENET_AUTOCHECKSUM_DROP_FAILFRAMES	enable IP frame checksum function
ENET_AUTOCHECKSUM_ACCEPT_FAILFRAMES	enable IP frame checksum function, and the received frame with only payload error but no other errors will not be dropped
Input parameter{in}	
recept	frame filter function, only one parameter can be selected
ENET_PROMISCUOUS_MODE	promiscuous mode enabled
ENET_RECEIVEALL	all received frame are forwarded to application

<i>ENET_BROADCAST_FRAMES_PASS</i>	the address filters pass all received broadcast frames
<i>ENET_BROADCAST_FRAMES_DROP</i>	the address filters filter all incoming broadcast frames
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* initialize ENET peripheral */
```

```
ErrStatus enet_init_status;
```

```
enet_init_status = enet_init(ENET_AUTO_NEGOTIATION, ENET_AUTOCHECKSUM_DROP_FAILFRAMES, ENET_BROADCAST_FRAMES_PASS);
```

enet_software_reset

The description of enet_software_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-202. Function enet_software_reset

Function name	enet_software_reset
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_software_reset(void);
Function descriptions	reset all core internal registers located in CLK_TX and CLK_RX
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* reset all core internal registers located in CLK_TX and CLK_RX */
```

```
ErrStatus reval_state = ERROR;
```

```
reval_state = enet_software_reset();
```

enet_rxframe_size_get

The description of enet_rxframe_size_get is shown as below:

Table 3-203. Function enet_rxframe_size_get

Function name	enet_rxframe_size_get
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_rxframe_size_get(void);
Function descriptions	check receive frame valid and return frame size
Precondition	-
The called functions	enet_rxframe_drop()
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	size of received frame 0x0 - 0x3FFF

Example:

```
/* check receive frame valid */
```

```
uint32_t reval;
```

```
reval = enet_rxframe_size_get();
```

enet_descriptors_chain_init

The description of enet_descriptors_chain_init is shown as below:

Table 3-204. Function enet_descriptors_chain_init

Function name	enet_descriptors_chain_init
Function prototype	void enet_descriptors_chain_init(enet_dmadirection_enum direction);
Function descriptions	initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in chain mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
direction	the descriptors which users want to init only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_DMA_TX</i>	DMA Tx descriptors
<i>ENET_DMA_RX</i>	DMA Rx descriptors
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in chain mode */
enet_descriptors_chain_init(ENET_DMA_TX);
```

enet_descriptors_ring_init

The description of enet_descriptors_ring_init is shown as below:

Table 3-205. Function enet_descriptors_ring_init

Function name	enet_descriptors_ring_init
Function prototype	void enet_descriptors_ring_init(enet_dmadirection_enum direction);
Function descriptions	initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in ring mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	the descriptors which users want to init only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_DMA_TX</i>	DMA Tx descriptors
<i>ENET_DMA_RX</i>	DMA Rx descriptors
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in ring mode */
```

```
enet_descriptors_ring_init(ENET_DMA_TX);
```

enet_frame_receive

The description of enet_frame_receive is shown as below:

Table 3-206. Function enet_frame_receive

Function name	enet_frame_receive
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_frame_receive(uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t bufsize);
Function descriptions	handle current received frame data to application buffer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
bufsize	the size of buffer which is the parameter in function, (0 -- 1524)
Output parameter{out}	
buffer	pointer to the received frame data if the input is NULL, user should copy data in application by himself
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* transfer received frame data to application buffer */
```

```
uint8_t data_buffer[1500];
```

```
uint32_t data_size;
```

```
enet_frame_receive(data_buffer, &data_size);
```

enet_frame_transmit

The description of enet_frame_transmit is shown as below:

Table 3-207. Function enet_frame_transmit

Function name	enet_frame_transmit
----------------------	---------------------

Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_frame_transmit(uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length);
Function descriptions	handle application buffer data to transmit it
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
buffer	pointer to the frame data to be transmitted if the input is NULL, user should handle the data in application by himself
Input parameter{in}	
length	the length of frame data to be transmitted, (0 -- 1524)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* transfer buffer data of application */
uint8_t data_buffer[1500];
uint32_t data_size = 800;
enet_frame_transmit (data_buffer, data_size);
```

enet_transmit_checksum_config

The description of enet_transmit_checksum_config is shown as below:

Table 3-208. Function enet_transmit_checksum_config

Function name	enet_transmit_checksum_config
Function prototype	void enet_transmit_checksum_config(enet_descriptors_struct *desc, uint32_t checksum);
Function descriptions	configure the transmit IP frame checksum offload calculation and insertion
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to configure, the structure members

	can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Input parameter{in}	
checksum	IP frame checksum configuration only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<code>ENET_CHECKSUM_DISABLE</code>	checksum insertion disabled
<code>ENET_CHECKSUM_IPV4HEADER</code>	only IP header checksum calculation and insertion are enabled
<code>ENET_CHECKSUM_TCPUDPICMP_SEGMENT</code>	TCP/UDP/ICMP checksum insertion calculated but pseudo-header
<code>ENET_CHECKSUM_TCPUDPICMP_FULL</code>	TCP/UDP/ICMP checksum insertion fully calculated
Output parameter{out}	
Return value	

Example:

```

/* configure the transmit IP frame checksum offload calculation and insertion */
enet_descriptors_struct rx_desc;
enet_transmit_checksum_config(rx_desc, ENET_CHECKSUM_TCPUDPICMP_FULL);

```

enet_enable

The description of enet_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-209. Function enet_enable

Function name	enet_enable
Function prototype	void enet_enable(void);
Function descriptions	ENET Tx and Rx function enable (include MAC and DMA module)
Precondition	-
The called functions	enet_tx_enable() /enet_rx_enable()
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the ENET */
```

```
enet_enable();
```

enet_disable

The description of enet_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-210. Function enet_disable

Function name	enet_disable
Function prototype	void enet_disable(void);
Function descriptions	ENET Tx and Rx function disable (include MAC and DMA module)
Precondition	-
The called functions	enet_tx_disable() /enet_rx_disable()
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the ENET */
```

```
enet_disable();
```

enet_mac_address_set

The description of enet_mac_address_set is shown as below:

Table 3-211. Function `enet_mac_address_set`

Function name	<code>enet_mac_address_set</code>
Function prototype	<code>void enet_mac_address_set(enet_macaddress_enum mac_addr, uint8_t paddr[]);</code>
Function descriptions	configure MAC address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mac_addr	select which MAC address will be set only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<code>ENET_MAC_ADDRES S0</code>	set MAC address 0 filter
<code>ENET_MAC_ADDRES S1</code>	set MAC address 1 filter
<code>ENET_MAC_ADDRES S2</code>	set MAC address 2 filter
<code>ENET_MAC_ADDRES S3</code>	set MAC address 3 filter
Input parameter{in}	
paddr	the buffer pointer which stores the MAC address little-ending store, such as MAC address is aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:22, the buffer is {22, ee, dd, cc, bb, aa}
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config mac address */
netif->hwaddr[0] = 0x02;
netif->hwaddr[1] = 0xaa;
netif->hwaddr[2] = 0xbb;
netif->hwaddr[3] = 0xcc;
```

```
netif->hwaddr[4] = 0xdd;
```

```
netif->hwaddr[5] = 0xee;
```

```
enet_mac_address_set(ENET_MAC_ADDRESS0, netif->hwaddr);
```

enet_mac_address_get

The description of enet_mac_address_get is shown as below:

Table 3-212. Function enet_mac_address_get

Function name	enet_mac_address_get
Function prototype	void enet_mac_address_get(enet_macaddress_enum mac_addr, uint8_t paddr[]);
Function descriptions	get MAC address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mac_addr	select which MAC address will be set only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S0	set MAC address 0 filter
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S1	set MAC address 1 filter
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S2	set MAC address 2 filter
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S3	set MAC address 3 filter
Output parameter{out}	
paddr	the buffer pointer which stores the MAC address little-ending store, such as MAC address is aa:bb:cc:dd:ee:22, the buffer is {22, ee, dd, cc, bb, aa}
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get mac address */
```

enet_mac_address_get (ENET_MAC_ADDRESS0, netif->hwaddr);

enet_flag_get

The description of enet_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-213. Function enet_flag_get

Function name	enet_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus enet_flag_get(enet_flag_enum enet_flag);
Function descriptions	get the ENET MAC/MSR/PTP/DMA status flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
enet_flag	ENET status flag, refer to enet_flag_enum only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC_FLAG_MP KR	magic packet received flag
ENET_MAC_FLAG_W UFR	wakeup frame received flag
ENET_MAC_FLAG_FL OWCONTROL	flow control status flag
ENET_MAC_FLAG_W UM	WUM status flag
ENET_MAC_FLAG_MS C	MSC status flag
ENET_MAC_FLAG_MS CR	MSC receive status flag
ENET_MAC_FLAG_MS CT	MSC transmit status flag
ENET_MAC_FLAG_TM ST	time stamp trigger status flag
ENET_PTP_FLAG_TS SCO	timestamp second counter overflow flag
ENET_PTP_FLAG TT M	target time match flag

<i>ENET_MSC_FLAG_RF</i> <i>CE</i>	received frames CRC error flag
<i>ENET_MSC_FLAG_RF</i> <i>AE</i>	received frames alignment error flag
<i>ENET_MSC_FLAG_RG</i> <i>UF</i>	received good unicast frames flag
<i>ENET_MSC_FLAG_TG</i> <i>FSC</i>	transmitted good frames single collision flag
<i>ENET_MSC_FLAG_TG</i> <i>FMSC</i>	transmitted good frames more single collision flag
<i>ENET_MSC_FLAG_TG</i> <i>F</i>	transmitted good frames flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TS</i>	transmit status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TP</i> <i>S</i>	transmit process stopped status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TB</i> <i>U</i>	transmit buffer unavailable status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TJ</i> <i>T</i>	transmit jabber timeout status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RO</i>	receive overflow status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TU</i>	transmit underflow status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RS</i>	receive status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RB</i> <i>U</i>	receive buffer unavailable status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RP</i> <i>S</i>	receive process stopped status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_R</i> <i>WT</i>	receive watchdog timeout status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_ET</i>	early transmit status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_FB</i> <i>E</i>	fatal bus error status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_ER</i>	early receive status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_AI</i>	abnormal interrupt summary flag

<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_NI</i>	normal interrupt summary flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_EB</i> <i>_DMA_ERROR</i>	DMA error flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_EB</i> <i>_TRANSFER_ERROR</i>	transfer error flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_EB</i> <i>_ACCESS_ERROR</i>	access error flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_MS</i> <i>C</i>	MSC status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_W</i> <i>UM</i>	WUM status flag
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TS</i> <i>T</i>	timestamp trigger status flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* check whether the specified flag bit is set */
```

```
enet_flag_get (ENET_DMA_FLAG_RS);
```

enet_flag_clear

The description of enet_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-214. Function enet_flag_clear

Function name	enet_flag_clear
Function prototype	void enet_flag_clear(enet_flag_clear_enum enet_flag);
Function descriptions	clear the ENET DMA status flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
enet_flag	ENET DMA flag clear, refer to enet_flag_clear_enum

	only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TS_CLR</i>	transmit status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TP_S_CLR</i>	transmit process stopped status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TB_U_CLR</i>	transmit buffer unavailable status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TJ_T_CLR</i>	transmit jabber timeout status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RO_CLR</i>	receive overflow status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_TU_CLR</i>	transmit underflow status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RS_CLR</i>	receive status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RB_U_CLR</i>	receive buffer unavailable status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_RP_S_CLR</i>	receive process stopped status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_R_WT_CLR</i>	receive watchdog timeout status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_ET_CLR</i>	early transmit status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_FB_E_CLR</i>	fatal bus error status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_ER_CLR</i>	early receive status flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_AI_CLR</i>	abnormal interrupt summary flag clear
<i>ENET_DMA_FLAG_NI_CLR</i>	normal interrupt summary flag clear
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* clear the specified flag bit */
```

```
enet_flag_clear(ENET_DMA_FLAG_RS_CLR);
```

enet_interrupt_enable

The description of enet_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-215. Function enet_interrupt_enable

Function name	enet_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void enet_interrupt_enable(enet_int_enum enet_int);
Function descriptions	enable ENET MAC/MSC/DMA interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
enet_int	ENET interrupt only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC_INT_WUM IM	WUM interrupt mask
ENET_MAC_INT_TMS TIM	timestamp trigger interrupt mask
ENET_MSC_INT_RFC EIM	received frame CRC error interrupt mask
ENET_MSC_INT_RFA EIM	received frames alignment error interrupt mask
ENET_MSC_INT_RGU FIM	received good unicast frames interrupt mask
ENET_MSC_INT_TGF SCIM	transmitted good frames single collision interrupt mask
ENET_MSC_INT_TGF MSCIM	transmitted good frames more single collision interrupt mask
ENET_MSC_INT_TGFI M	transmitted good frames interrupt mask

<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TIE</i>	transmit interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TPSIE</i>	transmit process stopped interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TBUIE</i>	transmit buffer unavailable interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TJTIME</i>	transmit jabber timeout interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_ROIE</i>	receive overflow interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TUIE</i>	transmit underflow interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RIE</i>	receive interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RBUIE</i>	receive buffer unavailable interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RPSIE</i>	receive process stopped interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RWTIE</i>	receive watchdog timeout interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_ETIE</i>	early transmit interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_FBEIE</i>	fatal bus error interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_ERIE</i>	early receive interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_AIE</i>	abnormal interrupt summary enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_NIE</i>	normal interrupt summary enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable normal interrupt summary */
enet_interrupt_enable(ENET_DMA_INT_NIE);

```

enet_interrupt_disable

The description of enet_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-216. Function enet_interrupt_disable

Function name	enet_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void enet_interrupt_disable(enet_int_enum enet_int);
Function descriptions	disable ENET MAC/MSD/DMA interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
enet_int	ENET interrupt only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_MAC_INT_WUMIM</i>	WUM interrupt mask
<i>ENET_MAC_INT_TMS TIM</i>	timestamp trigger interrupt mask
<i>ENET_MSC_INT_RFC EIM</i>	received frame CRC error interrupt mask
<i>ENET_MSC_INT_RFA EIM</i>	received frames alignment error interrupt mask
<i>ENET_MSC_INT_RGU FIM</i>	received good unicast frames interrupt mask
<i>ENET_MSC_INT_TGF SCIM</i>	transmitted good frames single collision interrupt mask
<i>ENET_MSC_INT_TGF MSCIM</i>	transmitted good frames more single collision interrupt mask
<i>ENET_MSC_INT_TGFI M</i>	transmitted good frames interrupt mask
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TIE</i>	transmit interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TPSI E</i>	transmit process stopped interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TBUI E</i>	transmit buffer unavailable interrupt enable

<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TJTE</i>	transmit jabber timeout interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_ROIE</i>	receive overflow interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_TUIE</i>	transmit underflow interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RIE</i>	receive interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RBUIE</i>	receive buffer unavailable interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RPSIE</i>	receive process stopped interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_RWTIE</i>	receive watchdog timeout interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_ETIE</i>	early transmit interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_FBEIE</i>	fatal bus error interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_ERIE</i>	early receive interrupt enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_AIE</i>	abnormal interrupt summary enable
<i>ENET_DMA_INT_NIE</i>	normal interrupt summary enable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable normal interrupt summary */
enet_interrupt_disable(ENET_DMA_INT_NIE);
```

enet_interrupt_flag_get

The description of enet_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-217. Function enet_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	enet_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus enet_interrupt_flag_get(enet_int_flag_enum int_flag);
Function descriptions	get ENET MAC/MSD/DMA interrupt flag

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	ENET interrupt flag only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC_INT_FLG G_WUM	WUM status flag
ENET_MAC_INT_FLG G_MSC	MSC status flag
ENET_MAC_INT_FLG G_MSCR	MSC receive status flag
ENET_MAC_INT_FLG G_MSCT	MSC transmit status flag
ENET_MAC_INT_FLG G_TMST	time stamp trigger status flag
ENET_MSC_INT_FLG G_RFCE	received frames CRC error flag
ENET_MSC_INT_FLG G_RFAE	received frames alignment error flag
ENET_MSC_INT_FLG G_RGUF	received good unicast frames flag
ENET_MSC_INT_FLG G_TGFSC	transmitted good frames single collision flag
ENET_MSC_INT_FLG G_TGFMSC	transmitted good frames more single collision flag
ENET_MSC_INT_FLG G_TGF	transmitted good frames flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_TS	transmit status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_TPS	transmit process stopped status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_TBU	transmit buffer unavailable status flag

ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_TJT	transmit jabber timeout status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_RO	receive overflow status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_TU	transmit underflow status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_RS	receive status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_RBU	receive buffer unavailable status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_RPS	receive process stopped status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_RWT	receive watchdog timeout status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_ET	early transmit status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_FBE	fatal bus error status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_ER	early receive status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_AI	abnormal interrupt summary flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_NI	normal interrupt summary flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_MSC	MSC status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_WUM	WUM status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLG G_TST	timestamp trigger status flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

FlagStatus	SET or RESET
-------------------	--------------

Example:

```
/* check whether the specified flag bit is set or not */
```

```
enet_interrupt_flag_get(ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_RS);
```

enet_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of enet_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-218. Function enet_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	enet_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void enet_interrupt_flag_clear(enet_int_flag_clear_enum int_flag_clear);
Function descriptions	clear ENET DMA interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag_clear	clear ENET interrupt flag only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_TS_CLR	transmit status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_TPS_CLR	transmit process stopped status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_TBU_CLR	transmit buffer unavailable status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_TJT_CLR	transmit jabber timeout status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_RO_CLR	receive overflow status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_TU_CLR	transmit underflow status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_RS_CLR	receive status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_RBU_CLR	receive buffer unavailable status flag

ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_RPS_CLR	receive process stopped status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_RWT_CLR	receive watchdog timeout status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_ET_CLR	early transmit status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_FBE_CLR	fatal bus error status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_ER_CLR	early receive status flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_AI_CLR	abnormal interrupt summary flag
ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_NI_CLR	normal interrupt summary flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear receive status flag bit */
```

```
enet_interrupt_flag_clear(ENET_DMA_INT_FLAG_RS);
```

enet_tx_enable

The description of enet_tx_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-219. Function enet_tx_enable

Function name	enet_tx_enable
Function prototype	void enet_tx_enable(void);
Function descriptions	ENET Tx function enable (include MAC and DMA module)
Precondition	-
The called functions	enet_txfifo_flush()
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable transport function of MAC and DMA */
```

```
enet_tx_enable();
```

enet_tx_disable

The description of enet_tx_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-220. Function enet_tx_disable

Function name	enet_tx_disable
Function prototype	void enet_tx_disable(void);
Function descriptions	ENET Tx function disable (include MAC and DMA module)
Precondition	-
The called functions	enet_txfifo_flush()
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable transport function of MAC and DMA */
```

```
enet_tx_disable();
```

enet_rx_enable

The description of enet_rx_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-221. Function enet_rx_enable

Function name	enet_rx_enable
Function prototype	void enet_rx_enable(void);
Function descriptions	ENET Rx function enable (include MAC and DMA module)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable reception function of MAC and DMA */
enet_rx_enable();
```

enet_rx_disable

The description of enet_rx_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-222. Function enet_rx_disable

Function name	enet_rx_disable
Function prototype	void enet_rx_disable(void);
Function descriptions	ENET Rx function disable (include MAC and DMA module)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* disable reception function of MAC and DMA */
```

```
enet_rx_disable();
```

enet_registers_get

The description of enet_registers_get is shown as below:

Table 3-223. Function enet_registers_get

Function name	enet_registers_get
Function prototype	void enet_registers_get(enet_registers_type_enum type, uint32_t *preg, uint32_t num);
Function descriptions	put registers value into the application buffer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
type	register type which will be get only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ALL_MAC_REG	get the registers within the offset scope range ENET_MAC_CFG to ENET_MAC_FCTH
ALL_MSC_REG	get the registers within the offset scope range ENET_MSC_CTL to ENET_MSC_RGUFCNT
ALL_PTP_REG	get the registers within the offset scope range ENET_PTP_TSCTL to ENET_PTP_PPSCTL
ALL_DMA_REG	get the registers within the offset scope range ENET_DMA_BCTL to ENET_DMA_CRBADDR
Input parameter{in}	
num	the number of registers that the user want to get, (0 -- 54)
Output parameter{out}	
preg	the application buffer pointer for storing the register value
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get all mac registers value */
uint32_t register_buffer[5];

enet_registers_get(ALL_MAC_REG, 5, register_buffer);
```

enet_debug_status_get

The description of enet_debug_status_get is shown as below:

Table 3-224. Function enet_debug_status_get

Function name	enet_debug_status_get
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_debug_status_get(uint32_t mac_debug);
Function descriptions	get the enet debug status from the debug register
Precondition	-
The called functions	--
Input parameter{in}	
mac_debug	enet debug status only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC_RECEIVE R_NOT_IDLE	MAC receiver is not in idle state
ENET_RX_ASYNC HRONOUS_FIFO_STATE	Rx asynchronous FIFO status
ENET_RXFIFO_WRITE NG	RxFIFO is doing write operation
ENET_RXFIFO_READ _STATUS	RxFIFO read operation status
ENET_RXFIFO_STATE	RxFIFO state
ENET_MAC_TRANSMI TTER_NOT_IDLE	MAC transmitter is not in idle state
ENET_MAC_TRANSMI TTER_STATUS	status of MAC transmitter
ENET_PAUSE_CONDI TION_STATUS	pause condition status
ENET_TXFIFO_READ_	TxFIFO read operation status

<i>STATUS</i>	
<i>ENET_TXFIFO_WRITING</i>	TxFIFO is doing write operation
<i>ENET_TXFIFO_NOT_EMPTY</i>	TxFIFO is not empty
<i>ENET_TXFIFO_FULL</i>	TxFIFO is full
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	value of the status users want to get

Example:

```
/* get debug message of RxFIFO state */
```

```
uint32_t debug_value;
```

```
debug_value = enet_debug_status_get (ENET_RXFIFO_STATE);
```

enet_address_filter_enable

The description of enet_address_filter_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-225. Function enet_address_filter_enable

Function name	enet_address_filter_enable
Function prototype	void enet_address_filter_enable(enet_macaddress_enum mac_addr);
Function descriptions	enable the MAC address filter
Precondition	-
The called functions	--
Input parameter{in}	
mac_addr	select which MAC address will be enable only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_MAC_ADDRES S1</i>	enable MAC address 1 filter
<i>ENET_MAC_ADDRES S2</i>	enable MAC address 2 filter
<i>ENET_MAC_ADDRES</i>	enable MAC address 3 filter

S3	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the MAC address 1 filter */
```

```
enet_address_filter_enable(ENET_MAC_ADDRESS1);
```

enet_address_filter_disable

The description of enet_address_filter_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-226. Function enet_address_filter_disable

Function name	enet_address_filter_disable
Function prototype	void enet_address_filter_disable(enet_macaddress_enum mac_addr);
Function descriptions	disable the MAC address filter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mac_addr	select which MAC address will be enable only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S1	enable MAC address 1 filter
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S2	enable MAC address 2 filter
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S3	enable MAC address 3 filter
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the MAC address 1 filter */
```

```
enet_address_filter_disable(ENET_MAC_ADDRESS1);
```

enet_address_filter_config

The description of enet_address_filter_config is shown as below:

Table 3-227. Function enet_address_filter_config

Function name	enet_address_filter_config
Function prototype	void enet_address_filter_config(enet_macaddress_enum mac_addr, uint32_t addr_mask, uint32_t filter_type);
Function descriptions	configure the MAC address filter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mac_addr	select which MAC address will be enable only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S1	enable MAC address 1 filter
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S2	enable MAC address 2 filter
ENET_MAC_ADDRES S3	enable MAC address 3 filter
Input parameter{in}	
addr_mask	select which MAC address bytes will be mask one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_ADDRESS_MA SK_BYTE0	mask ENET_MAC_ADDR1L[7:0] bits
ENET_ADDRESS_MA SK_BYTE1	mask ENET_MAC_ADDR1L[15:8] bits
ENET_ADDRESS_MA SK_BYTE2	mask ENET_MAC_ADDR1L[23:16] bits
ENET_ADDRESS_MA SK_BYTE3	mask ENET_MAC_ADDR1L [31:24] bits
ENET_ADDRESS_MA	mask ENET_MAC_ADDR1H [7:0] bits

SK_BYTE4	
ENET_ADDRESS_MA SK_BYTE5	mask ENET_MAC_ADDR1H [15:8] bits
Input parameter{in}	
filter_type	select which MAC address filter type will be selected only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_ADDRESS_FILT ER_SA	The MAC address is used to compared with the SA field of the received frame
ENET_ADDRESS_FILT ER_DA	The MAC address is used to compared with the DA field of the received frame
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config the MAC address 1 filter */
```

```
enet_address_filter_config(ENET_MAC_ADDRESS1, ENET_ADDRESS_MASK_BYTE0 |  
ENET_ADDRESS_MASK_BYTE1 | ENET_ADDRESS_MASK_BYTE2, ENET_ADDRESS  
_FILTER_DA);
```

enet_phy_config

The description of enet_phy_config is shown as below:

Table 3-228. Function enet_phy_config

Function name	enet_phy_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_phy_config(void);
Function descriptions	PHY interface configuration (configure SMI clock and reset PHY chip)
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_clock_freq_get()/enet_phy_write_read()
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* config PHY interface */
```

```
enet_phy_config();
```

enet_phy_write_read

The description of enet_phy_write_read is shown as below:

Table 3-229. Function enet_phy_write_read

Function name	enet_phy_write_read
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_phy_write_read(enet_phydirection_enum direction, uint16_t phy_address, uint16_t phy_reg, uint16_t *pvalue);
Function descriptions	write to / read from a PHY register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_PHY_WRITE</i>	write data to phy register
<i>ENET_PHY_READ</i>	read data from phy register
Input parameter{in}	
phy_address	0x0 - 0x1F
Input parameter{in}	
phy_reg	0x0 - 0x1F
Input parameter{in}	
pvalue	the value will be written to the PHY register in ENET_PHY_WRITE direction
Output parameter{out}	
pvalue	the value will be read from the PHY register in ENET_PHY_READ direction
Return value	

ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS
------------------	------------------

Example:

```
/* write 0 to PHY BCR register */
```

```
uint16_t temp_phy = 0U;
```

```
phy_state = enet_phy_write_read(ENET_PHY_WRITE, PHY_ADDRESS, PHY_REG_BCR,
&temp_phy);
```

enet_phyloopback_enable

The description of enet_phyloopback_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-230. Function enet_phyloopback_enable

Function name	enet_phyloopback_enable
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_phyloopback_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the loopback function of PHY chip
Precondition	-
The called functions	enet_phy_write_read()
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* enable the loopback function of PHY chip */
```

```
ErrStatus phy_state = ERROR;
```

```
phy_state = enet_phyloopback_enable();
```

enet_phyloopback_disable

The description of enet_phyloopback_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-231. Function enet_phyloopback_disable

Function name	enet_phyloopback_disable
----------------------	--------------------------

Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_phyloopback_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the loopback function of PHY chip
Precondition	-
The called functions	enet_phy_write_read
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* disable the loopback function of PHY chip */
```

```
ErrStatus phy_state = ERROR;
```

```
phy_state = enet_phyloopback_disable();
```

enet_forward_feature_enable

The description of enet_forward_feature_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-232. Function enet_forward_feature_enable

Function name	enet_forward_feature_enable
Function prototype	void enet_forward_feature_enable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	enable ENET forward feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET forward mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_AUTO_PADCR C_DROP	the function of the MAC strips the Pad/FCS field on received frames
ENET_TYPEFRAME_C RC_DROP	the function that FCS field (last 4 bytes) of frame will be dropped before forwarding

<i>ENET_FORWARD_ER RFRAMES</i>	the function that all frame received with error except runt error are forwarded to memory
<i>ENET_FORWARD_UN DERSZ_GOODFRAME S</i>	the function that forwarding undersized good frames
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the function that forwarding undersized good frames */
```

```
enet_forward_feature_enable(ENET_FORWARD_UNDERSZ_GOODFRAMES);
```

enet_forward_feature_disable

The description of enet_forward_feature_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-233. Function enet_forward_feature_disable

Function name	enet_forward_feature_disable
Function prototype	void enet_forward_feature_disable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	disable ENET forward feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET forward mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
<i>ENET_AUTO_PADCR C_DROP</i>	the function of the MAC strips the Pad/FCS field on received frames
<i>ENET_TYPEFRAME_C RC_DROP</i>	the function that FCS field(last 4 bytes) of frame will be dropped before forwarding
<i>ENET_FORWARD_ER RFRAMES</i>	the function that all frame received with error except runt error are forwarded to memory
<i>ENET_FORWARD_UN</i>	the function that forwarding undersized good frames

<i>DERSZ_GOODFRAME</i> S	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the function that forwarding undersized good frames */
```

```
enet_forward_feature_enable(ENET_FORWARD_UNDEERSZ_GOODFRAMES);
```

enet_fliter_feature_enable

The description of enet_fliter_feature_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-234. Function enet_fliter_feature_enable

Function name	enet_fliter_feature_enable
Function prototype	void enet_fliter_feature_enable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	enable ENET fliter feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET fliter mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
<i>ENET_SRC_FILTER</i>	filter source address function
<i>ENET_SRC_FILTER_INVERSE</i>	inverse source address filtering result function
<i>ENET_DEST_FILTER_INVERSE</i>	inverse DA filtering result function
<i>ENET_MULTICAST_FILTER_PASS</i>	pass all multicast frames function
<i>ENET_MULTICAST_FILTER_HASH_MODE</i>	HASH multicast filter function
<i>ENET_UNICAST_FILTER_HASH_MODE</i>	HASH unicast filter function

<i>ENET_FILTER_MODE</i> <i>_EITHER</i>	HASH or perfect filter function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable filter source address function */
enet_fliter_feature_enable(ENET_SRC_FILTER);
```

enet_fliter_feature_disable

The description of enet_fliter_feature_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-235. Function enet_fliter_feature_disable

Function name	enet_fliter_feature_disable
Function prototype	void enet_fliter_feature_disable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	disable ENET fliter feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET fliter mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
<i>ENET_SRC_FILTER</i>	filter source address function
<i>ENET_SRC_FILTER_I</i> <i>NVERSE</i>	inverse source address filtering result function
<i>ENET_DEST_FILTER</i> <i>INVERSE</i>	inverse DA filtering result function
<i>ENET_MULTICAST_FI</i> <i>LTER_PASS</i>	pass all multicast frames function
<i>ENET_MULTICAST_FI</i> <i>LTER_HASH_MODE</i>	HASH multicast filter function
<i>ENET_UNICAST_FILT</i>	HASH unicast filter function

<i>ER_HASH_MODE</i>	
<i>ENET_FILTER_MODE</i> <i>_EITHER</i>	HASH or perfect filter function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable filter source address function */
enet_fliter_feature_enable(ENET_SRC_FILTER);
```

enet_pauseframe_generate

The description of enet_pauseframe_generate is shown as below:

Table 3-236. Function enet_pauseframe_generate

Function name	enet_pauseframe_generate
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_pauseframe_generate(void);
Function descriptions	generate the pause frame, ENET will send pause frame after enable transmit flow control this function only use in full-duplex mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* generate the pause frame */
ErrStatus reval;
reval = enet_pauseframe_generate();
```

enet_pauseframe_detect_config

The description of enet_pauseframe_detect_config is shown as below:

Table 3-237. Function enet_pauseframe_detect_config

Function name	enet_pauseframe_detect_config
Function prototype	void enet_pauseframe_detect_config(uint32_t detect);
Function descriptions	configure the pause frame detect type
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
detect	pause frame detect type only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MAC0_AND_UNIQUE_ADDRESS_PAUSEDDETECT	besides the unique multicast address, MAC can also use the MAC0 address to detecting pause frame
ENET_UNIQUE_PAUSEDDETECT	only the unique multicast address for pause frame which is specified in IEEE802.3 can be detected
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config the pause frame detect type as ENET_UNIQUE_PAUSEDDETECT */
enet_pauseframe_detect_config(ENET_UNIQUE_PAUSEDDETECT);
```

enet_pauseframe_config

The description of enet_pauseframe_config is shown as below:

Table 3-238. Function enet_pauseframe_config

Function name	enet_pauseframe_config
Function prototype	void enet_pauseframe_config(uint32_t pausetime, uint32_t pause_threshold);
Function descriptions	configure the pause frame parameters

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pausetime	pause time in transmit pause control frame, (0 – 0xFFFF)
Input parameter{in}	
pause_threshold	the threshold of the pause timer for retransmitting frames automatically, this value must make sure to be less than configured pause time, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS4</i>	pause time minus 4 slot times
<i>ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS28</i>	pause time minus 28 slot times
<i>ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS144</i>	pause time minus 144 slot times
<i>ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS256</i>	pause time minus 256 slot times
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config pause time minus 4 slot times */
```

```
enet_pauseframe_config(30, ENET_PAUSETIME_MINUS4);
```

enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config

The description of enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config is shown as below:

Table 3-239. Function enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config

Function name	enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config
Function prototype	void enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config(uint32_t deactive, uint32_t active);
Function descriptions	configure the threshold of the flow control(deactive and active threshold)
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
deactive	the threshold of the deactive flow control, this value should always be less than active flow control value, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DEACTIVE_TH RESHOLD_256BYTES	threshold level is 256 bytes
ENET_DEACTIVE_TH RESHOLD_512BYTES	threshold level is 512 bytes
ENET_DEACTIVE_TH RESHOLD_768BYTES	threshold level is 768 bytes
ENET_DEACTIVE_TH RESHOLD_1024BYTE S	threshold level is 1024 bytes
ENET_DEACTIVE_TH RESHOLD_1280BYTE S	threshold level is 1280 bytes
ENET_DEACTIVE_TH RESHOLD_1536BYTE S	threshold level is 1536 bytes
ENET_DEACTIVE_TH RESHOLD_1792BYTE S	threshold level is 1792 bytes
Input parameter{in}	
active	the threshold of the active flow control, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_ACTIVE_THRE SHOLD_256BYTES	threshold level is 256 bytes
ENET_ACTIVE_THRE SHOLD_512BYTES	threshold level is 512 bytes
ENET_ACTIVE_THRE SHOLD_768BYTES	threshold level is 768 bytes
ENET_ACTIVE_THRE SHOLD_1024BYTES	threshold level is 1024 bytes

ENET_ACTIVE_THRESHOLD_1280BYTES	threshold level is 1280 bytes
ENET_ACTIVE_THRESHOLD_1536BYTES	threshold level is 1536 bytes
ENET_ACTIVE_THRESHOLD_1792BYTES	threshold level is 1792 bytes
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the threshold of the flow control */
```

```
enet_flowcontrol_threshold_config(ENET_DEACTIVE_THRESHOLD_256BYTES, ENET_ACTIVE_THRESHOLD_256BYTES);
```

enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable

The description of enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-240. Function enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable

Function name	enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable
Function prototype	void enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	enable ENET flow control feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET flow control mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_ZERO_QUANTA_PAUSE	the automatic zero-quanta generation function
ENET_TX_FLOWCONTROL	the flow control operation in the MAC
ENET_RX_FLOWCONTROL	decoding function for the received pause frame and process it

<i>ENET_BACK_PRESSURE</i>	back pressure operation in the MAC(only use in half-duplex mode)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the flow control operation in the MAC */
```

```
enet_flowcontrol_feature_enable(ENET_ZERO_QUANTA_PAUSE);
```

enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable

The description of enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-241. Function enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable

Function name	enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable
Function prototype	void enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	disable ENET flow control feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET flow control mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
<i>ENET_ZERO_QUANTA_PAUSE</i>	the automatic zero-quanta generation function
<i>ENET_TX_FLOWCONTROL</i>	the flow control operation in the MAC
<i>ENET_RX_FLOWCONTROL</i>	decoding function for the received pause frame and process it
<i>ENET_BACK_PRESSURE</i>	back pressure operation in the MAC(only use in half-duplex mode)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the automatic zero-quanta generation function */
```

```
enet_flowcontrol_feature_disable(ENET_ZERO_QUANTA_PAUSE);
```

enet_dmaprocess_state_get

The description of enet_dmaprocess_state_get is shown as below:

Table 3-242. Function enet_dmaprocess_state_get

Function name	enet_dmaprocess_state_get
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_dmaprocess_state_get(enet_dmadirection_enum direction);
Function descriptions	get the dma transmit/receive process state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	choose the direction of DMA process which users want to resume only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DMA_TX	DMA transmit process
ENET_DMA_RX	DMA receive process
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	state of dma process, the value range shows below: ENET_RX_STATE_STOPPED / ENET_RX_STATE_FETCHING / ENET_RX_STATE_WAITING / ENET_RX_STATE_SUSPENDED / ENET_RX_STATE_CLOSING / ENET_RX_STATE_QUEUING / ENET_TX_STATE_STOPPED / ENET_TX_STATE_FETCHING / ENET_TX_STATE_WAITING / ENET_TX_STATE_READING / ENET_TX_STATE_SUSPENDED / ENET_TX_STATE_CLOSING

Example:

```
/* get the dma receive process state */
```

```
uint32_t reval;

reval = enet_dmaprocess_state_get(ENET_DMA_RX);

if(ENET_RX_STATE_SUSPENDED == reval){
    do...
}
```

enet_dmaprocess_resume

The description of enet_dmaprocess_resume is shown as below:

Table 3-243. Function enet_dmaprocess_resume

Function name	enet_dmaprocess_resume
Function prototype	void enet_dmaprocess_resume(enet_dmadirection_enum direction);
Function descriptions	poll the DMA transmission/reception enable by writing any value to the ENET_DMA_TPEN/ENET_DMA_RPEN register, this will make the DMA to resume transmission/reception
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	choose the direction of DMA process which users want to resume only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DMA_TX	DMA transmit process
ENET_DMA_RX	DMA receive process
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable DMA receive process */

enet_dmaprocess_resume(ENET_DMA_RX);
```

enet_rxprocess_check_recovery

The description of enet_rxprocess_check_recovery is shown as below:

Table 3-244. Function `enet_rxprocess_check_recovery`

Function name	<code>enet_rxprocess_check_recovery</code>
Function prototype	<code>void enet_rxprocess_check_recovery(void);</code>
Function descriptions	check and recover the Rx process
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* check and recover the Rx process */
enet_rxprocess_check_recovery();
```

`enet_txfifo_flush`

The description of `enet_txfifo_flush` is shown as below:

Table 3-245. Function `enet_txfifo_flush`

Function name	<code>enet_txfifo_flush</code>
Function prototype	<code>ErrStatus enet_txfifo_flush(void);</code>
Function descriptions	flush the ENET transmit FIFO, and wait until the flush operation completes
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS
------------------	------------------

Example:

```
/* flush the ENET transmit FIFO */
```

```
ErrStatus reval = ERROR;
```

```
reval = enet_txfifo_flush();
```

enet_current_desc_address_get

The description of enet_current_desc_address_get is shown as below:

Table 3-246. Function enet_current_desc_address_get

Function name	enet_current_desc_address_get
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_current_desc_address_get(enet_desc_reg_enum addr_get);
Function descriptions	get the transmit/receive address of current descriptor, or current buffer, or descriptor table
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
addr_get	choose the address which users want to get only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_RX_DESC_TABLE	the start address of the receive descriptor table
ENET_RX_CURRENT_DESC	the start descriptor address of the current receive descriptor read by the RxDMA controller
ENET_RX_CURRENT_BUFFER	the current receive buffer address being read by the RxDMA controller
ENET_TX_DESC_TABLE	the start address of the transmit descriptor table
ENET_TX_CURRENT_DESC	the start descriptor address of the current transmit descriptor read by the TxDMA controller
ENET_TX_CURRENT_BUFFER	the current transmit buffer address being read by the TxDMA controller
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
uint32_t	0- 0xFFFFFFFF

Example:

```
/* get the start address of the receive descriptor table */
```

```
uint32_t reval;
```

```
reval = enet_current_desc_address_get(ENET_RX_DESC_TABLE);
```

enet_desc_information_get

The description of enet_desc_information_get is shown as below:

Table 3-247. Function enet_desc_information_get

Function name	enet_desc_information_get
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_desc_information_get(enet_descriptors_struct*desc, enet_descstate_enum info_get);
Function descriptions	get the Tx or Rx descriptor information
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to get information, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Input parameter{in}	
info_get	the descriptor information type which is selected only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
RXDESC_BUFFER_1_SIZE	receive buffer 1 size
RXDESC_BUFFER_2_SIZE	receive buffer 2 size
RXDESC_FRAME_LENGTH	the byte length of the received frame that was transferred to the buffer
TXDESC_COLLISION_COUNT	the number of collisions occurred before the frame was transmitted
RXDESC_BUFFER_1_ADDR	the buffer1 address of the Rx frame

<i>TXDESC_BUFFER_1_ADDR</i>	the buffer1 address of the Tx frame
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	descriptor information if value is 0xFFFFFFFFU, means the false input parameter

Example:

```
/* get the reception buffer 1 size */
```

```
uint32_t reval;
```

```
reval = enet_desc_information_get(rx_desc, RXDESC_BUFFER_1_SIZE);
```

enet_missed_frame_counter_get

The description of enet_missed_frame_counter_get is shown as below:

Table 3-248. Function enet_missed_frame_counter_get

Function name	enet_missed_frame_counter_get
Function prototype	void enet_missed_frame_counter_get(uint32_t*rxfifo_drop, uint32_t*rxdma_drop);
Function descriptions	get the number of missed frames during receiving
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
rxfifo_drop	pointer to the number of frames dropped by RxFIFO
Output parameter{out}	
rxdma_drop	pointer to the number of frames missed by the RxDMA controller
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get the number of missed frames during receiving */
```

```
uint32_t rxcnt, txcnt;
```

```
enet_missed_frame_counter_get(&rxcnt, &txcnt);
```

enet_desc_flag_get

The description of enet_desc_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-249. Function enet_desc_flag_get

Function name	enet_desc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus enet_desc_flag_get(enet_descriptors_struct *desc, uint32_t desc_flag);
Function descriptions	get the bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to get flag , the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Input parameter{in}	
desc_flag (the value according to the parameter desc)	the bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
When type of parameter desc is TX	
ENET_TDES0_DB	deferred
ENET_TDES0_UFE	underflow error
ENET_TDES0_EXD	excessive deferral
ENET_TDES0_VFRM	VLAN frame
ENET_TDES0_ECO	excessive collision
ENET_TDES0_LCO	late collision
ENET_TDES0_NCA	no carrier
ENET_TDES0_LCA	loss of carrier
ENET_TDES0_IPPE	IP payload error
ENET_TDES0_FRMF	frame flushed

<i>ENET_TDES0_JT</i>	jabber timeout
<i>ENET_TDES0_ES</i>	error summary
<i>ENET_TDES0_IPHE</i>	IP header error
<i>ENET_TDES0_TTMSS</i>	transmit timestamp status
<i>ENET_TDES0_TCHM</i>	the second address chained mode
<i>ENET_TDES0_TERM</i>	transmit end of ring mode
<i>ENET_TDES0_TTSSEN</i>	transmit timestamp function enable
<i>ENET_TDES0_DPAD</i>	disable adding pad
<i>ENET_TDES0_DCRC</i>	disable CRC
<i>ENET_TDES0_FSG</i>	first segment
<i>ENET_TDES0_LSG</i>	last segment
<i>ENET_TDES0_INTC</i>	interrupt on completion
<i>ENET_TDES0_DAV</i>	DAV bit
When type of parameter desc is RX	
<i>ENET_RDES0_PCERR</i>	payload checksum error
<i>ENET_RDES0_CERR</i>	CRC error
<i>ENET_RDES0_DBERR</i>	dribble bit error
<i>ENET_RDES0_RERR</i>	receive error
<i>ENET_RDES0_RWDT</i>	receive watchdog timeout
<i>ENET_RDES0_FRMT</i>	frame type
<i>ENET_RDES0_LCO</i>	late collision
<i>ENET_RDES0_IPHER</i> <i>R</i>	IP frame header error
<i>ENET_RDES0_LDES</i>	last descriptor
<i>ENET_RDES0_FDES</i>	first descriptor
<i>ENET_RDES0_VTAG</i>	VLAN tag
<i>ENET_RDES0_OERR</i>	overflow error
<i>ENET_RDES0_LERR</i>	length error
<i>ENET_RDES0_SAFF</i>	SA filter fail

<i>ENET_RDES0_DERR</i>	descriptor error
<i>ENET_RDES0_ERRS</i>	error summary
<i>ENET_RDES0_DAFF</i>	destination address filter fail
<i>ENET_RDES0_DAV</i>	descriptor available
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor */
```

```
FlagStatus reval;
```

```
reval = enet_desc_flag_get(p_txdesc, ENET_TDES0_TCHM);
```

enet_desc_flag_set

The description of enet_desc_flag_set is shown as below:

Table 3-250. Function enet_desc_flag_set

Function name	enet_desc_flag_set
Function prototype	void enet_desc_flag_set(enet_descriptors_struct*desc, uint32_t desc_flag);
Function descriptions	set the bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to set flag , the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Input parameter{in}	
desc_flag (the value according to the parameter desc)	the bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
When type of parameter desc is TX	
<i>ENET_TDES0_VFRM</i>	VLAN frame

<i>ENET_TDES0_FRMF</i>	frame flushed
<i>ENET_TDES0_TCHM</i>	the second address chained mode
<i>ENET_TDES0_TERM</i>	transmit end of ring mode
<i>ENET_TDES0_TTSEN</i>	transmit timestamp function enable
<i>ENET_TDES0_DPAD</i>	disable adding pad
<i>ENET_TDES0_DCRC</i>	disable CRC
<i>ENET_TDES0_FSG</i>	first segment
<i>ENET_TDES0_LSG</i>	last segment
<i>ENET_TDES0_INTC</i>	interrupt on completion
<i>ENET_TDES0_DAV</i>	DAV bit
When type of parameter desc is RX	
<i>ENET_RDES0_DAV</i>	descriptor available
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set VLAN frame bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor */
enet_desc_flag_set(p_txdesc, ENET_TDES0_VFRM);
```

enet_desc_flag_clear

The description of enet_desc_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-251. Function enet_desc_flag_clear

Function name	enet_desc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void enet_desc_flag_clear(enet_descriptors_struct *desc, uint32_t desc_flag);
Function descriptions	clear the bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to set flag, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Input parameter{in}	
desc_flag (the value according to the parameter desc)	the bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
When type of parameter desc is TX	
<i>ENET_TDES0_VFRM</i>	VLAN frame
<i>ENET_TDES0_FRMF</i>	frame flushed
<i>ENET_TDES0_TCHM</i>	the second address chained mode
<i>ENET_TDES0_TERM</i>	transmit end of ring mode
<i>ENET_TDES0_TTSN</i>	transmit timestamp function enable
<i>ENET_TDES0_DPAD</i>	disable adding pad
<i>ENET_TDES0_DCRC</i>	disable CRC
<i>ENET_TDES0_FSG</i>	first segment
<i>ENET_TDES0_LSG</i>	last segment
<i>ENET_TDES0_INTC</i>	interrupt on completion
<i>ENET_TDES0_DAV</i>	DAV bit
When type of parameter desc is RX	
<i>ENET_RDES0_DAV</i>	descriptor available
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* clear VLAN frame bit flag of ENET DMA descriptor */
enet_desc_flag_clear(p_txdesc, ENET_TDES0_VFRM);

```

enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt

The description of enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt is shown as below:

Table 3-252. Function enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt

Function name	enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt
Function prototype	void enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt(enet_descriptors_struct *desc);
Function descriptions	when receiving completed, set RS bit in ENET_DMA_STAT register will immediately set
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to get flag, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set RS bit in ENET_DMA_STAT register immediately when receiving completed */
enet_rx_desc_immediate_receive_complete_interrupt(p_rxdesc);
```

enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt

The description of enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt is shown as below:

Table 3-253. Function enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt

Function name	enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt
Function prototype	void enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt(enet_descriptors_struct *desc, uint32_t delay_time);
Function descriptions	when receiving completed, set RS bit in ENET_DMA_STAT register will is set after a configurable delay time
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to get flag , the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Input parameter{in}	
delay_time	delay a time of 256*delay_time HCLK(0x00000000 - 0x000000FF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* when receiving completed, RS bit in ENET_DMA_STAT register will be set after 256*16
HCLK */
```

```
enet_rx_desc_delay_receive_complete_interrupt(p_rxdesc, 0x00000010);
```

enet_rxframe_drop

The description of enet_rxframe_drop is shown as below:

Table 3-254. Function enet_rxframe_drop

Function name	enet_rxframe_drop
Function prototype	void enet_rxframe_drop(void);
Function descriptions	drop current receive frame
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* drop current receive frame */
```

```
enet_rxframe_drop( );
```

enet_dma_feature_enable

The description of enet_dma_feature_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-255. Function enet_dma_feature_enable

Function name	enet_dma_feature_enable
Function prototype	void enet_dma_feature_enable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	enable DMA feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of DMA mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_NO_FLUSH_RX FRAME	RxDMA does not flushes frames function
ENET_SECONDFRAM E_OPT	TxDMA controller operate on second frame function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable RxDMA does not flushes frames function */
```

```
enet_dma_feature_enable(ENET_NO_FLUSH_RXFRAME);
```

enet_dma_feature_disable

The description of enet_dma_feature_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-256. Function enet_dma_feature_disable

Function name	enet_dma_feature_disable
Function prototype	void enet_dma_feature_disable(uint32_t feature);

Function descriptions	disable DMA feature
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of DMA mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
<i>ENET_NO_FLUSH_RX FRAME</i>	RxDMA does not flushes frames function
<i>ENET_SECONDFRAM E_OPT</i>	TxDMA controller operate on second frame function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable RxDMA does not flushes frames function */
enet_dma_feature_disable(ENET_NO_FLUSH_RXFRAME);
```

enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get

The description of enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get is shown as below:

Table 3-257. Function enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get

Function name	enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get(enet_descriptors_struct *desc, uint32_t desc_status);
Function descriptions	get the bit of extended status flag in ENET DMA descriptor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
desc	the descriptor pointer which users want to get the extended status flag , the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Input parameter{in}	

desc_status	desc_status: the extended status want to get only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_RDES4_IPPLDT</i>	IP frame payload type
<i>ENET_RDES4_IPHER</i> <i>R</i>	IP frame header error
<i>ENET_RDES4_IPPLDER</i> <i>RR</i>	IP frame payload error
<i>ENET_RDES4_IPCKSB</i> <i>B</i>	IP frame checksum bypassed
<i>ENET_RDES4_IPF4</i>	IP frame in version 4
<i>ENET_RDES4_IPF6</i>	IP frame in version 6
<i>ENET_RDES4_PTPMT</i>	PTP message type
<i>ENET_RDES4_PTPOEF</i> <i>F</i>	PTP on ethernet frame
<i>ENET_RDES4_PTPVF</i>	PTP version format
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get the IP frame payload type in ENET DMA descriptor */
```

```
uint32_t status;
```

```
status = enet_rx_desc_enhanced_status_get(p_rxdesc, ENET_RDES4_IPPLDT);
```

enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode

The description of enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode is shown as below:

Table 3-258. Function enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode

Function name	enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode
Function prototype	void enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode(void);
Function descriptions	configure descriptor to work in enhanced mode

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure descriptor to work in enhanced mode */
```

```
enet_desc_select_enhanced_mode();
```

enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init

The description of enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init is shown as below:

Table 3-259. Function enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init

Function name	enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init(enet_dmadirection_enum direction);
Function descriptions	initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in enhanced chain mode with ptp function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	the descriptors which users want to init, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DMA_TX	DMA Tx descriptors
ENET_DMA_RX	DMA Rx descriptors
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* initialize the DMA Tx descriptors's parameters in enhanced chain mode with ptp function */
enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_chain_init(ENET_DMA_TX);
```

enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init

The description of enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init is shown as below:

Table 3-260. Function enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init

Function name	enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init(enet_dmadirection_enum direction);
Function descriptions	initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in enhanced ring mode with ptp function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	the descriptors which users want to init, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DMA_TX	DMA Tx descriptors
ENET_DMA_RX	DMA Rx descriptors
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the DMA Rx descriptors's parameters in enhanced ring mode with ptp function */
enet_ptp_enhanced_descriptors_ring_init(ENET_DMA_RX);
```

enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode

The description of enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode is shown as below:

Table 3-261. Function `enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode`

Function name	<code>enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode</code>
Function prototype	<code>ErrStatus enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode(uint8_t*buffer, uint32_t bufsize, uint32_t timestamp[]);</code>
Function descriptions	receive a packet data with timestamp values to application buffer, when the DMA is in enhanced mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
bufsize	the size of buffer which is the parameter in function
Output parameter{out}	
buffer	pointer to the application buffer
Output parameter{out}	
timestamp	pointer to the table which stores the timestamp high and low
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS or ERROR

Example:

```
/* receive a packet data with timestamp values to application buffer in DMA enhanced mode
*/
```

```
uint32_t rx_buffer[500];
```

```
uint32_t time_stamp[2];
```

```
ErrStatus status;
```

```
status = enet_ptpframe_receive_enhanced_mode (rx_buffer, 500, time_stamp);
```

`enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode`

The description of `enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode` is shown as below:

Table 3-262. Function `enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode`

Function name	<code>enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode</code>
Function prototype	<code>ErrStatus enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode(uint8_t*buffer, uint32_t length, uint32_t timestamp[]);</code>
Function descriptions	send data with timestamp values in application buffer as a transmit packet,

	when the DMA is in enhanced mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
buffer	pointer on the application buffer note -- if the input is NULL, user should copy data in application by himself
Input parameter{in}	
length	the length of frame data to be transmitted
Output parameter{out}	
timestamp	pointer to the table which stores the timestamp high and low note -- if the input is NULL, timestamp is ignored
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS or ERROR

Example:

```
/* send data and timestamp values in application buffer as a transmit packet with DMA
enhanced mode */
```

```
uint32_t tx_buffer[500];
```

```
uint32_t time_stamp[2];
```

```
ErrStatus status;
```

```
status = enet_ptpframe_transmit_enhanced_mode(tx_buffer, 500, time_stamp);
```

enet_desc_select_normal_mode

The description of enet_desc_select_normal_mode is shown as below:

Table 3-263. Function enet_desc_select_normal_mode

Function name	enet_desc_select_normal_mode
Function prototype	void enet_desc_select_normal_mode(void);
Function descriptions	configure descriptor to work in normal mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure descriptor to work in normal mode */
```

```
enet_desc_select_normal_mode();
```

enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init

The description of enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init is shown as below:

Table 3-264. Function enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init

Function name	enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init(enet_dmadirection_enum direction, enet_descriptors_struct *desc_ptptab);
Function descriptions	initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in normal chain mode with PTP function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	the descriptors which users want to init only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DMA_TX	DMA Tx descriptors
ENET_DMA_RX	DMA Rx descriptors
Input parameter{in}	
desc_ptptab	pointer to the first descriptor address of PTP Rx descriptor table, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* initialize the DMA Rx descriptors's parameters in normal chain mode with PTP function */
enet_descriptors_struct ptp_rxdesc_tab[ENET_RXBUF_NUM];

enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_chain_init(ENET_DMA_RX, ptp_rxdesc_tab);
```

enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init

The description of enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init is shown as below:

Table 3-265. Function enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init

Function name	enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init(enet_dmadirection_enum direction, enet_descriptors_struct*desc_ptptab);
Function descriptions	initialize the DMA Tx/Rx descriptors's parameters in normal ring mode with PTP function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
direction	the descriptors which users want to init only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_DMA_TX	DMA Tx descriptors
ENET_DMA_RX	DMA Rx descriptors
Input parameter{in}	
desc_ptptab	pointer to the first descriptor address of PTP Rx descriptor table, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_descriptors_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the DMA Rx descriptors's parameters in normal ring mode with PTP function */
```

```
enet_descriptors_struct ptp_rxdesc_tab[ENET_RXBUF_NUM];
```

```
enet_ptp_normal_descriptors_ring_init(ENET_DMA_RX, ptp_rxdesc_tab);
```

enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode

The description of enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode is shown as below:

Table 3-266. Function enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode

Function name	enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode(uint8_t*buffer, uint32_t bufsize, uint32_t timestamp[]);
Function descriptions	receive a packet data with timestamp values to application buffer, when the DMA is in normal mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
bufsize	the size of buffer which is the parameter in function
Output parameter{out}	
timestamp	pointer to the table which stores the timestamp high and low
Output parameter{out}	
buffer	pointer to the application buffer if the input is NULL, user should copy data in application by himself
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* receive a packet data with timestamp values to application buffer in DMA normal mode */
```

```
uint32_t rx_buffer[500];
```

```
uint32_t time_stamp[2];
```

```
ErrStatus status;
```

```
status = enet_ptpframe_receive_normal_mode(rx_buffer, 500, time_stamp);
```

enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode

The description of enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode is shown as below:

Table 3-267. Function enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode

Function name	enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode(uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length, uint32_t timestamp[]);
Function descriptions	send data with timestamp values in application buffer as a transmit packet, when the DMA is in normal mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	--
Input parameter{in}	
buffer	pointer on the application buffer if the input is NULL, user should copy data in application by himself
Input parameter{in}	
length	the length of frame data to be transmitted
Output parameter{out}	
timestamp	pointer to the table which stores the timestamp high and low if the input is NULL, timestamp is ignored
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* send data and timestamp values in application buffer as a transmit packet with DMA normal mode */
```

```
uint32_t tx_buffer[500];
```

```
uint32_t time_stamp[2];
```

```
ErrStatus status;
```

```
status = enet_ptpframe_transmit_normal_mode(tx_buffer, 500, time_stamp);
```

enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset

The description of enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-268. Function enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset

Function name	enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset
Function prototype	void enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset(void);

Function descriptions	wakeup frame filter register pointer reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset wakeup frame filter register pointer */
```

```
enet_wum_filter_register_pointer_reset ();
```

enet_wum_filter_config

The description of enet_wum_filter_config is shown as below:

Table 3-269. Function enet_wum_filter_config

Function name	enet_wum_filter_config
Function prototype	void enet_wum_filter_config(uint32_t pdata[]);
Function descriptions	set the remote wakeup frame registers
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pdata	pointer to buffer data which is written to remote wakeup frame registers (8 words total)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the remote wakeup frame registers */
```

```
uint32_t wum_data[8];
```

```
enet_wum_filter_config (wum_data);
```

enet_wum_feature_enable

The description of enet_wum_feature_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-270. Function enet_wum_feature_enable

Function name	enet_wum_feature_enable
Function prototype	void enet_wum_feature_enable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	enable wakeup management features
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_WUM_POWER_DOWN	power down mode
ENET_WUM_MAGIC_PACKET_FRAME	enable a wakeup event due to magic packet reception
ENET_WUM_WAKEUP_FRAME	enable a wakeup event due to wakeup frame reception
ENET_WUM_GLOBAL_UNICAST	any received unicast frame passed filter is considered to be a wakeup frame
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable power down mode */
```

```
enet_wum_feature_enable(ENET_WUM_POWER_DOWN);
```

enet_wum_feature_disable

The description of enet_wum_feature_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-271. Function enet_wum_feature_disable

Function name	enet_wum_feature_disable
Function prototype	void enet_wum_feature_disable(uint32_t feature)
Function descriptions	disable wakeup management features
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_WUM_MAGIC_PACKET_FRAME	enable a wakeup event due to magic packet reception
ENET_WUM_WAKEUP_FRAME	enable a wakeup event due to wakeup frame reception
ENET_WUM_GLOBAL_UNICAST	any received unicast frame passed filter is considered to be a wakeup frame
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable power down mode */
```

```
enet_wum_feature_disable(ENET_WUM_POWER_DOWN);
```

enet_msc_counters_reset

The description of enet_msc_counters_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-272. Function enet_msc_counters_reset

Function name	enet_msc_counters_reset
Function prototype	void enet_msc_counters_reset(void);
Function descriptions	reset the MAC statistics counters

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the MAC statistics counters */
```

```
enet_msc_counters_reset();
```

enet_msc_feature_enable

The description of enet_msc_feature_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-273. Function enet_msc_feature_enable

Function name	enet_msc_feature_enable
Function prototype	void enet_msc_feature_enable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	enable the MAC statistics counter features
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_MSC_COUNTER_STOP_ROLLOVER	counter stop rollover
ENET_MSC_COUNTER_RESET_ON_READ	reset on read
ENET_MSC_COUNTER_FREEZE	MSC counter freeze
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable counter stop rollover function */
```

```
enet_msc_feature_enable(ENET_MSC_COUNTER_STOP_ROLLOVER);
```

enet_msc_feature_disable

The description of enet_msc_feature_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-274. Function enet_msc_feature_disable

Function name	enet_msc_feature_disable
Function prototype	void enet_msc_feature_disable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	disable the MAC statistics counter features
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_MSC_COUNTER_STOP_ROLLOVER	counter stop rollover
ENET_MSC_RESET_ON_READ	reset on read
ENET_MSC_COUNTER_FREEZE	MSC counter freeze
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable counter stop rollover function */
```

```
enet_msc_feature_disable(ENET_MSC_COUNTER_STOP_ROLLOVER);
```

enet_msc_counters_preset_config

The description of enet_msc_counters_preset_config is shown as below:

Table 3-275. Function enet_msc_counters_preset_config

Function name	enet_msc_counters_preset_config
Function prototype	void enet_msc_counters_preset_config(enet_msc_preset_enum mode);
Function descriptions	configure MAC statistics counters preset mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mode	MSC counters preset mode, refer to enet_msc_preset_enum only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_MSC_PRESET_NONE	do not preset MSC counter
ENET_MSC_PRESET_HALF	preset all MSC counters to almost-half(0x7FFF FFF0) value
ENET_MSC_PRESET_FULL	preset all MSC counters to almost-full(0xFFFF FFF0) value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* preset all MSC counters to almost-half */
```

```
enet_msc_counters_preset_config (ENET_MSC_PRESET_HALF);
```

enet_msc_counters_get

The description of enet_msc_counters_get is shown as below:

Table 3-276. Function enet_msc_counters_get

Function name	enet_msc_counters_get
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_msc_counters_get(enet_msc_counter_enum counter);

Function descriptions	get MAC statistics counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
counter	MSC counters which is selected only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
<i>ENET_MSC_TX_SCCNT</i>	MSC transmitted good frames after a single collision counter
<i>ENET_MSC_TX_MSCCNT</i>	MSC transmitted good frames after more than a single collision counter
<i>ENET_MSC_TX_TGFCNT</i>	MSC transmitted good frames counter
<i>ENET_MSC_RX_RFCECNT</i>	MSC received frames with CRC error counter
<i>ENET_MSC_RX_RFAECNT</i>	MSC received frames with alignment error counter
<i>ENET_MSC_RX_RGUFCNT</i>	MSC received good unicast frames counter
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the MSC counter value

Example:

```

/* get MSC transmitted good frames after a single collision counter value*/
uint32_t reval;
reval = enet_msc_counters_get(ENET_MSC_TX_SCCNT);

```

enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond

The description of enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond is shown as below:

Table 3-277. Function enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond

Function name	enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond
----------------------	---------------------------------

Function prototype	uint32_t enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond(uint32_t subsecond);
Function descriptions	change subsecond to nanosecond
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
subsecond	subsecond value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the nanosecond value

Example:

```
/* change subsecond to nanosecond */
```

```
uint32_t reval;
```

```
reval = enet_ptp_subsecond_2_nanosecond (2);
```

enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond

The description of enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond is shown as below:

Table 3-278. Function enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond

Function name	enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond
Function prototype	uint32_t enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond(uint32_t nanosecond);
Function descriptions	change nanosecond to subsecond
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
nanosecond	Nanosecond value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the subsecond value

Example:

```
/* change nanosecond to subsecond */
uint32_t reval;

reval = enet_ptp_nanosecond_2_subsecond (2);
```

enet_ptp_feature_enable

The description of enet_ptp_feature_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-279. Function enet_ptp_feature_enable

Function name	enet_ptp_feature_enable
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_feature_enable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	enable the PTP features
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET PTP mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_RXTX_TIMESTAMP	timestamp function for transmit and receive frames
ENET_PTP_TIMESTAMP_INTERRUPT	timestamp interrupt trigger
ENET_ALL_RX_TIMESTAMP	all received frames are taken snapshot
ENET_NONTYPE_FRAME_SNAPSHOT	take snapshot when received non type frame
ENET_IPV6_FRAME_SNAPSHOT	take snapshot for IPv6 frame
ENET_IPV4_FRAME_SNAPSHOT	take snapshot for IPv4 frame
ENET_PTP_FRAME_USE_MACADDRESS_FILTER	use MAC address1-3 to filter the PTP frame
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable PTP function for all received frames */
```

```
enet_ptp_feature_enable(ENET_ALL_RX_TIMESTAMP);
```

enet_ptp_feature_disable

The description of enet_ptp_feature_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-280. Function enet_ptp_feature_disable

Function name	enet_ptp_feature_disable
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_feature_disable(uint32_t feature);
Function descriptions	disable the PTP features
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
feature	the feature of ENET PTP mode one or more parameters can be selected which are shown as below
ENET_RXTX_TIMESTAMP	timestamp function for transmit and receive frames
ENET_PTP_TIMESTAMP_INT	timestamp interrupt trigger
ENET_ALL_RX_TIMESTAMP	all received frames are taken snapshot
ENET_NONTYPE_FRAME_SNAPSHOT	take snapshot when received non type frame
ENET_IPV6_FRAME_SNAPSHOT	take snapshot for IPv6 frame
ENET_IPV4_FRAME_SNAPSHOT	take snapshot for IPv4 frame
ENET_PTP_FRAME_U	use MAC address1-3 to filter the PTP frame

SE_MACADDRESS_FILTER	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable PTP function for all received frames */
```

```
enet_ptp_feature_disable(ENET_ALL_RX_TIMESTAMP);
```

enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config

The description of enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config is shown as below:

Table 3-281. Function enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config

Function name	enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config(enet_ptp_function_enum func);
Function descriptions	configure the PTP timestamp function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
func	only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_CKNT_ORDINARY	type of ordinary clock node type for timestamp
ENET_CKNT_BOUNDARY	type of boundary clock node type for timestamp
ENET_CKNT_END_TO_END	type of end-to-end transparent clock node type for timestamp
ENET_CKNT_PEER_TO_PEER	type of peer-to-peer transparent clock node type for timestamp
ENET_PTP_ADDEND_UPDATE	addend register update
ENET_PTP_SYSTIME_UPDATE	timestamp update

<i>UPDATE</i>	
<i>ENET_PTP_SYSTIME_INIT</i>	timestamp initialize
<i>ENET_PTP_FINEMODE</i>	the system timestamp uses the fine method for updating
<i>ENET_PTP_COARSEMODE</i>	the system timestamp uses the coarse method for updating
<i>ENET_SUBSECOND_DIGITAL_ROLLOVER</i>	digital rollover mode
<i>ENET_SUBSECOND_BINARY_ROLLOVER</i>	digital rollover mode
<i>ENET_SNOOPING_PTP_VERSION_2</i>	version 2
<i>ENET_SNOOPING_PTP_VERSION_1</i>	version 1
<i>ENET_EVENT_TYPE_MESSAGES_SNAPSHOT</i>	only event type messages are taken snapshot
<i>ENET_ALL_TYPE_MESSAGES_SNAPSHOT</i>	all type messages are taken snapshot except announce, management and signaling message
<i>ENET_MASTER_NODE_MESSAGE_SNAPSHOT</i>	snapshot is only take for master node message
<i>ENET_SLAVE_NODE_MESSAGE_SNAPSHOT</i>	snapshot is only taken for slave node message
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS or ERROR

Example:

```
/* config addend register update function */
```

```
ErrStatus reval = ERROR;
```

```
reval = enet_ptp_timestamp_function_config(ENET_PTP_ADDEND_UPDATE);
```

enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config

The description of enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config is shown as below:

Table 3-282. Function enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config

Function name	enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config(uint32_t subsecond);
Function descriptions	configure system time subsecond increment value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
subsecond	the value will be added to the subsecond value of system time, this value must be between 0 and 0xFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure 0x1F as system time subsecond increment value */
enet_ptp_subsecond_increment_config(0x1F);
```

enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config

The description of enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config is shown as below:

Table 3-283. Function enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config

Function name	enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config(uint32_t add);
Function descriptions	adjusting the clock frequency only in fine update mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

add	the value will be added to the accumulator register to achieve time synchronization (0 – 0xFFFF FFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

```
/* added 0x1FFF to the accumulator register */
```

```
enet_ptp_timestamp_addend_config(0x1FFF);
```

enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config

The description of enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config is shown as below:

Table 3-284. Function enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config

Function name	enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config(uint32_t sign, uint32_t second, uint32_t subsecond);
Function descriptions	initialize or add/subtract to second of the system time
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sign	timestamp update positive or negative sign, only one parameter can be selected which is shown as below
ENET_PTP_ADD_TO_TIME	update value is added to system time
ENET_PTP_SUBTRACT_FROM_TIME	timestamp update value is subtracted from system time
Input parameter{in}	
second	initializing or adding/subtracting to second of the system time (0 – 0xFFFF FFFF)
Input parameter{in}	
subsecond	the current subsecond of the system time with 0.46 ns accuracy (0 – 0x7FFF FFFF)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize system time with timestamp update value */
```

```
enet_ptp_timestamp_update_config(ENET_PTP_ADD_TO_TIME, 0, 0);
```

enet_ptp_expected_time_config

The description of enet_ptp_expected_time_config is shown as below:

Table 3-285. Function enet_ptp_expected_time_config

Function name	enet_ptp_expected_time_config
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_expected_time_config(uint32_t second, uint32_t nanosecond);
Function descriptions	configure the expected target time
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
second	the expected target second time (0 – 0xFFFF FFFF)
Input parameter{in}	
nanosecond	the expected target nanosecond time (signed) (0 – 0xFFFF FFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the expected target time */
```

```
enet_ptp_expected_time_config(2000, 0);
```

enet_ptp_system_time_get

The description of enet_ptp_system_time_get is shown as below:

Table 3-286. Function enet_ptp_system_time_get

Function name	enet_ptp_system_time_get
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_system_time_get(enet_ptp_systime_struct *systime_struct);
Function descriptions	get the current system time
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
systime_struct	pointer to a enet_ptp_systime_struct structure which contains parameters of PTP system time, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_ptp_systime_struct
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* get the current system time */
enet_ptp_systime_struct systime;
enet_ptp_system_time_get(&systime);
```

enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config

The description of enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config is shown as below:

Table 3-287. Function enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config

Function name	enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config(uint32_t freq);
Function descriptions	configure the PPS output frequency
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

freq	
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_1HZ</i>	PPS output 1Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_2HZ</i>	PPS output 2Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_4HZ</i>	PPS output 4Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_8HZ</i>	PPS output 8Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_16HZ</i>	PPS output 16Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_32HZ</i>	PPS output 32Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_64HZ</i>	PPS output 64Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_128HZ</i>	PPS output 128Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_256HZ</i>	PPS output 256Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_512HZ</i>	PPS output 512Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_1024HZ</i>	PPS output 1024Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_2048HZ</i>	PPS output 2048Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_4096HZ</i>	PPS output 4096Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_8192HZ</i>	PPS output 8192Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_16384HZ</i>	PPS output 16384Hz frequency
<i>ENET_PPISOFC_32768HZ</i>	PPS output 32768Hz frequency
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PPS output frequency as 1Hz */
```

```
enet_ptp_pps_output_frequency_config(ENET_PPISOFC_1HZ);
```

enet_ptp_start

The enet_ptp_start is shown as below:

Table 3-288. Function enet_ptp_start

Function name	enet_ptp_start
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_start(int32_t updatemethod, uint32_t init_sec, uint32_t init_subsec, uint32_t carry_cfg, uint32_t accuracy_cfg);
Function descriptions	configure and start PTP timestamp counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
updatemethod	method for updating
ENET_PTP_FINEMODE	fine correction method
ENET_PTP_COARSEMODE	coarse correction method
Input parameter{in}	
init_sec	second value for initializing system time
Input parameter{in}	
init_subsec	subsecond value for initializing system time
Input parameter{in}	
carry_cfg	the value to be added to the accumulator register (in fine method is used)
Input parameter{in}	
accuracy_cfg	the value to be added to the subsecond value of system time
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* gconfigure and start PTP timestamp counter*/
enet_ptp_start(ENET_PTP_FINEMODE, 10, 10, 10, 10);
```

enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq

The enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq is shown as below:

Table 3-289. Function enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq

Function name	enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq(int32_t carry_cfg);
Function descriptions	adjust frequency in fine method by configure addend register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
carry_cfg	the value to be added to the accumulator register
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* adjust frequency in fine method by configure addend register */
enet_ptp_finecorrection_adjfreq(10);
```

enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update

The enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update is shown as below:

Table 3-290. Function enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update

Function name	enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update(enet_ptp_systime_struct *systime_struct);
Function descriptions	update system time in coarse method
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
systime_struct	the descriptor pointer which users want to configure, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_ptp_systime_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* update system time in coarse method */
enet_ptp_systime_struct systime_struct;
enet_ptp_coarsecorrection_systime_update (&systime_struct);
```

enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime

The enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime is shown as below:

Table 3-291. Function enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime

Function name	enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime
Function prototype	void enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime(enet_ptp_systime_struct* systime_struct);
Function descriptions	set system time in fine method
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
systime_struct	the descriptor pointer which users want to configure, the structure members can refer to Structure enet_ptp_systime_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set system time in fine method */
```

```
enet_ptp_systime_struct systime_struct;
```

```
enet_ptp_finecorrection_settime (&systime_struct);
```

enet_ptp_flag_get

The enet_ptp_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-292. Function enet_ptp_flag_get

Function name	enet_ptp_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus enet_ptp_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get the ptp flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	ptp flag status to be checked
ENET_PTP_ADDEND_UPDATE	addend register update
ENET_PTP_SYSTIME_UPDATE	timestamp update
ENET_PTP_SYSTIME_INIT	timestamp initialize
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the ptp flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus status = enet_ptp_flag_get(ENET_PTP_ADDEND_UPDATE);
```

enet_initpara_reset

The description of enet_initpara_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-293. Function enet_initpara_reset

Function name	enet_initpara_reset
Function prototype	void enet_initpara_reset(void);
Function descriptions	reset the ENET initpara struct, call it before using enet_initpara_config()

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the ENET initpara struct */
enet_initpara_reset();
```

3.11. EXMC

The external memory controller EXMC, is used as a translator for MCU to access a variety of external memory. The EXMC registers are listed in chapter [3.11.1](#), the EXMC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.11.2](#).

3.11.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

EXMC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-294. EXMC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
EXMC_SNCTL	SRAM/NOR Flash control registers
EXMC_SNTCFG	SRAM/NOR Flash timing configuration registers
EXMC_SNWTCFG	SRAM/NOR Flash write timing configuration registers
EXMC_NPCTL	NAND flash/PC card control registers
EXMC_NPINTEN	NAND flash/PC card interrupt enable registers
EXMC_NPCTCFG	NAND flash/PC card common space timing configuration registers
EXMC_NPATCFG	NAND flash/PC card attribute space timing configuration registers
EXMC_PIOTCFG3	PC card I/O space timing configuration register

Registers	Descriptions
EXMC_NECC	NAND flash ECC registers

3.11.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

EXMC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-295. EXMC firmware function

Function name	Function description
exmc_norsram_deinit	deinitialize EXMC NOR/SRAM regionx
exmc_norsram_struct_para_init	initialize exmc_norsram_parameter_struct with the default values
exmc_norsram_init	initialize EXMC NOR/SRAM regionx
exmc_norsram_enable	enable EXMC NOR/PSRAM regionx
exmc_norsram_disable	disable EXMC NOR/PSRAM regionx
exmc_nand_deinit	deinitialize EXMC NAND bankx
exmc_nand_struct_para_init	initialize exmc_norsram_parameter_struct with the default values
exmc_nand_init	initialize EXMC NAND bankx
exmc_nand_enable	enable EXMC NAND bankx
exmc_nand_disable	disable EXMC NAND bankx
exmc_pccard_deinit	deinitialize EXMC PC card bank
exmc_pccard_struct_para_init	initialize exmc_pccard_parameter_struct with the default values
exmc_pccard_init	initialize EXMC PC card bank
exmc_pccard_enable	enable EXMC PC card bank
exmc_pccard_disable	disable EXMC PC card bank
exmc_norsram_page_size_config	configure CRAM page size
exmc_nand_ecc_config	enable or disable the EXMC NAND ECC function
exmc_ecc_get	get the EXMC ECC value
exmc_interrupt_enable	enable EXMC interrupt
exmc_interrupt_disable	disable EXMC interrupt

Function name	Function description
exmc_flag_get	get EXMC flag status
exmc_flag_clear	clear EXMC flag status
exmc_interrupt_flag_get	get EXMC interrupt flag
exmc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear EXMC interrupt flag

Structure exmc_norsram_timing_parameter_struct

Table 3-296. Structure exmc_norsram_timing_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
asyn_access_mode	asynchronous access mode
syn_data_latency	configure the data latency
syn_clk_division	configure the clock divide ratio
bus_latency	configure the bus latency
asyn_data_setup_time	configure the data setup time, asynchronous access mode valid
asyn_address_hold_time	configure the address hold time, asynchronous access mode valid
asyn_address_setup_time	configure the data setup time, asynchronous access mode valid

Structure exmc_norsram_parameter_struct

Table 3-297. Structure exmc_norsram_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
norsram_region	select the region of EXMC NOR/SRAM
write_mode	the write mode, synchronous mode or asynchronous mode
extended_mode	enable or disable the extended mode
asyn_wait	enable or disable the asynchronous wait function
nwait_signal	enable or disable the NWAIT signal while in synchronous bust mode
memory_write	enable or disable the write operation
nwait_config	NWAIT signal configuration

Member name	Function description
wrap_burst_mode	enable or disable the wrap burst mode
nwait_polarity	specifies the polarity of NWAIT signal from memory
burst_mode	enable or disable the burst mode
databus_width	specifies the databus width of external memory
memory_type	specifies the type of external memory
address_data_mux	specifies whether the data bus and address bus are multiplexed
read_write_timing	timing parameters for read and write if the extended mode is not used or the timing parameters for read if the extended mode is used
write_timing	timing parameters for write when the extended mode is used

Structure exmc_nand_pccard_timing_parameter_struct

Table 3-298. Structure exmc_nand_pccard_timing_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
databus_hiztime	configure the databus HiZ time for write operation
holdtime	configure the address hold time(or the data hold time for write operation)
waittime	configure the minimum wait time
setuptime	configure the address setup time

Structure exmc_nand_parameter_struct

Table 3-299. Structure exmc_nand_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
nand_bank	select the bank of NAND
ecc_size	the page size for the ECC calculation
atr_latency	configure the latency of ALE low to RB low
ctr_latency	configure the latency of CLE low to RB low
ecc_logic	enable or disable the ECC calculation logic
databus_width	the NAND flash databus width
wait_feature	enable or disable the wait feature
common_space_timing	the timing parameters for NAND flash common space

Member name	Function description
ng	
attribute_space_timing	the timing parameters for NAND flash attribute space

Structure exmc_pccard_parameter_struct

Table 3-300. Structure exmc_pccard_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
atr_latency	configure the latency of ALE low to RB low
ctr_latency	configure the latency of CLE low to RB low
wait_feature	enable or disable the wait feature
common_space_timing	the timing parameters for PC card common space
attribute_space_timing	the timing parameters for PC card attribute space
io_space_timing	the timing parameters for PC card IO space

exmc_norsram_deinit

The description of exmc_norsram_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-301. Function exmc_norsram_deinit

Function name	exmc_norsram_deinit
Function prototype	void exmc_norsram_deinit(uint32_t exmc_norsram_region);
Function descriptions	deinitialize EXMC NOR/SRAM region
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_norsram_region	EXMC NOR/SRAM region
EXMC_BANK0_NORSRAM_REGIONx	x=0,1,2,3
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the EXMC NOR/SRAM region1 of bank0 */
exmc_norsram_deinit(EXMC_BANK0_NORSRAM_REGION1);
```

exmc_norsram_struct_para_init

The description of exmc_norsram_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-302. Function exmc_norsram_struct_para_init

Function name	exmc_norsram_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void exmc_norsram_struct_para_init(exmc_norsram_parameter_struct* exmc_norsram_init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize the struct exmc_norsram_parameter_struct
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_norsram_init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-297. Structure exmc_norsram_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the struct nor_init_struct */
exmc_norsram_parameter_struct nor_init_struct;
exmc_norsram_struct_para_init (&nor_init_struct);
```

exmc_norsram_init

The description of exmc_norsram_init is shown as below:

Table 3-303. Function `exmc_norsram_init`

Function name	<code>exmc_norsram_init</code>
Function prototype	<code>void exmc_norsram_init(exmc_norsram_parameter_struct* exmc_norsram_init_struct);</code>
Function descriptions	initialize EXMC NOR/SRAM region
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>exmc_norsram_init_struct</code>	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-297. Structure <code>exmc_norsram_parameter_struct</code>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* initialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank */

exmc_norsram_parameter_struct lcd_init_struct;
exmc_norsram_timing_parameter_struct lcd_timing_init_struct;

/* configure timing parameter */

lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_access_mode = EXMC_ACCESS_MODE_A;
lcd_timing_init_struct.syn_data_latency = EXMC_DATA_LAT_2_CLK;
lcd_timing_init_struct.syn_clk_division = EXMC_SYN_CLOCK_RATIO_DISABLE;
lcd_timing_init_struct.bus_latency = 1;
lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_data_setup_time = 5;
lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_address_hold_time = 2;
lcd_timing_init_struct.asyn_address_setup_time = 2;

/* configure EXMC bus parameters */

lcd_init_struct.norsram_region = EXMC_BANK0_NORSRAM_REGION1;
lcd_init_struct.write_mode = EXMC_ASYNC_WRITE;
lcd_init_struct.extended_mode = DISABLE;

```

```

lcd_init_struct.asyn_wait = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.nwait_signal = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.memory_write = ENABLE;

lcd_init_struct.nwait_config = EXMC_NWAIT_CONFIG_BEFORE;

lcd_init_struct.wrap_burst_mode = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.nwait_polarity = EXMC_NWAIT_POLARITY_LOW;

lcd_init_struct.burst_mode = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.databus_width = EXMC_NOR_DATABUS_WIDTH_16B;

lcd_init_struct.memory_type = EXMC_MEMORY_TYPE_SRAM;

lcd_init_struct.address_data_mux = DISABLE;

lcd_init_struct.read_write_timing = &lcd_timing_init_struct;

lcd_init_struct.write_timing = &lcd_timing_init_struct;

exmc_norsram_init(&lcd_init_struct);

```

exmc_norsram_enable

The description of exmc_norsram_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-304. Function exmc_norsram_enable

Function name	exmc_norsram_enable
Function prototype	void exmc_norsram_enable(uint32_t exmc_norsram_region);
Function descriptions	enable EXMC NOR/PSRAM region
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_norsram_region	EXMC NOR/SRAM region
EXMC_BANK0_NORSRAM_REGIONx	x=0,1,2,3
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* enable the EXMC NOR/SRAM region1 of bank0 */
exmc_norsram_enable(EXMC_BANK0_NORSRAM_REGION1);
```

exmc_norsram_disable

The description of exmc_norsram_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-305. Function exmc_norsram_disable

Function name	exmc_norsram_disable
Function prototype	void exmc_norsram_disable(uint32_t exmc_norsram_region);
Function descriptions	disable EXMC NOR/PSRAM region
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_norsram_region	EXMC NOR/SRAM region
EXMC_BANK0_NORSRAM_REGIONx	x=0,1,2,3
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the EXMC NOR/SRAM region1 of bank0 */
exmc_norsram_disable(EXMC_BANK0_NORSRAM_REGION1);
```

exmc_nand_deinit

The description of exmc_nand_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-306. Function exmc_nand_deinit

Function name	exmc_nand_deinit
----------------------	------------------

Function prototype	void exmc_nand_deinit(uint32_t exmc_nand_bank);
Function descriptions	deinitialize EXMC NAND bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_nand_bank	the bank of NAND
EXMC_BANKx_NAND	x=1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize EXMC NOR/SRAM bank1 */
```

```
exmc_norsram_deinit(EXMC_BANK1_NAND);
```

exmc_nand_struct_para_init

The description of exmc_nand_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-307. Function exmc_nand_struct_para_init

Function name	exmc_nand_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void exmc_nand_struct_para_init(exmc_nand_parameter_struct* exmc_nand_init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize the struct exmc_nand_parameter_struct
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_nand_init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-299. Structure exmc_nand_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* initialize the struct nand_init_struct */
exmc_nand_parameter_struct nand_init_struct;
exmc_nand_struct_para_init(&nand_init_struct);
```

exmc_nand_init

The description of exmc_nand_init is shown as below:

Table 3-308. Function exmc_nand_init

Function name	exmc_nand_init
Function prototype	void exmc_nand_init(exmc_nand_parameter_struct* exmc_nand_init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize EXMC NAND bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_nand_init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-299. Structure exmc_nand_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
exmc_nand_parameter_struct nand_init_struct;
exmc_nand_pccard_timing_parameter_struct nand_timing_init_struct;
/* EXMC configuration */
nand_timing_init_struct.setuptime = 5;
nand_timing_init_struct.waittime = 4;
nand_timing_init_struct.holdtime = 2;
nand_timing_init_struct.databus_hiztime = 2;
```

```

nand_init_struct.nand_bank = EXMC_BANK1_NAND;

nand_init_struct.ecc_size = EXMC_ECC_SIZE_2048BYTES;

nand_init_struct.atr_latency = EXMC_ALE_RE_DELAY_1_HCLK;

nand_init_struct.ctr_latency = EXMC_CLE_RE_DELAY_1_HCLK;

nand_init_struct.ecc_logic = ENABLE;

nand_init_struct.databus_width = EXMC_NAND_DATABUS_WIDTH_8B;

nand_init_struct.wait_feature = ENABLE;

nand_init_struct.common_space_timing = &nand_timing_init_struct;

nand_init_struct.attribute_space_timing = &nand_timing_init_struct;

exmc_nand_init(&nand_init_struct);

```

exmc_nand_enable

The description of exmc_nand_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-309. Function exmc_nand_enable

Function name	exmc_nand_enable
Function prototype	void exmc_nand_enable(uint32_t exmc_nand_bank);
Function descriptions	enable EXMC NAND bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_nand_bank	the bank of NAND
<i>EXMC_BANKx_NAND</i>	x=1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable EXMC NAND bank1 */

exmc_nand_enable(EXMC_BANK1_NAND);

```

exmc_nand_disable

The description of exmc_nand_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-310. Function exmc_nand_disable

Function name	exmc_nand_disable
Function prototype	exmc_nand_disable(uint32_t exmc_nand_bank);
Function descriptions	disable EXMC NAND bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_nand_bank	the bank of NAND
EXMC_BANKx_NAND	x=1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable EXMC NAND bank1 */
exmc_nand_disable(EXMC_BANK1_NAND);
```

exmc_pccard_deinit

The description of exmc_pccard_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-311. Function exmc_pccard_deinit

Function name	exmc_pccard_deinit
Function prototype	void exmc_pccard_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize EXMC PC card bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize EXMC PC card bank */
```

```
exmc_pccard_deinit();
```

exmc_pccard_struct_para_init

The description of exmc_pccard_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-312. Function exmc_pccard_struct_para_init

Function name	exmc_pccard_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void exmc_pccard_struct_para_init(exmc_pccard_parameter_struct* exmc_pccard_init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize the struct exmc_pccard_parameter_struct
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_pccard_init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-300. Structure exmc_pccard_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the struct pccard_init_struct */
```

```
exmc_pccard_parameter_struct pccard_init_struct;
```

```
exmc_pccard_struct_para_init (&pccard_init_struct);
```

exmc_pccard_init

The description of exmc_pccard_init is shown as below:

Table 3-313. Function exmc_pccard_init

Function name	exmc_pccard_init
Function prototype	void exmc_pccard_init(exmc_pccard_parameter_struct* exmc_pccard_init_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize EXMC PC card bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_pccard_init_struct	Structure for initialization, the structure members can refer to Table 3-300. Structure exmc_pccard_parameter_struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
exmc_pccard_parameter_struct pccard_init_struct;

exmc_nand_pccard_timing_parameter_struct pccard_timing_init_struct;

/* EXMC configuration */

pccard_timing_init_struct.setuptime = 5;

pccard_timing_init_struct.waittime = 4;

pccard_timing_init_struct.holdtime = 2;

pccard_timing_init_struct.databus_hiztime = 2;

pccard_init_struct.atr_latency = EXMC_ALE_RE_DELAY_1_HCLK;

pccard_init_struct.ctr_latency = EXMC_CLE_RE_DELAY_1_HCLK;

pccard_init_struct.wait_feature = ENABLE;

pccard_init_struct.common_space_timing = & pccard_timing_init_struct;

pccard_init_struct.attribute_space_timing = & pccard_timing_init_struct;
```

```
pccard_init_struct.io_space_timing = &pccard_timing_init_struct;
```

```
exmc_pccard_init(&pccard_init_struct);
```

exmc_pccard_enable

The description of exmc_pccard_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-314. Function exmc_pccard_enable

Function name	exmc_pccard_enable
Function prototype	void exmc_pccard_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable EXMC PC card bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable EXMC PC card bank */
```

```
exmc_pccard_enable();
```

exmc_pccard_disable

The description of exmc_pccard_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-315. Function exmc_pccard_disable

Function name	exmc_pccard_disable
Function prototype	void exmc_pccard_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable EXMC PC card bank
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable EXMC PC card bank */
```

```
exmc_pccard_disable();
```

exmc_norsram_page_size_config

The description of exmc_norsram_page_size_config is shown as below:

Table 3-316. Function exmc_norsram_page_size_config

Function name	exmc_norsram_page_size_config
Function prototype	void exmc_norsram_page_size_config(uint32_t page_size);
Function descriptions	configure CRAM page size
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
page_size	CRAM page size
EXMC_CRAM_AUTO_SPLIT	the clock is generated only during synchronous access
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_128_BYTES	page size is 128 bytes
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_256_BYTES	page size is 256 bytes
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_512_BYTES	page size is 512 bytes
EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_1024_BYTES	page size is 1024 bytes
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CRAM page size */
```

```
exmc_norsram_page_size_config(EXMC_CRAM_PAGE_SIZE_128_BYTES);
```

exmc_nand_ecc_config

The description of exmc_nand_ecc_config is shown as below:

Table 3-317. Function exmc_nand_ecc_config

Function name	exmc_nand_ecc_config
Function prototype	void exmc_nand_ecc_config(uint32_t exmc_nand_bank, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	enable or disable the EXMC NAND ECC function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_nand_bank	specifie the NAND bank
EXMC_BANKx_NAND	x=1,2
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	ENABLE or DISABLE
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the EXMC NAND ECC function */
```

```
exmc_nand_ecc_config(EXMC_BANK1_NAND, ENABLE);
```

exmc_ecc_get

The description of exmc_ecc_get is shown as below:

Table 3-318. Function `exmc_ecc_get`

Function name	<code>exmc_ecc_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>uint32_t exmc_ecc_get(uint32_t exmc_nand_bank);</code>
Function descriptions	get the EXMC ECC value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>exmc_nand_bank</code>	specifie the NAND bank
<code>EXMC_BANKx_NAND</code>	x=1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>uint32_t</code>	the error correction code(ECC) value

Example:

```
/* get the EXMC ECC value */
uint32_t ecc_value;

ecc_value = exmc_ecc_get(EXMC_BANK1_NAND);
```

`exmc_interrupt_enable`

The description of `exmc_interrupt_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-319. Function `exmc_interrupt_enable`

Function name	<code>exmc_interrupt_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void exmc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t exmc_bank, uint32_t interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	enable EXMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>exmc_bank</code>	specifies the NAND bank , PC card bank or SDRAM device
<code>EXMC_BANK1_NAND</code>	the NAND bank1

<i>EXMC_BANK2_NAND</i>	the NAND bank2
<i>EXMC_BANK3_PCCA</i> <i>RD</i>	the PC Card bank
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify get which interrupt flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_RISE</i>	rising edge interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_LEVEL</i>	high-level interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_FALL</i>	falling edge interrupt and flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable EXMC rising edge interrupt*/
```

```
exmc_interrupt_enable(EXMC_BANK1_NAND, EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_INT_FLAG_RISE);
```

exmc_interrupt_disable

The description of `exmc_interrupt_disable` is shown as below:

Table 3-320. Function `exmc_interrupt_disable`

Function name	<code>exmc_interrupt_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void exmc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t exmc_bank, uint32_t interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	disable EXMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_bank	specifies the NAND bank , PC card bank or SDRAM device
<i>EXMC_BANK1_NAND</i>	the NAND bank1

<i>EXMC_BANK2_NAND</i>	the NAND bank2
<i>EXMC_BANK3_PCCA</i> <i>RD</i>	the PC Card bank
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify get which interrupt flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_RISE</i>	rising edge interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_LEVEL</i>	high-level interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_FALL</i>	falling edge interrupt and flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable EXMC rising edge interrupt */
```

```
exmc_interrupt_disable(EXMC_BANK1_NAND,  
EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_INT_FLAG_RISE);
```

exmc_flag_get

The description of `exmc_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-321. Function `exmc_flag_get`

Function name	<code>exmc_flag_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus exmc_flag_get(uint32_t exmc_bank, uint32_t flag);</code>
Function descriptions	get EXMC flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
exmc_bank	specifies the NAND bank , PC card bank or SDRAM device
<i>EXMC_BANK1_NAND</i>	the NAND bank1

EXMC_BANK2_NAND	the NAND bank2
EXMC_BANK3_PCCA RD	the PC Card bank
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
EXMC_NAND_PCCAR D_FLAG_RISE	interrupt rising edge status
EXMC_NAND_PCCAR D_FLAG_LEVEL	interrupt high-level status
EXMC_NAND_PCCAR D_FLAG_FALL	interrupt falling edge status
EXMC_NAND_PCCAR D_FLAG_FIFOE	FIFO empty status
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* check rising edge status is set or not*/
```

```
if(RESET != exmc_flag_get (EXMC_BANK1_NAND,
EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_FLAG_RISE));
```

exmc_flag_clear

The description of exmc_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-322. Function exmc_flag_clear

Function name	exmc_flag_clear
Function prototype	FlagStatus exmc_flag_clear (uint32_t exmc_bank,uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear EXMC flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

exmc_bank	specifies the NAND bank , PC card bank or SDRAM device
<i>EXMC_BANK1_NAND</i>	the NAND bank1
<i>EXMC_BANK2_NAND</i>	the NAND bank2
<i>EXMC_BANK3_PCCARD</i>	the PC Card bank
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_FLAG_RISE</i>	interrupt rising edge status
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_FLAG_LEVEL</i>	interrupt high-level status
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_FLAG_FALL</i>	interrupt falling edge status
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_FLAG_FIFOE</i>	FIFO empty status
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear rising edge status */
```

```
exmc_flag_clear(EXMC_BANK1_NAND, EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_FLAG_RISE);
```

exmc_interrupt_flag_get

The description of exmc_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-323. Function exmc_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	exmc_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus exmc_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t exmc_bank, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	get EXMC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
exmc_bank	specifies the NAND bank , PC card bank or SDRAM device
<i>EXMC_BANK1_NAND</i>	the NAND bank1
<i>EXMC_BANK2_NAND</i>	the NAND bank2
<i>EXMC_BANK3_PCCA</i> <i>RD</i>	the PC Card bank
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify get which interrupt flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_RISE</i>	rising edge interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_LEVEL</i>	high-level interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCAR</i> <i>D_INT_FLAG_FALL</i>	falling edge interrupt and flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* check rising edge interrump flag is set or not*/
```

```
if(RESET != exmc_interrupt_flag_get (EXMC_BANK1_NAND,
EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_INT_FLAG_RISE));
```

exmc_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of exmc_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-324. Function exmc_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	exmc_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void exmc_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t exmc_bank, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	clear EXMC interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
exmc_bank	specifies the NAND bank , PC card bank or SDRAM device
<i>EXMC_BANK1_NAND</i>	the NAND bank1
<i>EXMC_BANK2_NAND</i>	the NAND bank2
<i>EXMC_BANK3_PCCARD</i>	the PC Card bank
<i>RD</i>	
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify get which interrupt flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_INT_FLAG_RISE</i>	rising edge interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_INT_FLAG_LEVEL</i>	high-level interrupt and flag
<i>EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_INT_FLAG_FALL</i>	falling edge interrupt and flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear rising edge interrupt and flag */
exmc_interrupt_flag_clear(EXMC_BANK1_NAND,
EXMC_NAND_PCCARD_INT_FLAG_RISE);
```

3.12. EXTI

EXTI is the interrupt / event controller in the MCU. It contains up to 20 independent edge detectors and generates interrupt requests or events to the processor. The EXTI registers are listed in chapter [3.12.1](#), the EXTI firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.12.2](#).

3.12.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

EXTI registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-325. EXTI Registers

Registers	Descriptions
EXTI_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
EXTI_EVEN	Event enable register
EXTI_RTEN	Rising edge trigger enable register
EXTI_FTEN	Falling edge trigger enable register
EXTI_SWIEV	Software interrupt event register
EXTI_PD	Pending register

3.12.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

EXTI firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-326. EXTI firmware function

Function name	Function description
exti_deinit	reset EXTI
exti_init	initialize EXTI line x
exti_interrupt_enable	enable EXTI line x interrupt
exti_interrupt_disable	disable EXTI line x interrupt
exti_event_enable	enable EXTI line x event
exti_event_disable	disable EXTI line x event
exti_software_interrupt_enable	enable EXTI line x software interrupt
exti_software_interrupt_disable	disable EXTI line x software interrupt
exti_flag_get	get EXTI line x flag
exti_flag_clear	clear EXTI line x flag
exti_interrupt_flag_get	get EXTI line x interrupt flag
exti_interrupt_flag_clear	clear EXTI line x interrupt flag

exti_deinit

The description of exti_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-327. Function exti_deinit

Function name	exti_deinit
---------------	-------------

Function prototype	void exti_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset EXTI. reset the value of all EXTI registers into initial values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the EXTI */
```

```
exti_deinit();
```

exti_init

The description of exti_init is shown as below:

Table 3-328. Function exti_init

Function name	exti_init
Function prototype	void exti_init(exti_line_enum linex, exti_mode_enum mode, exti_trig_type_enum trig_type);
Function descriptions	initialize EXTI line x
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
EXTI_x	x=0,1,2..19
Input parameter{in}	
mode	EXTI mode
EXTI_INTERRUPT	interrupt mode

<i>EXTI_EVENT</i>	event mode
Input parameter{in}	
trig_type	trigger type
<i>EXTI_TRIG_RISING</i>	rising edge trigger
<i>EXTI_TRIG_FALLING</i>	falling edge trigger
<i>EXTI_TRIG_BOTH</i>	rising edge and falling edge trigger
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure EXTI_0 */
```

```
exti_init(EXTI_0, EXTI_INTERRUPT, EXTI_TRIG_BOTH);
```

exti_interrupt_enable

The description of exti_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-329. Function exti_interrupt_enable

Function name	exti_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void exti_interrupt_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	enable EXTI line x interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
<i>EXTI_x</i>	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the interrupts from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_interrupt_enable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_interrupt_disable

The description of exti_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-330. Function exti_interrupt_disable

Function name	exti_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void exti_interrupt_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	disable EXTI line x interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
EXTI_x	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the interrupts from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_interrupt_disable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_event_enable

The description of exti_event_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-331. Function exti_event_enable

Function name	exti_event_enable
Function prototype	void exti_event_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	enable EXTI line x event
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
EXTI_x	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the events from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_event_enable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_event_disable

The description of exti_event_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-332. Function exti_event_disable

Function name	exti_event_disable
Function prototype	void exti_event_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	disable EXTI line x event
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
EXTI_x	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the events from EXTI line 0 */
```

```
exti_event_disable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_software_interrupt_enable

The description of exti_software_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-333. Function exti_software_interrupt_enable

Function name	exti_software_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void exti_software_interrupt_enable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	enable EXTI line x software interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
EXTI_x	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable EXTI line 0 software interrupt */
exti_software_interrupt_enable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_software_interrupt_disable

The description of exti_software_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-334. Function exti_software_interrupt_disable

Function name	exti_software_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void exti_software_interrupt_disable(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	disable EXTI line x software interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

linex	EXTI line x
<i>EXTI_x</i>	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable EXTI line 0 software interrupt */
```

```
exti_software_interrupt_disable(EXTI_0);
```

exti_flag_get

The description of exti_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-335. Function exti_flag_get

Function name	exti_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus exti_flag_get(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	get EXTI line x flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
<i>EXTI_x</i>	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get EXTI line 0 flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus state = exti_flag_get(EXTI_0);
```

exti_flag_clear

The description of exti_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-336. Function exti_flag_clear

Function name	exti_flag_clear
Function prototype	void exti_flag_clear(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	clear EXTI line x flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
EXTI_x	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear EXTI line 0 flag status */
```

```
exti_flag_clear(EXTI_0);
```

exti_interrupt_flag_get

The description of exti_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-337. Function exti_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	exti_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus exti_interrupt_flag_get(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	get EXTI line x interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x

<i>EXTI_x</i>	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get EXTI line 0 interrupt flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus state = exti_interrupt_flag_get(EXTI_0);
```

exti_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of exti_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-338. Function exti_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	exti_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void exti_interrupt_flag_clear(exti_line_enum linex);
Function descriptions	clear EXTI line x interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
linex	EXTI line x
<i>EXTI_x</i>	x=0,1,2..19
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear EXTI line 0 interrupt flag status */
```

```
exti_interrupt_flag_clear(EXTI_0);
```

3.13. FMC

There is flash controller and option byte for GD32F30x series. The FMC registers are listed in chapter [3.13.1](#) the FMC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.13.2](#).

3.13.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

FMC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-339. FMC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
FMC_WS	FMC wait state register
FMC_KEY0	FMC unlock key register 0
FMC_OBKEY	FMC option bytes unlock key register
FMC_STAT0	FMC status register 0
FMC_CTL0	FMC control register 0
FMC_ADDR0	FMC address register 0
FMC_OBSTAT	FMC option bytes status register
FMC_WP	FMC erase/program protection register
FMC_KEY1	FMC unlock key register 1
FMC_STAT1	FMC status register 1
FMC_CTL1	FMC control register 1
FMC_ADDR1	FMC address register 1
FMC_WSEN	FMC wait state enable register
FMC_PID	FMC product ID register

3.13.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

FMC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-340. FMC firmware function

Function name	Function description
fmc_wscnt_set	set the FMC wait state counter
fmc_unlock	unlock the main FMC operation

Function name	Function description
fmc_bank0_unlock	unlock the FMC bank0 operation
fmc_bank1_unlock	unlock the FMC bank1 operation
fmc_lock	lock the main FMC operation
fmc_bank0_lock	lock the bank0 FMC operation
fmc_bank1_lock	lock the bank1 FMC operation
fmc_page_erase	FMC erase page
fmc_mass_erase	FMC erase whole chip
fmc_bank0_erase	FMC erase whole bank0
fmc_bank1_erase	FMC erase whole bank1
fmc_word_program	FMC program a word at the corresponding address
fmc_halfword_program	FMC program a half word at the corresponding address
fmc_word_reprogram	FMC reprogram a word at the corresponding address without erasing
ob_unlock	unlock the option byte operation
ob_lock	lock the option byte operation
ob_erase	erase the option byte
ob_write_protection_enable	enable write protect
ob_security_protection_config	configure the option byte security protection
ob_user_write	write the FMC option byte
ob_data_program	program option bytes data
ob_user_get	get the FMC option byte user
ob_data_get	get OB_DATA in register FMC_OBSTAT
ob_write_protection_get	get the FMC option byte write protection
ob_spc_get	get option byte security protection code value
fmc_interrupt_enable	enable FMC interrupt
fmc_interrupt_disable	disable FMC interrupt
fmc_flag_get	check flag is set or not
fmc_flag_clear	clear the FMC flag

Function name	Function description
fmc_interrupt_flag_get	get FMC interrupt flag state
fmc_interrupt_flag_clear	clear FMC interrupt flag state
fmc_bank0_state_get	return the FMC bank0 state
fmc_bank1_state_get	return the FMC bank1 state
fmc_bank0_ready_wait	check FMC bank0 ready or not
fmc_bank1_ready_wait	check FMC bank1 ready or not

Enum fmc_state_enum

Table 3-341. Enum fmc_state_enum

enum name	enum description
FMC_READY	the operation has been completed
FMC_BUSY	the operation is in progress
FMC_PGERR	program error
FMC_WPERR	erase/program protection error
FMC_TOERR	timeout error

Enum fmc_int_enum

Table 3-342. Enum fmc_int_enum

enum name	enum description
FMC_INT_BANK0_END	enable FMC end of program interrupt
FMC_INT_BANK0_ERR	enable FMC error interrupt
FMC_INT_BANK1_END	enable FMC bank1 end of program interrupt
FMC_INT_BANK1_ERR	enable FMC bank1 error interrupt

Enum fmc_flag_enum

Table 3-343. Enum fmc_flag_enum

enum name	enum description
FMC_FLAG_BANK0_BUSY	FMC bank0 busy flag
FMC_FLAG_BANK0_PGERR	FMC bank0 operation error flag bit
FMC_FLAG_BANK0_WPERR	FMC bank0 erase/program protection error flag bit
FMC_FLAG_BANK0_END	FMC bank0 end of operation flag bit
FMC_FLAG_OBERR	FMC option bytes read error flag
FMC_FLAG_BANK1_BUSY	FMC bank1 busy flag
FMC_FLAG_BANK1_PGERR	FMC bank1 operation error flag bit
FMC_FLAG_BANK1_WPERR	FMC bank1 erase/program protection error flag bit
FMC_FLAG_BANK1_END	FMC bank1 end of operation flag bit

Enum fmc_interrupt_flag_enum

Table 3-344. Enum fmc_interrupt_flag_enum

enum name	enum description
FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_PGERR	FMC bank0 operation error interrupt flag bit
FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_WPERR	FMC bank0 erase/program protection error interrupt flag bit
FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_END	FMC bank0 end of operation interrupt flag bit
FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_PGERR	FMC bank1 operation error interrupt flag bit
FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_WPERR	FMC bank1 erase/program protection error interrupt flag bit

enum name	enum description
ANK0_WPERR	
FMC_INT_FLAG_B ANK0_END	FMC bank1 end of operation interrupt flag bit

fmc_wscnt_set

The description of fmc_wscnt_set is shown as below:

Table 3-345. Function fmc_wscnt_set

Function name	fmc_wscnt_set
Function prototype	void fmc_wscnt_set(uint32_t wscnt);
Function descriptions	set the wait state counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
wscnt	wait state counter value
WS_WSCNT_0	FMC 0 wait
WS_WSCNT_1	FMC 1 wait
WS_WSCNT_2	FMC 2 wait
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	fmc_wscnt_set
Function prototype	void fmc_wscnt_set(uint32_t wscnt);
Function descriptions	set the wait state counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
wscnt	wait state counter value
WS_WSCNT_0	FMC 0 wait

WS_WSCNT_1	FMC 1 wait
WS_WSCNT_2	FMC 2 wait
WS_WSCNT_3	FMC 3 wait
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the wait state counter value */
```

```
fmc_wsCNT_set (WS_WSCNT_1);
```

Function name	fmc_prefetch_enable
Function prototype	void fmc_prefetch_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable pre-fetch
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable pre-fetch */
```

```
fmc_prefetch_enable( );
```

fmc_unlock

The description of fmc_unlock is shown as below:

Table 3-346. Function fmc_unlock

Function name	fmc_unlock
---------------	------------

Function prototype	void fmc_unlock(void);
Function descriptions	unlock the main FMC operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* unlock the main FMC operation */
```

```
fmc_unlock ( );
```

fmc_bank0_unlock

The description of fmc_bank0_unlock is shown as below:

Table 3-347. Function fmc_bank0_unlock

Function name	fmc_bank0_unlock
Function prototype	void fmc_bank0_unlock(void);
Function descriptions	unlock the FMC bank0 operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* unlock the main FMC BANK0 operation */
```

```
fmc_bank0_unlock( );
```

fmc_bank1_unlock

The description of fmc_bank1_unlock is shown as below:

Table 3-348. Function fmc_bank1_unlock

Function name	fmc_bank1_unlock
Function prototype	void fmc_bank1_unlock(void);
Function descriptions	unlock the FMC bank1 operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* unlock the main FMC BANK1 operation */
```

```
fmc_bank1_unlock( );
```

fmc_lock

The description of fmc_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-349. Function fmc_lock

Function name	fmc_lock
Function prototype	void fmc_lock(void);
Function descriptions	lock the main FMC operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the main FMC operation */
```

```
fmc_lock( );
```

fmc_bank0_lock

The description of fmc_bank0_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-350. Function fmc_bank0_lock

Function name	fmc_bank0_lock
Function prototype	void fmc_bank0_lock (void);
Function descriptions	lock the FMC bank0 operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the main FMC BANK0 operation */
```

```
fmc_bank0_lock( );
```

fmc_bank1_lock

The description of fmc_bank1_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-351. Function `fmc_bank1_lock`

Function name	<code>fmc_bank1_lock</code>
Function prototype	<code>void fmc_bank1_lock (void);</code>
Function descriptions	lock the FMC bank1 operation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the main FMC BANK1 operation */
```

```
fmc_bank1_lock( );
```

`fmc_page_erase`

The description of `fmc_page_erase` is shown as below:

Table 3-352. Function `fmc_page_erase`

Function name	<code>fmc_page_erase</code>
Function prototype	<code>fmc_state_enum fmc_page_erase(uint32_t page_address);</code>
Function descriptions	erase page
Precondition	<code>fmc_unlock</code>
The called functions	<code>fmc_bank0_ready_wait/ fmc_bank1_ready_wait</code>
Input parameter{in}	
<code>page_address</code>	the page address to be erased
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum
Function name	fmc_page_erase
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_page_erase(uint32_t page_address);
Function descriptions	erase page
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
page_address	the page address to be erased
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC

Example:

```

/* erase page */

fmc_unlock();

fmc_state_enum state =

fmc_page_erase ( 0x08004000);

```

fmc_mass_erase

The description of fmc_mass_erase is shown as below:

Table 3-353. Function fmc_mass_erase

Function name	fmc_mass_erase
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_mass_erase(void);
Function descriptions	erase whole chip
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait/ fmc_bank1_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* erase whole chip */
```

```
fmc_unlock();
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_mass_erase ( );
```

fmc_bank0_erase

The description of fmc_bank0_erase is shown as below:

Table 3-354. Function fmc_bank0_erase

Function name	fmc_bank0_erase
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_bank0_erase (void);
Function descriptions	erase bank0
Precondition	fmc_unlock/fmc_bank0_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* erase bank0 */
```

```
fmc_unlock();
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_bank0_erase ( );
```

fmc_bank1_erase

The description of fmc_bank1_erase is shown as below:

Table 3-355. Function `fmc_bank1_erase`

Function name	<code>fmc_bank1_erase</code>
Function prototype	<code>fmc_state_enum fmc_bank1_erase (void);</code>
Function descriptions	erase bank1
Precondition	<code>fmc_unlock/fmc_bank1_unlock</code>
The called functions	<code>fmc_bank1_ready_wait</code>
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
<code>fmc_state_enum</code>	state of FMC, refer to Enum <code>fmc_state_enum</code>

Example:

```
/* erase bank1 */
fmc_unlock();
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_bank1_erase ( );
```

`fmc_word_program`

The description of `fmc_word_program` is shown as below:

Table 3-356. Function `fmc_word_program`

Function name	<code>fmc_word_program</code>
Function prototype	<code>fmc_state_enum fmc_word_program(uint32_t address, uint32_t data);</code>
Function descriptions	program a word at the corresponding address
Precondition	<code>fmc_unlock</code>
The called functions	<code>fmc_bank0_ready_wait/ fmc_bank1_ready_wait</code>
Input parameter{in}	
address	the address to program
Input parameter{in}	
data	the data to program

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum
Function name	fmc_word_program
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_word_program(uint32_t address, uint32_t data);
Function descriptions	program a word at the corresponding address
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
address	the address to program
data	the data to program
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC

Example:

```
/* program a word at the corresponding address */
fmc_unlock();
fmc_page_erase(0x08004000);
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_word_program (0x08004000, 0xaabbccdd);
```

fmc_halfword_program

The description of fmc_halfword_program is shown as below:

Table 3-357. Function fmc_halfword_program

Function name	fmc_halfword_program
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_halfword_program(uint32_t address, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	program a half word at the corresponding address
Precondition	fmc_unlock

The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait/ fmc_bank1_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
address	the address to program
Input parameter{in}	
data	the data to program
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* program a half word at the corresponding address */
```

```
fmc_unlock();
```

```
fmc_page_erase(0x08004000);
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_halfword_program (0x08004000, 0xaabb);
```

fmc_word_reprogram

The description of fmc_word_reprogram is shown as below:

Table 3-358. Function fmc_word_reprogram

Function name	fmc_word_reprogram
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_word_reprogram(uint32_t address, uint32_t data);
Function descriptions	program a word at the corresponding address without erasing
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait/ fmc_bank1_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
address	the address to program
Input parameter{in}	
data	the data to program
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* program a word at the corresponding address without erasing*/

fmc_unlock();

fmc_state_enum state = fmc_word_reprogram (0x08004000, 0xaabbccdd);
```

ob_unlock

The description of ob_unlock is shown as below:

Table 3-359. Function ob_unlock

Function name	ob_unlock
Function prototype	void ob_unlock(void);
Function descriptions	unlock the option byte operation
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* unlock the option byte operation */

fmc_unlock( );

ob_unlock ( );
```

ob_lock

The description of ob_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-360. Function ob_lock

Function name	ob_lock
----------------------	---------

Function prototype	void ob_lock(void);
Function descriptions	lock the option byte operation
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock the option byte operation */
```

```
fmc_unlock( );
```

```
ob_lock ( );
```

ob_erase

The description of ob_erase is shown as below:

Table 3-361. Function ob_erase

Function name	ob_erase
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_erase(void);
Function descriptions	erase the FMC option byte
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Function name	ob_erase
Function prototype	void ob_erase(void);
Function descriptions	erase the FMC option byte
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* erase the FMC option byte */

fmc_unlock( );

ob_unlock( );

fmc_state_enum state = ob_erase ( );

```

ob_write_protection_enable

The description of ob_write_protection_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-362. Function ob_write_protection_enable

Function name	ob_write_protection_enable
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_write_protection_enable(uint32_t ob_wp);
Function descriptions	enable write protection
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_wp	enable write protection
OB_WPx	write protect specify sector x
OB_WP_ALL	write protect all sector

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state enum

Example:

```
/* enable write protection */
fmc_unlock( );
ob_unlock( );
fmc_state_enum state =
ob_write_protection_enable (OB_WP7);
```

ob_security_protection_config

The description of ob_security_protection_config is shown as below:

Table 3-363. Function ob_security_protection_config

Function name	ob_security_protection_config
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_security_protection_config (uint8_t ob_spc);
Function descriptions	configure security protection
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_spc	specify security protection
FMC_NSPC	no security protection
FMC_USPC	under security protection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state enum
Function name	ob_security_protection_config
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_security_protection_config (uint8_t ob_spc);

Function descriptions	configure security protection
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_spc	specify security protection
<i>FMC_NSPC</i>	no security protection
<i>FMC_USPC</i>	under security protection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC

Example:

```
/* enable security protection */
```

```
ob_unlock( );
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = ob_security_protection_config (FMC_USPC);
```

ob_user_write

The description of ob_user_write is shown as below:

Table 3-364. Function ob_user_write

Function name	ob_user_write
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_user_write(uint8_t ob_fwdgt, uint8_t ob_deepsleep, uint8_t ob_stdby, uint8_t ob_boot);
Function descriptions	program the FMC user option byte
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_fwdgt	option byte watchdog value
<i>OB_FWDGT_SOFTWARE</i>	software free watchdog
<i>OB_FWDGT_HARDWARE</i>	hardware free watchdog

<i>RE</i>	
Input parameter{in}	
ob_deepsleep	option byte deepsleep reset value
<i>OB_DEEPSLEEP_NRS</i> <i>T</i>	no reset when entering deepsleep mode
<i>OB_DEEPSLEEP_RST</i>	generate a reset instead of entering deepsleep mode
Input parameter{in}	
ob_stdby	option byte standby reset value
<i>OB_STDBY_NRST</i>	no reset when entering standby mode
<i>OB_STDBY_RST</i>	generate a reset instead of entering standby mode
Input parameter{in}	
ob_boot	specifies the option byte boot bank value
<i>OB_BOOT_B0</i>	boot from bank0
<i>OB_BOOT_B1</i>	boot from bank1 or bank0 if bank1 is void
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum
Function name	ob_user_write
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_user_write(uint8_t ob_fwdgt, uint8_t ob_deepsleep, uint8_t ob_stdby);
Function descriptions	program the FMC user option byte
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	
ob_fwdgt	option byte watchdog value
<i>OB_FWDGT_SOFTWA</i> <i>RE</i>	software free watchdog
<i>OB_FWDGT_HARDWA</i> <i>RE</i>	hardware free watchdog

Input parameter{in}	
ob_deepsleep	option byte deepsleep reset value
<i>OB_DEEPSLEEP_NO_RST</i>	no reset when entering deepsleep mode
<i>OB_DEEPSLEEP_RST</i>	generate a reset instead of entering deepsleep mode
Input parameter{in}	
ob_stdby	option byte standby reset value
<i>OB_STDBY_NO_RST</i>	no reset when entering standby mode
<i>OB_STDBY_RST</i>	generate a reset instead of entering standby mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC

Example:

```
/* configure user option byte */
```

```
fmc_unlock( );
```

```
ob_unlock( );
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = ob_user_write(OB_FWDGT_HW,OB_DEEPSLEEP_RST,
OB_STDBY_RST);
```

ob_data_program

The description of ob_data_program is shown as below:

Table 3-365. Function ob_data_program

Function name	ob_data_program
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum ob_data_program(uint32_t address, uint8_t data);
Function descriptions	program option bytes data
Precondition	ob_unlock
The called functions	fmc_bank0_ready_wait
Input parameter{in}	

address	the option bytes address to be programmed
Input parameter{in}	
data	the byte to be programmed
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* program option bytes data */
fmc_unlock( );
ob_unlock( );
fmc_state_enum state =
ob_data_program (0x1fff804, 0x56);
```

ob_user_get

The description of ob_user_get is shown as below:

Table 3-366. Function ob_user_get

Function name	ob_user_get
Function prototype	uint8_t ob_user_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC user option byte
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	the FMC user option byte values(0xF0 – 0xFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC user option byte */
```

```
uint8_t user = ob_user_get ();
```

ob_data_get

The description of ob_data_get is shown as below:

Table 3-367. Function ob_data_program

Function name	ob_data_get
Function prototype	uint16_t ob_data_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC data option byte
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
Uint16_t	the FMC data option byte values(0x0 – 0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC data option byte */
```

```
uint16_t data = ob_data_get ();
```

ob_write_protection_get

The description of ob_write_protection_get is shown as below:

Table 3-368. Function ob_write_protection_get

Function name	ob_write_protection_get
Function prototype	uint32_t ob_write_protection_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC option byte write protection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the FMC write protection option byte value(0x0 – 0xFFFFFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get the FMC option byte write protection */
```

```
uint32_t wp = ob_write_protection_get ( );
```

ob_spc_get

The description of ob_spc_get is shown as below:

Table 3-369. Function ob_spc_get

Function name	ob_spc_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus ob_spc_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC option byte security protection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the FMC option byte security protection */
```

```
FlagStatus spc = ob_spc_get( );
```

fmc_interrupt_enable

The description of fmc_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-370. Function `fmc_interrupt_enable`

Function name	<code>fmc_interrupt_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void fmc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	enable FMC interrupt
Precondition	<code>fmc_unlock</code>
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source
<code>FMC_INT_BANK0_END</code>	enable FMC bank0 end of program interrupt
<code>FMC_INT_BANK0_ERR</code>	enable FMC bank0 error interrupt
<code>FMC_INT_BANK1_END</code>	enable FMC bank1 end of program interrupt
<code>FMC_INT_BANK1_ERR</code>	enable FMC bank1 error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	<code>fmc_interrupt_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void fmc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);</code>
Function descriptions	enable FMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source
<code>FMC_INT_END</code>	FMC end of program interrupt
<code>FMC_INT_ERR</code>	FMC error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable FMC BANK0 end of program interrupt */
```

```
fmc_unlock( );
```

```
fmc_interrupt_enable(FMC_INT_BANK0_END);
```

fmc_interrupt_disable

The description of fmc_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-371. Function fmc_interrupt_disable

Function name	fmc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void fmc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable FMC interrupt
Precondition	fmc_unlock
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source
<i>FMC_INT_BANK0_END</i>	FMC bank0 end of program interrupt
<i>FMC_INT_BANK0_ERR</i>	FMC bank0 error interrupt
<i>FMC_INT_BANK1_END</i>	FMC bank1 end of program interrupt
<i>FMC_INT_BANK1_ERR</i>	FMC bank1 error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Function name	fmc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void fmc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable FMC interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the FMC interrupt source
FMC_INT_END	FMC end of program interrupt
FMC_INT_ERR	FMC error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable FMC BANK0 end of program interrupt */
```

```
fmc_unlock( );
```

```
fmc_interrupt_disable(FMC_INT_BANK0_END);
```

fmc_flag_get

The description of fmc_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-372. Function fmc_flag_get

Function name	fmc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fmc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	check flag is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	check FMC flag
FMC_FLAG_BANK0_B	FMC bank0 busy flag bit

<i>USY</i>	
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK0_P GERR</i>	FMC bank0 operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK0_W PERR</i>	FMC bank0 erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK0_E ND</i>	FMC bank0 end of operation flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_OBERR</i>	option bytes read error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK1_B USY</i>	FMC bank1 busy flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK1_P GERR</i>	FMC bank1 operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK1_W PERR</i>	FMC bank1 erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK1_E ND</i>	FMC bank1 end of operation flag bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET
Function name	fmc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fmc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	check flag is set or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	check FMC flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_BUSY</i>	FMC busy flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGERR</i>	FMC operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGAERR</i>	FMC program alignment error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_WPERR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag bit

<i>FMC_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get FMC bank0 end of operation flag bit */
```

```
FlagStatus flag = fmc_flag_get(FMC_FLAG_BANK0_END);
```

fmc_flag_clear

The description of fmc_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-373. Function fmc_flag_clear

Function name	fmc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void fmc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the FMC flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	clear FMC flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK0_PERR</i>	FMC bank0 operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK0_WPERR</i>	FMC bank0 erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK0_END</i>	FMC bank0 end of operation flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK1_PERR</i>	FMC bank1 operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK1_WPERR</i>	FMC bank1 erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_BANK1_END</i>	FMC bank1 end of operation flag bit

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-
Function name	fmc_flag_clear
Function prototype	void fmc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the FMC flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	clear FMC flag
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGERR</i>	FMC operation error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_PGAERR</i>	FMC program alignment error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_WPERR</i>	FMC erase/program protection error flag bit
<i>FMC_FLAG_END</i>	FMC end of operation flag bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear FMC bank0 operation error flag bit */
```

```
FlagStatus flag = fmc_flag_clear(FMC_FLAG_BANK0_PGERR);
```

fmc_interrupt_flag_get

The description of fmc_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-374. Function fmc_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	fmc_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fmc_interrupt_flag_get(fmc_interrupt_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	get FMC interrupt flag state

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	FMC flag
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_PGERR</i>	FMC bank0 operation error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_WPERR</i>	FMC bank0 erase/program protection error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_END</i>	FMC bank0 end of operation interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_PGERR</i>	FMC bank1 operation error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_WPERR</i>	FMC bank1 erase/program protection error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_END</i>	FMC bank1 end of operation interrupt flag bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get FMC bank0 operation error interrupt flag bit */
```

```
FlagStatus flag = fmc_interrupt_flag_get(FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_PGERR);
```

fmc_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of `fmc_interrupt_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-375. Function `fmc_interrupt_flag_clear`

Function name	<code>fmc_interrupt_flag_clear</code>
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus fmc_interrupt_flag_clear (fmc_interrupt_flag_enum flag);</code>
Function descriptions	clear FMC interrupt flag state
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	clear FMC flag
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_PGERR</i>	FMC bank0 operation error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_WPERR</i>	FMC bank0 erase/program protection error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_END</i>	FMC bank0 end of operation interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_PGERR</i>	FMC bank1 operation error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_WPERR</i>	FMC bank1 erase/program protection error interrupt flag bit
<i>FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK1_END</i>	FMC bank1 end of operation interrupt flag bit
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* clear FMC bank0 operation error interrupt flag bit */
```

```
FlagStatus flag = fmc_interrupt_flag_clear (FMC_INT_FLAG_BANK0_PGERR);
```

fmc_bank0_state_get

The description of fmc_bank0_state_get is shown as below:

Table 3-376. Function fmc_bank0_state_get

Function name	fmc_bank0_state_get
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_bank0_state_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC bank0 state
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* get the FMC BANK0 state */
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_bank0_state_get( );
```

fmc_bank1_state_get

The description of fmc_bank1_state_get is shown as below:

Table 3-377. Function fmc_bank1_state_get

Function name	fmc_bank1_state_get
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_bank1_state_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC bank1 state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum

Example:

```
/* get the FMC BANK1 state */
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_bank1_state_get( );
```

fmc_bank0_ready_wait

Function name	fmc_state_get
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_state_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the FMC state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC

Example:

```
/* get the FMC state */
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_state_get();
```

fmc_ready_wait

The description of fmc_bank0_ready_wait is shown as below:

Table 3-378. Function fmc_bank0_ready_wait

Function name	fmc_bank0_ready_wait
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_bank0_ready_wait(uint32_t timeout);
Function descriptions	check whether FMC bank0 is ready or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	fmc_bank0_state_get
Input parameter{in}	
timeout	count of loop
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum
Function name	fmc_ready_wait
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_ready_wait(uint32_t timeout);
Function descriptions	check whether FMC is ready or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	fmc_state_get()
Input parameter{in}	
timeout	count of loop
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
fmc_state_enum	state of FMC

Example:

```
/* check whether FMC BANK0 is ready or not */
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_bank0_ready_wait (0x00001000 );
```

fmc_bank1_ready_wait

The description of fmc_bank1_ready_wait is shown as below:

Table 3-379. Function fmc_bank1_ready_wait

Function name	fmc_bank1_ready_wait
Function prototype	fmc_state_enum fmc_bank1_ready_wait(uint32_t timeout);
Function descriptions	check whether FMC bank1 is ready or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	fmc_bank1_state_get
Input parameter{in}	
timeout	count of loop
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

fmc_state_enum	state of FMC, refer to Enum fmc_state_enum
-----------------------	--

Example:

```
/* check whether FMC BANK1 is ready or not */
```

```
fmc_state_enum state = fmc_bank1_ready_wait (0x00001000 );
```

3.14. FWDGT

The free watchdog timer (FWDGT) is a hardware timing circuitry that can be used to detect system failures due to software malfunctions. It's suitable for the situation that requires an independent environment and lower timing accuracy. The FWDGT registers are listed in chapter [3.14.1](#) the FWDGT firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.14.2](#).

3.14.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

FWDGT registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-380. FWDGT Registers

Registers	Descriptions
FWDGT_CTL	Control register
FWDGT_PSC	Prescaler register
FWDGT_RLD	Reload register
FWDGT_STAT	Status register

3.14.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

FWDGT firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-381. FWDGT firmware function

Function name	Function description
fwdgt_write_enable	enable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
fwdgt_write_disable	disable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
fwdgt_enable	start the free watchdog timer counter
fwdgt_prescaler_value_config	configure the free watchdog timer counter prescaler value
fwdgt_reload_value_config	configure the free watchdog timer counter reload value
fwdgt_counter_reload	reload the counter of FWDGT
fwdgt_config	configure counter reload value, and prescaler divider value
fwdgt_flag_get	get flag state of FWDGT

fwdgt_write_enable

The description of fwdgt_write_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-382. Function fwdgt_write_enable

Function name	fwdgt_write_enable
Function prototype	void fwdgt_write_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD */
fwdgt_write_enable ( );
```

fwdgt_write_disable

The description of fwdgt_write_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-383. Function fwdgt_write_disable

Function name	fwdgt_write_disable
Function prototype	void fwdgt_write_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable write access to FWDGT_PSC and FWDGT_RLD */
fwdgt_write_disable ( );
```

fwdgt_enable

The description of fwdgt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-384. Function fwdgt_enable

Function name	fwdgt_enable
Function prototype	void fwdgt_enable(void);
Function descriptions	start the free watchdog timer counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start the free watchdog timer counter */
```

```
fwdgt_enable ();
```

fwdgt_prescaler_value_config

The description of fwdgt_prescaler_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-385. Function fwdgt_prescaler_value_config

Function name	fwdgt_prescaler_value_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus fwdgt_prescaler_value_config(uint16_t prescaler_value);
Function descriptions	configure the free watchdog timer counter prescaler value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler_value	specify prescaler value
FWDGT_PSC_DIV4	FWDGT prescaler set to 4
FWDGT_PSC_DIV8	FWDGT prescaler set to 8
FWDGT_PSC_DIV16	FWDGT prescaler set to 16
FWDGT_PSC_DIV32	FWDGT prescaler set to 32
FWDGT_PSC_DIV64	FWDGT prescaler set to 64
FWDGT_PSC_DIV128	FWDGT prescaler set to 128
FWDGT_PSC_DIV256	FWDGT prescaler set to 256
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR / SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* set FWDGT prescaler to 256 */
```

```
ErrStatus flag;
```

```
flag = fwdgt_prescaler_value_config (FWDGT_PSC_DIV256);
```

fwdgt_reload_value_config

The description of fwdgt_reload_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-386. Function fwdgt_reload_value_config

Function name	fwdgt_reload_value_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus fwdgt_reload_value_config(uint16_t reload_value);
Function descriptions	configure the free watchdog timer counter reload value
Precondition	-
Input parameter{in}	
reload_value	reload_value: specify window value(0x0000 - 0x0FFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR / SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* set FWDGT reload value to 0x0FFF */
```

```
ErrStatus flag;
```

```
flag = fwdgt_reload_value_config (0x0FFF);
```

fwdgt_counter_reload

The description of fwdgt_counter_reload is shown as below:

Table 3-387. Function fwdgt_counter_reload

Function name	fwdgt_counter_reload
Function prototype	void fwdgt_counter_reload(void);
Function descriptions	reload the counter of FWDGT
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reload FWDGT counter */
```

```
fwdgt_counter_reload ( );
```

fwdgt_config

The description of fwdgt_config is shown as below:

Table 3-388. Function fwdgt_config

Function name	fwdgt_config
Function prototype	ErrStatus fwdgt_config(uint16_t reload_value, uint8_t prescaler_div);
Function descriptions	configure counter reload value, and prescaler divider value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
reload_value	specify reload value(0x0000 - 0x0FFF)
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler_div	FWDGT prescaler value-
FWDGT_PSC_DIV4	FWDGT prescaler set to 4
FWDGT_PSC_DIV8	FWDGT prescaler set to 8
FWDGT_PSC_DIV16	FWDGT prescaler set to 16
FWDGT_PSC_DIV32	FWDGT prescaler set to 32
FWDGT_PSC_DIV64	FWDGT prescaler set to 64
FWDGT_PSC_DIV128	FWDGT prescaler set to 128
FWDGT_PSC_DIV256	FWDGT prescaler set to 256
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	ERROR or SUCCESS

Example:

```
/* confiure FWDGT counter clock: 40KHz(IRC40K) / 64 = 0.625 KHz */
```

```
fwdgt_config(2*500, FWDGT_PSC_DIV64);
```

fwdgt_flag_get

The description of fwdgt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-389. Function fwdgt_flag_get fwdgt_write_disable

Function name	fwdgt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus fwdgt_flag_get(uint16_t flag);
Function descriptions	get flag state of FWDGT
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flag to get
FWDGT_FLAG_PUD	a write operation to FWDGT_PSC register is on going
FWDGT_FLAG_RUD	a write operation to FWDGT_RLD register is on going

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* test if a prescaler value update is on going */

FlagStatus status;

status = fwdgt_flag_get (FWDGT_FLAG_PUD);

if(status == RESET)
{
    ...
}
else
{
    ...
}

```

3.15. GPIO

GPIO is used to implement logic input/output functions for the devices. The GPIO registers are listed in chapter [3.15.1 Descriptions of Peripheral 4](#), the GPIO firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.15.2 Descriptions of Peripheral 5](#).

3.15.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

GPIO registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-390. GPIO Registers

Registers	Descriptions
GPIOx_CTL0	Port control register 0
GPIOx_CTL1	Port control register 1
GPIOx_ISTAT	Port input status register
GPIOx_OCTL	Port output control register
GPIOx_BOP	Port bit operate register
GPIOx_BC	Port bit clear register

Registers	Descriptions
GPIOx_LOCK	Port configuration lock register
GPIOx_SPD	Port bit speed register
AFIO_EC	Event control register
AFIO_PCF0	AFIO port configuration register 0
AFIO_EXTISS0	EXTI sources selection register 0
AFIO_EXTISS1	EXTI sources selection register 1
AFIO_EXTISS2	EXTI sources selection register 2
AFIO_EXTISS3	EXTI sources selection register 3
AFIO_PCF1	AFIO port configuration register 1
AFIO_CPSCTL	IO compensation control register

3.15.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

GPIO firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-391. GPIO firmware function

Function name	Function description
gpio_deinit	reset GPIO port
gpio_afio_deinit	reset alternate function I/O(AFIO)
gpio_init	GPIO parameter initialization
gpio_bit_set	set GPIO pin
gpio_bit_reset	reset GPIO pin
gpio_bit_write	write data to the specified GPIO pin
gpio_port_write	write data to the specified GPIO port
gpio_input_bit_get	get GPIO pin input status
gpio_input_port_get	get GPIO port input status
gpio_output_bit_get	get GPIO pin output status
gpio_output_port_get	get GPIO port output status
gpio_pin_remap_config	configure GPIO pin remap
gpio_ethernet_phy_select	select ethernet MII or RMII PHY (for GD32F30X_CL devices)

Function name	Function description
gpio_exti_source_select	select GPIO pin exti sources
gpio_event_output_config	configure GPIO pin event output
gpio_event_output_enable	enable GPIO pin event output
gpio_event_output_disable	disable GPIO pin event output
gpio_pin_lock	lock GPIO pin
gpio_compensation_config	configure the I/O compensation cell
gpio_compensation_flag_get	check the I/O compensation cell is ready or not

gpio_deinit

The description of gpio_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-392. Function gpio_deinit

Function name	gpio_deinit
Function prototype	void gpio_deinit(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	reset GPIO port
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset GPIOA */
gpio_deinit(GPIOA);
```

gpio_afio_deinit

The description of gpio_afio_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-393. Function gpio_afio_deinit

Function name	gpio_afio_deinit
Function prototype	void gpio_afio_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset alternate function I/O(AFIO)
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset alternate function */
```

```
gpio_afio_deinit();
```

gpio_init

The description of gpio_init is shown as below:

Table 3-394. Function gpio_init

Function name	gpio_init
Function prototype	void gpio_init(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t speed, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	GPIO parameter initialization
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_mode	gpio pin mode

<code>GPIO_MODE_AIN</code>	analog input mode
<code>GPIO_MODE_IN_FLOATING</code>	floating input mode
<code>GPIO_MODE_IPD</code>	pull-down input mode
<code>GPIO_MODE_IPU</code>	pull-up input mode
<code>GPIO_MODE_OUT_OD</code>	GPIO output with open-drain
<code>GPIO_MODE_OUT_PP</code>	GPIO output with push-pull
<code>GPIO_MODE_AF_OD</code>	AFIO output with open-drain
<code>GPIO_MODE_AF_PP</code>	AFIO output with push-pull
Input parameter{in}	
speed	gpio output max speed value
<code>GPIO_OSPEED_10MHZ</code>	output max speed 10MHz
<code>GPIO_OSPEED_2MHZ</code>	output max speed 2MHz
<code>GPIO_OSPEED_50MHZ</code>	output max speed 50MHz
<code>GPIO_OSPEED_MAX</code>	output max speed more than 50MHz
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
<code>GPIO_PIN_x</code>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<code>GPIO_PIN_ALL</code>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config PA0 as analog input mode*/
```

```
gpio_init(GPIOA, GPIO_MODE_AIN, GPIO_OSPEED_50MHZ, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_bit_set

The description of gpio_bit_set is shown as below:

Table 3-395. Function gpio_bit_set

Function name	gpio_bit_set
Function prototype	void gpio_bit_set(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	set GPIO pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
GPIO_PIN_x	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
GPIO_PIN_ALL	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set PA0*/
```

```
gpio_bit_set(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_bit_reset

The description of gpio_bit_reset is shown as below:

Table 3-396. Function gpio_bit_reset

Function name	gpio_bit_reset
Function prototype	void gpio_bit_reset(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	reset GPIO pin

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x (x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset PA0*/
```

```
gpio_bit_set(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_bit_write

The description of gpio_bit_write is shown as below:

Table 3-397. Function gpio_bit_write

Function name	gpio_bit_write
Function prototype	void gpio_bit_write(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin, bit_status bit_value);
Function descriptions	write data to the specified GPIO pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	

pin	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
Input parameter{in}	
bit_value	SET or RESET
<i>RESET</i>	clear the port pin
<i>SET</i>	set the port pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write 1 to PA0 */
```

```
gpio_bit_write(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0, SET);
```

gpio_port_write

The description of gpio_port_write is shown as below:

Table 3-398. Function gpio_port_write

Function name	gpio_port_write
Function prototype	void gpio_port_write(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	write data to the specified GPIO port
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	
data	specify the value to be written to the port output data register
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/*write 1010 0101 1010 0101 to Port A */
```

```
gpio_port_write(GPIOA, 0xA5A5);
```

gpio_input_bit_get

The description of gpio_input_bit_get is shown as below:

Table 3-399. Function gpio_input_bit_get

Function name	gpio_input_bit_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus gpio_input_bit_get(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	get GPIO pin input status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x (x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get status of PA0 */
```

```
FlagStatus bit_state;
```

```
bit_state = gpio_input_bit_get(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_input_port_get

The description of gpio_input_port_get is shown as below:

Table 3-400. Function gpio_input_port_get

Function name	gpio_input_port_get
Function prototype	uint16_t gpio_input_port_get(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	get GPIO port input status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
GPIOx	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	0x0000-0xFFFF

Example:

```
/* get input value of Port A */
uint16_t port_state;
port_state = gpio_input_bit_get(GPIOA);
```

gpio_output_bit_get

The description of gpio_output_bit_get is shown as below:

Table 3-401. Function gpio_output_bit_get

Function name	gpio_output_bit_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus gpio_output_bit_get(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	get GPIO pin output status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x (x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get output status of PA0 */
```

```
FlagStatus bit_state;
```

```
bit_state = gpio_output_bit_get(GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_output_port_get

The description of gpio_output_port_get is shown as below:

Table 3-402. Function gpio_output_port_get

Function name	gpio_output_port_get
Function prototype	uint16_t gpio_output_port_get(uint32_t gpio_periph);
Function descriptions	get GPIO port output status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port
<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
Uint16_t	0x0000-0xFFFF

Example:

```
/* get output value of Port A */
```

```
uint16_t port_state;
```

```
port_state = gpio_output_port_get(GPIOA);
```

gpio_pin_remap_config

The description of gpio_pin_remap_config is shown as below:

Table 3-403. Function gpio_pin_remap_config

Function name	gpio_pin_remap_config
Function prototype	void gpio_pin_remap_config(uint32_t remap, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	configure GPIO pin remap
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_remap	select the pin to remap
GPIO_SPI0_REMAP	SPI0 remapping
GPIO_I2C0_REMAP	I2C0 remapping
GPIO_USART0_REMAP	USART0 remapping
GPIO_USART1_REMAP	USART1 remapping
GPIO_USART2_PARTIAL_REMAP	USART2 partial remapping
GPIO_USART2_FULL_REMAP	USART2 full remapping
GPIO_TIMER0_PARTIAL_REMAP	TIMER0 partial remapping
GPIO_TIMER0_FULL_REMAP	TIMER0 full remapping

<i>GPIO_TIMER1_PARTIAL_REMAP1</i>	TIMER1 partial remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER1_PARTIAL_REMAP2</i>	TIMER1 partial remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER1_FULL_REMAP</i>	TIMER1 full remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER2_PARTIAL_REMAP</i>	TIMER2 partial remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER2_FULL_REMAP</i>	TIMER2 full remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER3_REMAP</i>	TIMER3 remapping
<i>GPIO_CAN_PARTIAL_REMAP</i>	CAN partial remapping (only for GD32F30X_HD devices and GD32F30X_XD devices)
<i>GPIO_CAN_FULL_REMAP</i>	CAN full remapping (only for GD32F30X_HD devices and GD32F30X_XD devices)
<i>GPIO_CAN0_PARTIAL_REMAP</i>	CAN0 partial remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices)
<i>GPIO_CAN0_FULL_REMAP</i>	CAN0 full remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices)
<i>GPIO_PD01_REMAP</i>	PD01 remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER4CH3_IEMAP</i>	TIMER4 channel3 internal remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices and GD32F30X_HD devices)
<i>GPIO_ADC0_ETRGIN_S_REMAP</i>	ADC0 external trigger inserted conversion remapping (only for GD32F30X_HD devices and GD32F30X_XD devices)
<i>GPIO_ADC0_ETRGRREG_REMAP</i>	ADC0 external trigger regular conversion remapping (only for GD32F30X_HD devices and GD32F30X_XD devices)
<i>GPIO_ADC1_ETRGIN_S_REMAP</i>	ADC1 external trigger inserted conversion remapping (only for GD32F30X_HD devices and GD32F30X_XD devices)
<i>GPIO_ADC1_ETRGRREG_REMAP</i>	ADC1 external trigger regular conversion remapping (only for GD32F30X_HD devices and GD32F30X_XD devices)
<i>GPIO_ENET_REMAP</i>	ENET remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices)
<i>GPIO_CAN1_REMAP</i>	CAN1 remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices)

<i>GPIO_SWJ_NONJTRST_REMAP</i>	full SWJ(JTAG-DP + SW-DP),but without NJTRST
<i>GPIO_SWJ_SWDPENABLE_REMAP</i>	JTAG-DP disabled and SW-DP enabled
<i>GPIO_SWJ_DISABLE_REMAP</i>	JTAG-DP disabled and SW-DP disabled
<i>GPIO_SPI2_REMAP</i>	SPI2 remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices)
<i>GPIO_TIMER1ITR0_REMAP</i>	TIMER1 internal trigger 0 remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices)
<i>GPIO_PTP_PPS_REMAP</i>	ethernet PTP PPS remapping (only for GD32F30X_CL devices)
<i>GPIO_TIMER8_REMAP</i>	TIMER8 remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER9_REMAP</i>	TIMER9 remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER10_REMAP</i>	TIMER10 remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER12_REMAP</i>	TIMER12 remapping
<i>GPIO_TIMER13_REMAP</i>	TIMER13 remapping
<i>GPIO_EXMC_NADV_REMAP</i>	EXMC_NADV connect/disconnect
<i>GPIO CTC_REMAP0</i>	CTC remapping(PD15)
<i>GPIO CTC_REMAP1</i>	CTC remapping (PF0)
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/*enable SPI0 remapping*/
```

```
gpio_pin_remap_config (GPIO_SPI0_REMAP, ENABLE);
```

gpio_ethernet_phy_select

The description of gpio_ethernet_phy_select is shown as below:

Table 3-404. Function gpio_ethernet_phy_select

Function name	gpio_ethernet_phy_select
Function prototype	void gpio_ethernet_phy_select(uint32_t enet_sel);
Function descriptions	select ethernet MII or RMII PHY (for GD32F30X_CL devices)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
enet_sel	ethernet MII or RMII PHY selection
<i>GPIO_ENET_PHY_MII</i>	configure ethernet MAC for connection with an MII PHY
<i>GPIO_ENET_PHY_RMII</i>	configure ethernet MAC for connection with an RMII PHY
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure ethernet MAC for connection with an RMII PHY */
```

```
gpio_ethernet_phy_select (GPIO_ENET_PHY_RMII);
```

gpio_exti_source_select

The description of gpio_exti_source_select is shown as below:

Table 3-405. Function gpio_exti_source_select

Function name	gpio_exti_source_select
----------------------	-------------------------

Function prototype	void gpio_exti_source_select(uint8_t output_port, uint8_t output_pin);
Function descriptions	select GPIO pin exti sources
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
output_port	gpio event output port
GPIO_PORT_SOURCE_GPIOx	output port source (x= A,B,C,D,E)
Input parameter{in}	
output_pin	gpio event output pin
GPIO_PIN_SOURCE_x	pin number (x=0..15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config PA0 as EXTI source*/
```

```
gpio_exti_source_select(GPIO_PORT_SOURCE_GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_SOURCE_0);
```

gpio_event_output_config

The description of gpio_event_output_config is shown as below:

Table 3-406. Function gpio_event_output_config

Function name	gpio_event_output_config
Function prototype	void gpio_event_output_config(uint8_t output_port, uint8_t output_pin);
Function descriptions	configure GPIO pin event output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
output_port	gpio event output port

<i>GPIO_EVENT_PORT_GPIOx</i>	event output port x (x= A,B,C,D,E)
Input parameter{in}	
output_pin	gpio event output pin
<i>GPIO_EVENT_PIN_x</i>	pin number (x=0..15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* Config PA0 as the output of event */
gpio_event_output_config(GPIO_EVENT_PORT_GPIOA, GPIO_EVENT_PIN_0);
```

gpio_event_output_enable

The description of gpio_event_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-407. Function gpio_event_output_enable

Function name	gpio_event_output_enable
Function prototype	void gpio_event_output_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable GPIO pin event output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable GPIO pin event output */
```

```
gpio_event_output_enable(void);
```

gpio_event_output_disable

The description of gpio_event_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-408. Function gpio_event_output_disable

Function name	gpio_event_output_disable
Function prototype	void gpio_event_output_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable GPIO pin event output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable GPIO pin event output */
```

```
gpio_event_output_disable(void);
```

gpio_pin_lock

The description of gpio_pin_lock is shown as below:

Table 3-409. Function gpio_pin_lock

Function name	gpio_pin_lock
Function prototype	void gpio_pin_lock(uint32_t gpio_periph, uint32_t pin);
Function descriptions	lock GPIO pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
gpio_periph	GPIO port

<i>GPIOx</i>	GPIOx (x=A,B,C,D,E,F,G)
Input parameter{in}	
pin	GPIO pin
<i>GPIO_PIN_x</i>	GPIO_PIN_x(x=0..15)
<i>GPIO_PIN_ALL</i>	All pins
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* lock PA0 */
```

```
gpio_pin_lock (GPIOA, GPIO_PIN_0);
```

gpio_compensation_config

The description of gpio_compensation_config is shown as below:

Table 3-410. Function gpio_compensation_config

Function name	gpio_compensation_config
Function prototype	void gpio_compensation_config(uint32_t compensation);
Function descriptions	configure the I/O compensation cell
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
compensation	specifies the I/O compensation cell mode
<i>GPIO_COMPENSATION_ENABLE</i>	I/O compensation cell is enabled
<i>GPIO_COMPENSATION_DISABLE</i>	I/O compensation cell is disabled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* enabled I/O compensation cell */
```

```
gpio_compensation_config (GPIO_COMPENSATION_ENABLE);
```

gpio_compensation_flag_get

The description of gpio_compensation_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-411. Function gpio_compensation_flag_get

Function name	gpio_compensation_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus gpio_compensation_flag_get(void);
Function descriptions	check the I/O compensation cell is ready or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* check the I/O compensation cell state */
```

```
FlagStatus cell_state;
```

```
cell_state = gpio_compensation_flag_get (void);
```

3.16. I2C

The I2C (inter-integrated circuit) module provides an I2C interface which is an industry standard two-line serial interface for MCU to communicate with external I2C interface. The I2C registers are listed in chapter [3.16.1](#), the I2C firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.16.2](#).

3.16.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

I2C registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-412. I2C Registers

Registers	Descriptions
I2C_CTL0	Control register 0
I2C_CTL1	Control register 1
I2C_SADDR0	Slave address register 0
I2C_SADDR1	Slave address register 1
I2C_DATA	Transfer buffer register
I2C_STAT0	Transfer status register 0
I2C_STAT1	Transfer status register 1
I2C_CKCFG	Clock configure register
I2C_RT	Rise time register
I2C_FMPCFG	Fast mode plus configure register

3.16.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

I2C firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-413. I2C firmware function

Function name	Function description
i2c_deinit	reset I2C
i2c_clock_config	configure I2C clock
i2c_mode_addr_config	configure I2C address
i2c_smbus_type_config	SMBus type selection
i2c_ack_config	whether or not to send an ACK
i2c_ackpos_config	configure I2C POAP position
i2c_master_addressing	master send slave address
i2c_dualaddr_enable	dual-address mode switch
i2c_enable	enable I2C

Function name	Function description
i2c_disable	disable I2C
i2c_start_on_bus	generate a START condition on I2C bus
i2c_stop_on_bus	generate a STOP condition on I2C bus
i2c_data_transmit	I2C transmit data function
i2c_data_receive	I2C receive data function
i2c_dma_config	configure I2C DMA mode
i2c_dma_last_transfer_config	configure whether next DMA EOT is DMA last transfer or not
i2c_stretch_scl_low_config	whether to stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode
i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config	whether or not to response to a general call
i2c_software_reset_config	configure software reset of I2C
i2c_pec_config	configure I2C PEC calculation
i2c_pec_transfer_config	configure whether to transfer PEC value
i2c_pec_value_get	packet error checking value
i2c_smbus_alert_config	configure I2C alert through SMBA pin
i2c_smbus_arp_config	configure I2C ARP protocol in SMBus
i2c_flag_get	get I2C flag status
i2c_flag_clear	clear I2C flag status
i2c_interrupt_enable	enable I2C interrupt
i2c_interrupt_disable	disable I2C interrupt
i2c_interrupt_flag_get	get I2C interrupt flag status
i2c_interrupt_flag_clear	clear I2C interrupt flag status

i2c_deinit

The description of i2c_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-414. Function i2c_deinit

Function name	i2c_deinit
Function prototype	void i2c_deinit(uint32_t i2c_periph);

Function descriptions	reset I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset I2C0 */
```

```
i2c_deinit(I2C0);
```

i2c_clock_config

The description of i2c_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-415. Function i2c_clock_config

Function name	i2c_clock_config
Function prototype	void i2c_clock_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t clkspeed, uint32_t duty cyc);
Function descriptions	I2C clock configure
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_clock_freq_get
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
clkspeed	i2c clock speed
Input parameter{in}	

dutycyc	duty cycle in fast mode
<i>I2C_DTCY_2</i>	T_low/T_high=2
<i>I2C_DTCY_16_9</i>	T_low/T_high=16/9
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure I2C0 clock speed as 100KHz*/
```

```
i2c_clock_config(I2C0, 100000, I2C_DTCY_2);
```

i2c_mode_addr_config

The description of i2c_mode_addr_config is shown as below:

Table 3-416. Function i2c_mode_addr_config

Function name	i2c_mode_addr_config
Function prototype	void i2c_mode_addr_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t mode, uint32_t addformat, uint32_t addr);
Function descriptions	configure I2C address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
mode	I2C mode select
<i>I2C_I2CMODE_ENABLER</i>	I2C mode
<i>I2C_SMBUSMODE_ENABLED</i>	SMBus mode
Input parameter{in}	

addformat	7bits or 10bits
<i>I2C_ADDFORMAT_7BITS</i>	7bits
<i>I2C_ADDFORMAT_10BITS</i>	10bits
Input parameter{in}	
addr	I2C address
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure I2C0 address as 0x82, using 7 bits */
```

```
i2c_mode_addr_config(I2C0, I2C_I2CMODE_ENABLE, I2C_ADDFORMAT_7BITS, 0x82);
```

i2c_smbus_type_config

The description of i2c_smbus_type_config is shown as below:

Table 3-417. Function i2c_smbus_type_config

Function name	i2c_smbus_type_config
Function prototype	void i2c_smbus_type_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t type);
Function descriptions	SMBus type selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
type	Device or host
<i>I2C_SMBUS_DEVICE</i>	device
<i>I2C_SMBUS_HOST</i>	host

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* config I2C0 as SMBUS host type*/
```

```
i2c_smbus_type_config (I2C0, I2C_SMBUS_HOST);
```

i2c_ack_config

The description of i2c_ack_config is shown as below:

Table 3-418. Function i2c_ack_config

Function name	i2c_ack_config
Function prototype	void i2c_ack_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t ack);
Function descriptions	whether or not to send an ACK
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
ack	I2C peripheral
I2C_ACK_ENABLE	ACK will be sent
I2C_ACK_DISABLE	ACK will not be sent
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 will send ACK */
```

```
i2c_ack_config(I2C0, I2C_ACK_ENABLE);
```

i2c_ackpos_config

The description of i2c_ackpos_config is shown as below:

Table 3-419. Function i2c_ackpos_config

Function name	i2c_ackpos_config
Function prototype	void i2c_ackpos_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pos);
Function descriptions	I2C POAP position configure
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
pos	ACK position
<i>I2C_ACKPOS_CURRENT</i>	whether to send ACK or not for the current
<i>I2C_ACKPOS_NEXT</i>	whether to send ACK or not for the next byte
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* The ACK of I2C0 is send for the current frame*/
```

```
i2c_ackpos_config(I2C0, I2C_ACKPOS_CURRENT);
```

i2c_master_addressing

The description of i2c_master_addressing is shown as below:

Table 3-420. Function i2c_master_addressing

Function name	i2c_master_addressing
----------------------	-----------------------

Function prototype	void i2c_master_addressing(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t addr, uint32_t trandirection);
Function descriptions	void i2c_master_addressing(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t addr, uint32_t trandirection);
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
addr	slave address
Input parameter{in}	
trandirection	transmitter or receiver
<i>I2C_TRANSMITTER</i>	transmitter
<i>I2C_RECEIVER</i>	receiver
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* send slave address to I2C bus and I2C0 act as receiver */
```

```
i2c_master_addressing(I2C0, 0x82, I2C_RECEIVER);
```

i2c_dualaddr_enable

The description of i2c_dualaddr_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-421. Function i2c_dualaddr_enable

Function name	i2c_dualaddr_enable
Function prototype	void i2c_dualaddr_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t dualaddr);
Function descriptions	dual-address mode switch
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
dualaddr	Enable or disable
I2C_DUADEN_DISABL E	disable dual-address mode
I2C_DUADEN_ENABL E	enable dual-address mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 dual-address*/
```

```
i2c_dualaddr_enable(I2C0, I2C_DUADEN_ENABLE);
```

i2c_enable

The description of i2c_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-422. Function i2c_enable

Function name	i2c_enable
Function prototype	void i2c_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	enable I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 */
```

```
i2c_enable(I2C0);
```

i2c_disable

The description of i2c_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-423. Function i2c_disable

Function name	i2c_disable
Function prototype	void i2c_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	disable I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 */
```

```
i2c_disable(I2C0);
```

i2c_start_on_bus

The description of i2c_start_on_bus is shown as below:

Table 3-424. Function i2c_start_on_bus

Function name	i2c_start_on_bus
---------------	------------------

Function prototype	void i2c_start_on_bus(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	generate a START condition on I2C bus
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 send a start condition to I2C bus */
```

```
i2c_start_on_bus(I2C0);
```

i2c_stop_on_bus

The description of i2c_stop_on_bus is shown as below:

Table 3-425. Function i2c_stop_on_bus

Function name	i2c_stop_on_bus
Function prototype	void i2c_stop_on_bus(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	generate a STOP condition on I2C bus
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* I2C0 generate a STOP condition to I2C bus */
```

```
i2c_stop_on_bus (I2C0);
```

i2c_data_transmit

The description of i2c_data_transmit is shown as below:

Table 3-426. Function i2c_data_transmit

Function name	i2c_data_transmit
Function prototype	void i2c_data_transmit(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint8_t data);
Function descriptions	I2C transmit data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
data	transmit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 transmit data */
```

```
i2c_data_transmit (I2C0);
```

i2c_data_receive

The description of i2c_data_receive is shown as below:

Table 3-427. Function i2c_data_receive

Function name	i2c_data_receive
----------------------	------------------

Function prototype	uint8_t i2c_data_receive(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	I2C receive data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0x00..0xFF

Example:

```
/* I2C0 receive data */
```

```
uint8_t i2c_receiver;
```

```
i2c_receiver = i2c_data_receive(I2C0);
```

i2c_dma_config

The description of i2c_dma_config is shown as below:

Table 3-428. Function i2c_dma_config

Function name	i2c_dma_config
Function prototype	void i2c_dma_config (uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t dmastate);
Function descriptions	configure I2C DMA mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
dmastate	On or off

<i>I2C_DMA_ON</i>	DMA mode enable
<i>I2C_DMA_OFF</i>	DMA mode disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 DMA mode enable */
```

```
i2c_dma_config(I2C0, I2C_DMA_ON);
```

i2c_dma_last_transfer_config

The description of i2c_dma_last_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-429. Function i2c_dma_last_transfer_config

Function name	i2c_dma_last_transfer_config
Function prototype	void i2c_dma_last_transfer_config (uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t dmalast);
Function descriptions	configure whether next DMA EOT is DMA last transfer or not
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
dmalast	next DMA EOT is the last transfer or not
<i>I2C_DMALST_ON</i>	next DMA EOT is the last transfer
<i>I2C_DMALST_OFF</i>	next DMA EOT is not the last transfer
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* next DMA EOT is the last transfer */
i2c_dma_last_transfer_config(I2C0, I2C_DMALST_ON);
```

i2c_stretch_scl_low_config

The description of i2c_stretch_scl_low_config is shown as below:

Table 3-430. Function i2c_stretch_scl_low_config

Function name	i2c_stretch_scl_low_config
Function prototype	void i2c_stretch_scl_low_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t stretchpara);
Function descriptions	whether to stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
stretchpara	SCL stretching enable or disable
I2C_SCLSTRETCH_ENABLE	SCL stretching is enabled
I2C_SCLSTRETCH_DISABLE	SCL stretching is disabled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* stretch SCL low when data is not ready in slave mode */
i2c_stretch_scl_low_config(I2C0, I2C_SCLSTRETCH_ENABLE);
```

i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config

The description of i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config is shown as below:

Table 3-431. Function `i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config`

Function name	<code>i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t gcallpara);</code>
Function descriptions	whether or not to response to a general call
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>i2c_periph</code>	I2C peripheral
<code>I2Cx</code>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
<code>gcallpara</code>	response to a general call or not
<code>I2C_GCEN_ENABLE</code>	slave will response to a general call
<code>I2C_GCEN_DISABLE</code>	slave will not response to a general call
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 will response to a general call */
```

```
i2c_slave_response_to_gcall_config(I2C0, I2C_GCEN_ENABLE);
```

`i2c_software_reset_config`

The description of `i2c_software_reset_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-432. Function `i2c_software_reset_config`

Function name	<code>i2c_software_reset_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void i2c_software_reset_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t sreset);</code>
Function descriptions	configure software reset of I2C
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
sreset	under reset or not
<i>I2C_SRESET_SET</i>	I2C is under reset
<i>I2C_SRESET_RESET</i>	I2C is not under reset
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* software reset I2C0 */
```

```
i2c_software_reset_config(I2C0, I2C_SRESET_SET);
```

i2c_pec_config

The description of i2c_pec_config is shown as below:

Table 3-433. Function i2c_pec_config

Function name	i2c_pec_config
Function prototype	void i2c_pec_config (uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pecstate);
Function descriptions	configure I2C PEC calculation
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
pecstate	On or off
<i>I2C_PEC_ENABLE</i>	PEC calculation on

<i>I2C_PEC_DISABLE</i>	PEC calculation off
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* Enable I2C PEC calculation */
```

```
i2c_pec_config(I2C0, I2C_PEC_ENABLE);
```

i2c_pec_transfer_config

The description of i2c_pec_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-434. Function i2c_pec_transfer_config

Function name	i2c_pec_transfer_config
Function prototype	void i2c_pec_transfer_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t pecpara);
Function descriptions	I2C whether to transfer PEC value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
pecpara	Transfer PEC or not
<i>I2C_PECTRANS_ENABLE</i>	transfer PEC
<i>I2C_PECTRANS_DISABLE</i>	not transfer PEC
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 transfer PEC */
```

```
i2c_pec_transfer_config(I2C0, I2C_PECTRANS_ENABLE);
```

i2c_pec_value_get

The description of i2c_pec_value_get is shown as below:

Table 3-435. Function i2c_pec_value_get

Function name	i2c_pec_value_get
Function prototype	uint8_t i2c_pec_value_get(uint32_t i2c_periph);
Function descriptions	get packet error checking value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	0..255

Example:

```
/* I2C0 get packet error checking value */
```

```
uint8_t pec_value;
```

```
pec_value = i2c_pec_value_get(I2C0);
```

i2c_smbus_alert_config

The description of i2c_smbus_alert_config is shown as below:

Table 3-436. Function i2c_smbus_alert_config

Function name	i2c_smbus_alert_config
Function prototype	void i2c_smbus_alert_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t smbuspara);
Function descriptions	configure I2C alert through SMBA pin

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
smbuspara	issue alert through SMBA pin or not
<i>I2C_SALTSEND_ENABLE</i>	issue alert through SMBA pin
<i>I2C_SALTSEND_DISABLE</i>	not issue alert through SMBA pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* I2C0 issue alert through SMBA pin enable*/
```

```
i2c_smbus_alert_config(I2C0, I2C_SALTSEND_ENABLE);
```

i2c_smbus_arp_config

The description of i2c_smbus_arp_config is shown as below:

Table 3-437. Function i2c_smbus_arp_config

Function name	i2c_smbus_arp_config
Function prototype	void i2c_smbus_arp_config(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t arpstate);
Function descriptions	configure I2C ARP protocol in SMBus
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)

Input parameter{in}	
arpstate	ARP protocol in SMBus switch
<i>I2C_ARP_ENABLE</i>	enable ARP
<i>I2C_ARP_DISABLE</i>	disable ARP
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 ARP protocol in SMBus switch */
i2c_smbus_arp_config(I2C0, I2C_ARP_ENABLE);
```

i2c_flag_get

The description of i2c_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-438. Function i2c_flag_get

Function name	i2c_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus i2c_flag_get(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get I2C flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify get which flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_SBSEND</i>	start condition send out
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_BTC</i>	byte transmission finishes
<i>I2C_FLAG_ADD10SEN</i>	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode

<i>D</i>	
<i>I2C_FLAG_STPDET</i>	stop condition detected in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_RBNE</i>	I2C_DATA is not Empty during receiving
<i>I2C_FLAG_TBE</i>	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting
<i>I2C_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus
<i>I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error
<i>I2C_FLAG_OUERR</i>	overflow or underrun situation occurs in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_SMBALT</i>	SMBus alert status
<i>I2C_FLAG_MASTER</i>	a flag indicating whether I2C block is in master or slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_I2CBSY</i>	busy flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_TRS</i>	whether the I2C is a transmitter or a receiver
<i>I2C_FLAG_RXGC</i>	general call address (00h) received
<i>I2C_FLAG_DEFSMB</i>	default address of SMBus device
<i>I2C_FLAG_HSTSMB</i>	SMBus host header detected in slave mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_DUMOD</i>	dual flag in slave mode indicating which address is matched in dual-address mode
<i>I2C_FLAG_TFF</i>	txframe fall flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_TFR</i>	txframe rise flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_RFF</i>	rxframe fall flag
<i>I2C_FLAG_RFR</i>	rxframe rise flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* check whether start condition send out */
```

```
FlagStatus flag_state = RESET;
```

```
flag_state = i2c_flag_get(I2C0, I2C_FLAG_SBSSEND);
```

i2c_flag_clear

The description of i2c_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-439. Function i2c_flag_clear

Function name	i2c_flag_clear
Function prototype	void i2c_flag_clear(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	enable I2C interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flag type
I2C_FLAG_SMBALT	SMBus Alert status
I2C_FLAG_SMBTO	timeout signal in SMBus mode
I2C_FLAG_PECERR	PEC error when receiving data
I2C_FLAG_OUERR	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode
I2C_FLAG_AERR	acknowledge error
I2C_FLAG_LOSTARB	arbitration lost in master mode
I2C_FLAG_BERR	a bus error
I2C_FLAG_ADDSEND	cleared by reading I2C_STAT0 and reading I2C_STAT1
I2C_FLAG_TFF	txframe fall flag
I2C_FLAG_TFR	txframe rise flag
I2C_FLAG_RFF	rxframe fall flag
I2C_FLAG_RFR	rxframe rise flag

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear a bus error flag*/
```

```
i2c_flag_clear(I2C0, I2C_FLAG_BERR);
```

i2c_interrupt_enable

The description of i2c_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-440. Function i2c_interrupt_enable

Function name	i2c_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void i2c_interrupt_enable(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t inttype);
Function descriptions	enable I2C interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
inttype	interrupt type
I2C_INT_ERR	error interrupt enable
I2C_INT_EV	event interrupt enable
I2C_INT_BUF	buffer interrupt enable
I2C_INT_TFF	txframe fall interrupt enable
I2C_INT_TFR	txframe rise interrupt enable
I2C_INT_RFF	rxframe fall interrupt enable
I2C_INT_RFR	rxframe rise interrupt enable
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2C0 error interrupt */
```

```
i2c_interrupt_enable(I2C0, I2C_INT_EV);
```

i2c_interrupt_disable

The description of i2c_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-441. Function i2c_interrupt_disable

Function name	i2c_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void i2c_interrupt_disable(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t inttype);
Function descriptions	disable I2C interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
inttype	interrupt type
<i>I2C_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt disable
<i>I2C_INT_EV</i>	event interrupt disable
<i>I2C_INT_BUF</i>	buffer interrupt disable
<i>I2C_INT_TFF</i>	<i>txframe fall interrupt enable</i>
<i>I2C_INT_TFR</i>	<i>txframe rise interrupt enable</i>
<i>I2C_INT_RFF</i>	<i>rxframe fall interrupt enable</i>
<i>I2C_INT_RFR</i>	<i>rxframe rise interrupt enable</i>
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2C0 error interrupt */
```

```
i2c_interrupt_disable(I2C0, I2C_INT_EV);
```

i2c_interrupt_flag_get

The description of i2c_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-442. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	i2c_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus i2c_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t intflag);
Function descriptions	get I2C interrupt flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
I2Cx	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
intflag	interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_SBSE ND	start condition sent out in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDS END	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_BTC	byte transmission finishes
I2C_INT_FLAG_ADD10 SEND	header of 10-bit address is sent in master mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_STPD ET	stop condition detected in slave mode interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_RBNE	I2C_DATA is not Empty during receiving interrupt flag
I2C_INT_FLAG_TBE	I2C_DATA is empty during transmitting interrupt flag

<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTARB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_OUERR</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_PECERR</i>	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBTO</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBALRT</i>	SMBus Alert status interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TXFF</i>	txframe fall interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TXFR</i>	txframe rise interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RXFF</i>	rxframe fall interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RXFR</i>	rxframe rise interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET / RESET

Example:

```
/* check the byte transmission finishes interrupt flag is set or not*/
```

```
FlagStatus flag_state = RESET;
```

```
flag_state = i2c_interrupt_flag_get (I2C0, I2C_INT_FLAG_BTC);
```

i2c_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of i2c_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-443. Function i2c_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	i2c_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void i2c_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t i2c_periph, uint32_t intflag);

Function descriptions	clear I2C interrupt flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2c_periph	I2C peripheral
<i>I2Cx</i>	(x=0,1)
Input parameter{in}	
intflag	interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_ADDS END</i>	address is sent in master mode or received and matches in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_BERR</i>	a bus error occurs indication a unexpected start or stop condition on I2C bus interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_LOSTA RB</i>	arbitration lost in master mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR</i>	acknowledge error interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_OUER R</i>	over-run or under-run situation occurs in slave mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_PECE RR</i>	PEC error when receiving data interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBT O</i>	timeout signal in SMBus mode interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_SMBA LT</i>	SMBus Alert status interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TFF</i>	txframe fall interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_TFR</i>	txframe rise interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RFF</i>	rxframe fall interrupt flag
<i>I2C_INT_FLAG_RFR</i>	rxframe rise interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the acknowledge error interrupt flag */  
  
i2c_interrupt_flag_clear(I2C0, I2C_INT_FLAG_AERR);
```

3.17. MISC

MISC is a software package that provide the interfaces for NVIC and SysTick. The NVIC and SysTick registers are listed in chapter [3.17.1](#), the MISC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.17.2](#).

3.17.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

Table 3-444. NVIC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
ISER ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Set Enable Register
ICER ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Clear Enable Register
ISPR ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Set Pending Register
ICPR ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Clear Pending Register
IABR ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Active bit Register
IP ⁽¹⁾	Interrupt Priority Register
STIR ⁽¹⁾	Software Trigger Interrupt Register
CPUID ⁽²⁾	CPUID Base Register
ICSR ⁽²⁾	Interrupt Control and State Register
VTOR ⁽²⁾	Vector Table Offset Register
AIRCR ⁽²⁾	Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register
SCR ⁽²⁾	System Control Register
CCR ⁽²⁾	Configuration Control Register
SHP ⁽²⁾	System Handlers Priority Registers
SHCSR ⁽²⁾	System Handler Control and State Register
CFSR ⁽²⁾	Configurable Fault Status Register
HFSR ⁽²⁾	Hard Fault Status Register
DFSR ⁽²⁾	Debug Fault Status Register

Registers	Descriptions
MMFAR ⁽²⁾	MemManage Fault Address Register
BFAR ⁽²⁾	BusFault Address Register
AFSR ⁽²⁾	Auxiliary Fault Status Register
PFR ⁽²⁾	Processor Feature Register
DFR ⁽²⁾	Debug Feature Register
ADR ⁽²⁾	Auxiliary Feature Register
MMFR ⁽²⁾	Memory Model Feature Register
ISAR ⁽²⁾	Instruction Set Attributes Register
CPACR ⁽²⁾	Coprocessor Access Control Register

1. refer to the structure NVIC_Type, is defined in the core_cm4.h file
2. refer to the structure SCB_Type, is defined in the core_cm4.h file

Table 3-445. SysTick Registers

Registers	Descriptions
CTRL ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Control and Status Register
LOAD ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Reload Value Register
VAL ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Current Value Register
CALIB ⁽¹⁾	SysTick Calibration Register

1. refer to the structure SysTick_Type, is defined in the core_cm4.h file

3.17.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

Enum IRQn_Type

Table 3-446. IRQn_Type

Member name	Function description
WWDGT_IRQn	window watchDog timer interrupt
LVD_IRQn	LVD through EXTI line detect interrupt
TAMPER_IRQn	tamper through EXTI line detect
RTC_IRQn	RTC through EXTI line interrupt
FMC_IRQn	FMC interrupt
RCU_CTC_IRQn	RCU and CTC interrupt
EXTI0_IRQn	EXTI line 0 interrupts
EXTI1_IRQn	EXTI line 1 interrupts

Member name	Function description
EXTI2_IRQn	EXTI line 2 interrupts
EXTI3_IRQn	EXTI line 3 interrupts
EXTI4_IRQn	EXTI line 4 interrupts
DMA0_Channel0_IRQn	DMA0 channel0 interrupt
DMA0_Channel1_IRQn	DMA0 channel1 interrupt
DMA0_Channel2_IRQn	DMA0 channel2 interrupt
DMA0_Channel3_IRQn	DMA0 channel3 interrupt
DMA0_Channel4_IRQn	DMA0 channel4 interrupt
DMA0_Channel5_IRQn	DMA0 channel5 interrupt
DMA0_Channel6_IRQn	DMA0 channel6 interrupt
ADC0_1_IRQn	ADC0 and ADC1 interrupt
USBD_HP_CAN0_TX_IRQn / CAN0_TX_IRQn	USBD high priority and CAN0 transmit interrupts / CAN0 transmit interrupts
USBD_LP_CAN0_RX0_IRQn / CAN0_RX0_IRQn	USBD low priority and CAN0 receive0 interrupts / CAN0 receive0 interrupts
CAN0_RX1_IRQn	CAN0 receive1 interrupts
CAN0_EWMC_IRQn	CAN0 EWMC interrupts
EXTI5_9_IRQn	EXTI[9:5] interrupts
TIMER0_BRK_TIMER8_IRQn	TIMER0 break and TIMER8 interrupts
TIMER0_UP_TIMER9_IRQn	TIMER0 update and TIMER9 interrupts
TIMER0_TRG_CMT_TIMER10_IRQn	TIMER0 trigger and commutation and TIMER10 interrupts
TIMER0_Channel_IRQn	TIMER0 channel capture compare interrupt
TIMER1_IRQn	TIMER1 interrupt
TIMER2_IRQn	TIMER2 interrupt
TIMER3_IRQn	TIMER3 interrupt
I2C0_EV_IRQn	I2C0 event interrupt
I2C0_ER_IRQn	I2C0 error interrupt
I2C1_EV_IRQn	I2C1 event interrupt
I2C1_ER_IRQn	I2C1 error interrupt
SPI0_IRQn	SPI0 interrupt
SPI1_IRQn	SPI1 interrupt
USART0_IRQn	USART0 interrupt
USART1_IRQn	USART1 interrupt
USART2_IRQn	USART2 interrupt
EXTI10_15_IRQn	EXTI[15:10] interrupts
RTC_ALARM_IRQn	RTC alarm interrupt
USBD_WKUP_IRQn / USBFS_WKUP_IRQn	USBD wakeup interrupt / USBFS wakeup interrupt
TIMER7_BRK_TIMER11_IRQn	TIMER7 break and TIMER11 interrupts
TIMER7_UP_TIMER12_IRQn	TIMER7 update and TIMER12 interrupts
TIMER7_TRG_CMT_TIMER13_IRQn	TIMER7 trigger and commutation and TIMER13 interrupts

Member name	Function description
TIMER7_Channel_IRQn	TIMER7 channel capture compare interrupt
EXMC_IRQn	EXMC global interrupt
SDIO_IRQn	SDIO global interrupt
TIMER4_IRQn	TIMER4 global interrupt
SPI2_IRQn	SPI2 global interrupt
UART3_IRQn	UART3 global interrupt
UART4_IRQn	UART4 global interrupt
TIMER5_IRQn	TIMER5 global interrupt
TIMER6_IRQn	TIMER6 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel0_IRQn	DMA1 channel0 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel1_IRQn	DMA1 channel1 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel2_IRQn	DMA1 channel2 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel3_Channel4_IRQn / DMA1_Channel3_IRQn	DMA1 channel3 and channel4 global interrupt / DMA1 channel3 global interrupt
DMA1_Channel4_IRQn	DMA1 channel4 global interrupt
ENET_IRQn	ENET global interrupt
ENET_WKUP_IRQn	ENET wakeup interrupt
CAN1_TX_IRQn	CAN1 transmit interrupt
CAN1_RX0_IRQn	CAN1 receive0 interrupt
CAN1_RX1_IRQn	CAN1 receive1 interrupt
CAN1_EWMC_IRQn	CAN1 EWMC interrupt
USBFS_IRQn	USBFS global interrupt

MISC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-447. MISC firmware function

Function name	Function description
nvic_priority_group_set	set the priority group
nvic_irq_enable	enable NVIC interrupt request
nvic_irq_disable	disable NVIC interrupt request
nvic_vector_table_set	set the NVIC vector table address
system_lowpower_set	set the state of the low power mode
system_lowpower_reset	reset the state of the low power mode
systick_clksource_set	set the systick clock source

nvic_priority_group_set

The description of nvic_priority_group_set is shown as below:

Table 3-448. Function `nvic_priority_group_set`

Function name	<code>nvic_priority_group_set</code>
Function prototype	<code>void nvic_priority_group_set(uint32_t nvic_prigroup);</code>
Function descriptions	configure bits length of the priority group
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>nvic_prigroup</code>	priority group
<code>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR E0_SUB4</code>	0 bits for pre-emption priority 4 bits for subpriority
<code>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR E1_SUB3</code>	1 bits for pre-emption priority 3 bits for subpriority
<code>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR E2_SUB2</code>	2 bits for pre-emption priority 2 bits for subpriority
<code>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR E3_SUB1</code>	3 bits for pre-emption priority 1 bits for subpriority
<code>NVIC_PRIGROUP_PR E4_SUB0</code>	4 bits for pre-emption priority 0 bits for subpriority
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* priority group configuration , 0 bits for pre-emption priority 4 bits for subpriority */
nvic_priority_group_set(NVIC_PRIGROUP_PRE0_SUB4);
```

`nvic_irq_enable`

The description of `nvic_irq_enable` is shown as below:

Table 3-449. Function `nvic_irq_enable`

Function name	<code>nvic_irq_enable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void nvic_irq_enable(uint8_t nvic_irq, uint8_t nvic_irq_pre_priority, uint8_t</code>

	nvic_irq_sub_priority);
Function descriptions	enable NVIC request, configure the priority of interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	nvic_priority_group_set
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_irq	NVIC interrupt, refer to enum Enum IRQn_Type
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_irq_pre_priority	the pre-emption priority needed to set (0~4)
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_irq_sub_priority	the subpriority needed to set (0~4)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable window watchDog timer interrupt , pre-emption priority is 1, subpriority is 1 */
nvic_irq_enable(WWDGT_IRQn, 1, 1);
```

nvic_irq_disable

The description of nvic_irq_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-450. Function nvic_irq_disable

Function name	nvic_irq_disable
Function prototype	void nvic_irq_disable(uint8_t nvic_irq);
Function descriptions	disable NVIC request
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_irq	NVIC interrupt, refer to enum Enum IRQn_Type
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable window watchDog timer interrupt */
nvic_irq_disable(WWDGT_IRQn);
```

nvic_vector_table_set

The description of nvic_vector_table_set is shown as below:

Table 3-451. Function nvic_vector_table_set

Function name	nvic_vector_table_set
Function prototype	void nvic_vector_table_set(uint32_t nvic_vect_tab, uint32_t offset);
Function descriptions	set the NVIC vector table address
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
nvic_vect_tab	the RAM or FLASH base address
NVIC_VECTTAB_RAM	RAM base address
NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH	Flash base address
Input parameter{in}	
offset	Vector Table offset (vector table start address= base address+offset)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set vector table address = NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH +0x200 */
nvic_vector_table_set (NVIC_VECTTAB_FLASH,0x200);
```

system_lowpower_set

The description of system_lowpower_set is shown as below:

Table 3-452. Function `system_lowpower_set`

Function name	<code>system_lowpower_set</code>
Function prototype	<code>void system_lowpower_set(uint8_t lowpower_mode);</code>
Function descriptions	the state of the low power mode management
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>lowpower_mode</code>	the low power mode state
<code>SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR</code>	if chose this para, the system always enter low power mode by exiting from ISR
<code>SCB_LPM_DEEPSLEEP</code>	if chose this para, the system will enter the DEEPSLEEP mode
<code>SCB_LPM_WAKE_BY_ALL_INT</code>	if chose this para, the lowpower mode can be woke up by all the enable and disable interrupts
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* the system always enter low power mode by exiting from ISR */
system_lowpower_set (SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR);
```

`system_lowpower_reset`

The description of `system_lowpower_reset` is shown as below:

Table 3-453. Function `system_lowpower_reset`

Function name	<code>system_lowpower_reset</code>
Function prototype	<code>void system_lowpower_reset(uint8_t lowpower_mode);</code>
Function descriptions	the state of the low power mode management
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

lowpower_mode	the low power mode state
<i>SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR</i>	if chose this para, the system will exit low power mode by exiting from ISR
<i>SCB_LPM_DEEPSLEEP</i>	if chose this para, the system will enter the SLEEP mode
<i>SCB_LPM_WAKE_BY_ALL_INT</i>	if chose this para, the lowpower mode only can be woke up by the enable interrupts
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* the system will exit low power mode by exiting from ISR */
system_lowpower_reset(SCB_LPM_SLEEP_EXIT_ISR);
```

systick_clksource_set

The description of systick_clksource_set is shown as below:

Table 3-454. Function systick_clksource_set

Function name	systick_clksource_set
Function prototype	void systick_clksource_set(uint32_t systick_clksource);
Function descriptions	set the systick clock source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
systick_clksource	the systick clock source needed to choose
<i>SYSTICK_CLKSOURC_E_HCLK</i>	systick clock source is from HCLK
<i>SYSTICK_CLKSOURC_E_HCLK_DIV8</i>	systick clock source is from HCLK/8
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* systick clock source is HCLK/8 */
```

```
systick_clksource_set (SYSTICK_CLKSOURCE_HCLK_DIV8);
```

3.18. PMU

According to the Power management unit (PMU), provides three types of power saving modes, including Sleep, Deep-sleep and Standby mode. The PMU registers are listed in chapter [3.18.1](#), the PMU firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.18.2](#).

3.18.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

PMU registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-455. PMU Registers

Registers	Descriptions
PMU_CTL	Control register
PMU_CS	Control and status register

3.18.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

PMU firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-456. PMU firmware function

Function name	Function description
pmu_deinit	deinitialize the PMU
pmu_lvd_select	select low voltage detector threshold
pmu_ldo_output_select	select LDO output voltage
pmu_lvd_disable	disable PMU lvd
pmu_highdriver_switch_select	switch high-driver mode
pmu_highdriver_mode_enable	enable high-driver mode
pmu_highdriver_mode_disable	disable high-driver mode
pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable	enable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode

Function name	Function description
pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable	disable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode
pmu_lowpower_driver_config	in deep-sleep mode, driver mode when use low power LDO
pmu_normalpower_driver_config	in deep-sleep mode, driver mode when use normal power LDO
pmu_to_sleepmode	PMU work at sleep mode
pmu_to_deepsleepmode	PMU work at deepsleep mode
pmu_to_standbymode	pmu work at standby mode
pmu_wakeup_pin_enable	enable wakeup pin
pmu_wakeup_pin_disable	disable wakeup pin
pmu_backup_write_enable	enable backup domain write
pmu_backup_write_disable	disable backup domain write
pmu_flag_clear	clear flag bit
pmu_flag_get	get flag state

pmu_deinit

The description of pmu_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-457. Function pmu_deinit

Function name	pmu_deinit
Function prototype	void pmu_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the PMU
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset PMU */
```

```
pmu_deinit ();
```

pmu_lvd_select

The description of pmu_lvd_select is shown as below:

Table 3-458. Function pmu_lvd_select

Function name	pmu_lvd_select
Function prototype	void pmu_lvd_select(uint32_t lvd_t_n);
Function descriptions	select low voltage detector threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
lvd_t_n	voltage threshold value
PMU_LVDT_0	voltage threshold is 2.2V
PMU_LVDT_1	voltage threshold is 2.3V
PMU_LVDT_2	voltage threshold is 2.4V
PMU_LVDT_3	voltage threshold is 2.5V
PMU_LVDT_4	voltage threshold is 2.6V
PMU_LVDT_5	voltage threshold is 2.7V
PMU_LVDT_6	voltage threshold is 2.8V
PMU_LVDT_7	voltage threshold is 2.9V
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select low voltage detector threshold as 2.9V */
```

```
pmu_lvd_select (PMU_LVDT_7);
```

pmu_ldo_output_select

The description of pmu_ldo_output_select is shown as below:

Table 3-459. Function pmu_ldo_output_select

Function name	pmu_ldo_output_select
Function prototype	void pmu_ldo_output_select(uint32_t ldo_output);
Function descriptions	internal voltage regulator (LDO) output voltage select
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ldo_output	output voltage mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_LOW</i>	output low voltage mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_MID</i>	LDO output voltage mid mode
<i>PMU_LDOVS_NORMAL</i>	LDO output voltage high mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select output low voltage mode */
```

```
pmu_ldo_output_select (PMU_LDOVS_LOW);
```

pmu_lvd_disable

The description of pmu_lvd_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-460. Function pmu_lvd_disable

Function name	pmu_lvd_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_lvd_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable PMU lvd
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable PMU lvd */
```

```
pmu_lvd_disable ();
```

pmu_highdriver_switch_select

The description of pmu_highdriver_switch_select is shown as below:

Table 3-461. Function pmu_highdriver_switch_select

Function name	pmu_highdriver_switch_select
Function prototype	void pmu_highdriver_switch_select(uint32_t highdr_switch);
Function descriptions	switch high-driver mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	pmu_flag_get()
Input parameter{in}	
highdr_switch	enable or disable high-driver mode switch
PMU_HIGHDR_SWITC H_NONE	disable high-driver mode switch
PMU_HIGHDR_SWITC H_EN	enable high-driver mode switch
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable high-driver mode switch */
```

```
pmu_highdriver_switch_select (PMU_HIGHDR_SWITCH_EN);
```

pmu_highdriver_mode_enable

The description of pmu_highdriver_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-462. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_enable

Function name	pmu_highdriver_mode_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_highdriver_mode_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable high-driver mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable high-driver mode */
```

```
pmu_highdriver_mode_enable ();
```

pmu_highdriver_mode_disable

The description of pmu_highdriver_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-463. Function pmu_highdriver_mode_disable

Function name	pmu_highdriver_mode_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_highdriver_mode_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable high-driver mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable high-driver mode */
```

```
pmu_highdriver_mode_disable ();
```

pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable

The description of pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-464. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable

Function name	pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode */
```

```
pmu_lowdriver_mode_enable ();
```

pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable

The description of pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-465. Function pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable

Function name	pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable (void);
Function descriptions	e disable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable low-driver mode in deep-sleep mode */
```

```
pmu_lowdriver_mode_disable ();
```

pmu_lowpower_driver_config

The description of pmu_lowpower_driver_config is shown as below:

Table 3-466. Function pmu_lowpower_driver_config

Function name	pmu_lowpower_driver_config
Function prototype	void pmu_lowpower_driver_config(uint32_t mode);
Function descriptions	driver mode when use low power LDO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mode	driver mode
PMU_NORMALDR_LO WPWR	normal driver when use low power LDO
PMU_LOWDR_LOWP WR	low-driver mode enabled when LDEN is 11 and use low power LDO

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* normal driver when use low power LDO */
```

```
pmu_lowpower_driver_config (PMU_NORMALDR_LOWPWR);
```

pmu_normalpower_driver_config

The description of pmu_normalpower_driver_config is shown as below:

Table 3-467. Function pmu_normalpower_driver_config

Function name	pmu_normalpower_driver_config
Function prototype	void pmu_normalpower_driver_config (uint32_t mode);
Function descriptions	driver mode when use normal power LDO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
mode	driver mode
PMU_NORMALDR_LOWPWR	normal driver when use normal power LDO
PMU_LOWDR_LOWPWR	low-driver mode enabled when LDEN is 11 and use normal power LDO
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* normal driver when use normal power LDO */
```

```
pmu_normalpower_driver_config (PMU_NORMALDR_LOWPWR);
```

pmu_to_sleepmode

The description of pmu_to_sleepmode is shown as below:

Table 3-468. Function pmu_to_sleepmode

Function name	pmu_to_sleepmode
Function prototype	void pmu_to_sleepmode(uint8_t sleepmodecmd);
Function descriptions	PMU work at sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
sleepmodecmd	command to enter sleep mode
WFI_CMD	use WFI command
WFE_CMD	use WFE command
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at sleep mode */
pmu_to_sleepmode (WFI_CMD);
```

pmu_to_deepsleepmode

The description of pmu_to_deepsleepmode is shown as below:

Table 3-469. Function pmu_to_deepsleepmode

Function name	pmu_to_deepsleepmode
Function prototype	void pmu_to_deepsleepmode(uint32_t ldo,uint8_t deepsleepmodecmd);
Function descriptions	PMU work at deepsleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

ldo	ldo work mode
<i>PMU_LDO_NORMAL</i>	LDO normal work when pmu enter deepsleep mode
<i>PMU_LDO_LOWPOWER</i>	LDO work at low power mode when pmu enter deepsleep mode
Input parameter{in}	
deepsleepmodecmd	command to enter deepsleep mode
<i>WFI_CMD</i>	use WFI command
<i>WFE_CMD</i>	use WFE command
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* PMU work at deepsleep mode */
```

```
pmu_to_deepsleepmode (PMU_LDO_NORMAL, WFI_CMD);
```

pmu_to_standbymode

The description of pmu_to_standbymode is shown as below:

Table 3-470. Function pmu_to_standbymode

Function name	pmu_to_standbymode
Function prototype	void pmu_to_standbymode(void);
Function descriptions	pmu work at standby mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* PMU work at standby mode */
```

```
pmu_to_standby ();
```

pmu_backup_write_enable

The description of pmu_backup_write_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-471. Function pmu_backup_write_enable

Function name	pmu_backup_write_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_backup_write_enable (void);
Function descriptions	enable backup domain write
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable backup domain write */
```

```
pmu_backup_write_enable ();
```

pmu_backup_write_disable

The description of pmu_backup_write_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-472. Function pmu_backup_write_disable

Function name	pmu_backup_write_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_backup_write_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable backup domain write
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable backup domain write */
```

```
pmu_backup_write_disable ();
```

pmu_wakeup_pin_enable

The description of pmu_wakeup_pin_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-473. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_enable

Function name	pmu_wakeup_pin_enable
Function prototype	void pmu_wakeup_pin_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable wakeup pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable wakeup pin */
```

```
pmu_wakeup_pin_enable ();
```

pmu_wakeup_pin_disable

The description of pmu_wakeup_pin_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-474. Function pmu_wakeup_pin_disable

Function name	pmu_wakeup_pin_disable
Function prototype	void pmu_wakeup_pin_disable (void);
Function descriptions	disable wakeup pin
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable wakeup pin */
pmu_wakeup_pin_disable ();
```

pmu_flag_get

The description of pmu_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-475. Function pmu_flag_get

Function name	pmu_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus pmu_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get flag state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flag
PMU_FLAG_WAKEUP	wakeup flag

<i>PMU_FLAG_STANDBY</i>	standby flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_LVD</i>	low voltage detector status flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_LDOVSRF</i>	LDO voltage select ready flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_HDRF</i>	high-driver ready flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_HDSRF</i>	high-driver switch ready flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_LDRF</i>	ow-driver mode ready flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get flag state */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = pmu_flag_get (PMU_FLAG_WAKEUP);
```

pmu_flag_clear

The description of pmu_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-476. Function pmu_flag_clear

Function name	pmu_flag_clear
Function prototype	void pmu_flag_clear(uint32_t flag_reset);
Function descriptions	clear flag bit
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag_reset	flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_RESET_WAKEUP</i>	reset wakeup flag
<i>PMU_FLAG_RESET_STANDBY</i>	reset standby flag
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear flag bit */
```

```
pmu_flag_clear (PMU_FLAG_RESET_WAKEUP);
```

3.19. RCU

RCU is the reset and clock unit. Reset Control includes the control of three kinds of reset: power reset, system reset and backup domain reset. The Clock Control unit provides a range of frequencies and clock functions. The RCU registers are listed in chapter [3.19.1](#), the RCU firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.19.2](#).

3.19.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

Table 3-477. RCU Registers

Registers	Descriptions
RCU_CTL	Control register
RCU_CFG0	Clock configuration register 0
RCU_INT	Clock interrupt register
RCU_APB2RST	APB2 reset register
RCU_APB1RST	APB1 reset register
RCU_AHBEN	AHB enable register
RCU_APB2EN	APB2 enable register
RCU_APB1EN	APB1 enable register
RCU_BDCTL	Backup domain control register
RCU_RSTSCK	Reset source/clock register
RCU_AHBRST	AHB reset register (CL series)
RCU_CFG1	Clock configuration register 1
RCU_DSV	Deep-sleep mode voltage register
RCU_ADDCTL	Additional clock control register

Registers	Descriptions
RCU_ADDINT	Additional clock interrupt register
RCU_ADDAPB1RST	APB1 additional reset register
RCU_ADDAPB1EN	APB1 additional enable register

3.19.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

Table 3-478. RCU firmware function

Function name	Function description
rcu_deinit	deinitialize the RCU
rcu_periph_clock_enable	enable the peripherals clock
rcu_periph_clock_disable	disable the peripherals clock
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable	enable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable	disable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
rcu_periph_reset_enable	enable the peripherals reset
rcu_periph_reset_disable	disable the peripheral reset
rcu_bkp_reset_enable	enable the BKP domain reset
rcu_bkp_reset_disable	disable the BKP domain reset
rcu_system_clock_source_config	configure the system clock source
rcu_system_clock_source_get	get the system clock source
rcu_ahb_clock_config	configure the AHB clock prescaler selection
rcu_apb1_clock_config	configure the APB1 clock prescaler selection
rcu_apb2_clock_config	configure the APB2 clock prescaler selection
rcu_ckout0_config	configure the CK_OUT0 clock source
rcu_pll_config	configure the main PLL clock
rcu_pllpresel_config	configure the PLL clock source preselection
rcu_predv0_config	configure the PREDV0 division factor
rcu_predv1_config	configure the PREDV1 division factor (only for CL series)
rcu_pll1_config	configure the PLL1 clock (only for CL series)
rcu_pll2_config	configure the PLL2 clock (only for CL series)

Function name	Function description
rcu_adc_clock_config	configure the ADC prescaler factor
rcu_usb_clock_config	configure the USB prescaler factor
rcu_rtc_clock_config	configure the RTC clock source selection
rcu_i2s1_clock_config	configure the I2S1 clock source selection(only for CL series)
rcu_i2s2_clock_config	configure the I2S2 clock source selection(only for CL series)
rcu_ck48m_clock_config	configure the CK48M clock selection
rcu_flag_get	get the clock stabilization and peripheral reset flags
rcu_all_reset_flag_clear	clear all the reset flag
rcu_interrupt_flag_get	get the clock stabilization interrupt and ckm flags
rcu_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the interrupt flags
rcu_interrupt_enable	enable the stabilization interrupt
rcu_interrupt_disable	disable the stabilization interrupt
rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config	configure the LXTAL drive capability
rcu_oscstap_wait	wait for oscillator stabilization flags is SET or oscillator startup is timeout
rcu_oscstap_on	turn on the oscillator
rcu_oscstap_off	turn off the oscillator
rcu_oscstap_bypass_mode_enable	enable the oscillator bypass mode
rcu_oscstap_bypass_mode_disable	disable the oscillator bypass mode
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable	enable the HXTAL clock monitor
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable	disable the HXTAL clock monitor
rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set	set the IRC8M adjust value
rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set	set the deep-sleep mode voltage value
rcu_clock_freq_get	get the system clock, bus clock frequency

Enum rcu_periph_enum

Table 3-479. Enum rcu_periph_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_DMA0	DMA0 clock

enum name	Function description
RCU_DMA1	DMA1 clock
RCU_CRC	CRC clock
RCU_EXMC	EXMC clock
RCU_SDIO	SDIO clock(only for HD、XD series)
RCU_USBFS	USBFS clock(only for CL series)
RCU_ENET	ENET clock(only for CL series)
RCU_ENETTX	ENETTX clock(only for CL series)
RCU_ENETRX	ENETRX clock(only for CL series)
RCU_TIMER1	TIMER1 clock
RCU_TIMER2	TIMER2 clock
RCU_TIMER3	TIMER3 clock
RCU_TIMER4	TIMER4 clock
RCU_TIMER5	TIMER5 clock
RCU_TIMER6	TIMER6 clock
RCU_TIMER11	TIMER11 clock(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER12	TIMER12 clock(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER13	TIMER13 clock(except for HD series)
RCU_WWDGT	WWDGT clock
RCU_SPI1	SPI1 clock
RCU_SPI2	SPI2 clock
RCU_USART1	USART1 clock
RCU_USART2	USART2 clock
RCU_UART3	UART3 clock
RCU_UART4	UART4 clock
RCU_I2C0	I2C0 clock
RCU_I2C1	I2C1 clock
RCU_USBD	USBD clock(only for HD、XD series)
RCU_CAN0	CAN0 clock
RCU_CAN1	CAN1 clock(only for CL series)
RCU_BKPI	BKPI clock
RCU_PMU	PMU clock
RCU_DAC	DAC clock
RCU_RTC	RTC clock
RCU_CTC	CTC clock
RCU_AF	alternate function clock
RCU_GPIOA	GPIOA clock
RCU_GPIOB	GPIOB clock
RCU_GPIOC	GPIOC clock
RCU_GPIOD	GPIOD clock
RCU_GPIOE	GPIOE clock
RCU_GPIOF	GPIOF clock

enum name	Function description
RCU_GPIOG	GPIOG clock
RCU_ADC0	ADC0 clock
RCU_ADC1	ADC1 clock
RCU_TIMER0	TIMER0 clock
RCU_SPI0	SPI0 clock
RCU_TIMER7	TIMER7 clock
RCU_USART0	USART0 clock
RCU_ADC2	ADC2 clock(except for CL series)
RCU_TIMER8	TIMER8 clock(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER9	TIMER9 clock(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER10	TIMER10 clock(except for HD series)

Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum

Table 3-480. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_SRAM_SLP	SRAM clock when sleep mode
RCU_FMC_SLP	FMC clock when sleep mode

Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum

Table 3-481. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_USBFSRST	USBFS clock reset(only for CL series)
RCU_ENETRST	ENET clock reset(only for CL series)
RCU_TIMER1RST	TIMER1 clock reset
RCU_TIMER2RST	TIMER2 clock reset
RCU_TIMER3RST	TIMER3 clock reset
RCU_TIMER4RST	TIMER4 clock reset
RCU_TIMER5RST	TIMER5 clock reset
RCU_TIMER6RST	TIMER6 clock reset
RCU_TIMER11RST	TIMER11 clock reset(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER12RST	TIMER12 clock reset(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER13RST	TIMER13 clock reset(except for HD series)
RCU_WWDGTRST	WWDGT clock reset
RCU_SPI1RST	SPI1 clock reset
RCU_SPI2RST	SPI2 clock reset
RCU_USART1RST	USART1 clock reset
RCU_USART2RST	USART2 clock reset
RCU_UART3RST	UART3 clock reset
RCU_USART4RST	UART4 clock reset
RCU_I2C0RST	I2C0 clock reset

enum name	Function description
RCU_I2C1RST	I2C1 clock reset
RCU_USBD RST	USB D clock reset(only for HD、XD series)
RCU_CAN0RST	CAN0 clock reset
RCU_CAN1RST	CAN1 clock reset(only for CL series)
RCU_BKPIRST	BKPI clock reset
RCU_PMURST	PMU clock reset
RCU_DACRST	DAC clock reset
RCU_CTCRST	CTC clock reset
RCU_AFRST	alternate function clock reset
RCU_GPIOARST	GPIOA clock reset
RCU_GPIOBRST	GPIOB clock reset
RCU_GPIOCRST	GPIOC clock reset
RCU_GPIODRST	GPIO D clock reset
RCU_GPIOERST	GPIOE clock reset
RCU_GPIOFRST	GPIOF clock reset
RCU_GPIOGRST	GPIOG clock reset
RCU_ADC0RST	ADC0 clock reset
RCU_ADC1RST	ADC1 clock reset
RCU_TIMER0RST	TIMER0 clock reset
RCU_SPI0RST	SPI0 clock reset
RCU_TIMER7RST	TIMER7 clock reset
RCU_USART0RST	USART0 clock reset
RCU_ADC2RST	ADC2 clock reset(except for CL series)
RCU_TIMER8RST	TIMER8 clock reset(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER9RST	TIMER9 clock reset(except for HD series)
RCU_TIMER10RST	TIMER10 clock reset(except for HD series)

Enum rcu_flag_enum

Table 3-482. Enum rcu_flag_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_FLAG_IRC8MSTB	IRC8M stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_HXTALSTB	HXTAL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_PLLSTB	PLL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_PLL1STB	PLL1 stabilization flags(only for CL series)
RCU_FLAG_PLL2STB	PLL2 stabilization flags(only for CL series)
RCU_FLAG_LXTALSTB	LXTAL stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_IRC40KSTB	IRC40K stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_IRC48MSTB	IRC48M stabilization flags
RCU_FLAG_EPRST	external PIN reset flags
RCU_FLAG_PORRST	power reset flags
RCU_FLAG_SWRST	software reset flags

enum name	Function description
RCU_FLAG_FWDGTRST	FWDGT reset flags
RCU_FLAG_WWDGTRST	WWDGT reset flags
RCU_FLAG_LPRST	low-power reset flags

Enum rcu_int_flag_enum

Table 3-483. Enum rcu_int_flag_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC40KST B	IRC40K stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_LXTALSTB	LXTAL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC8MSTB	IRC8M stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALST B	HXTAL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLLSTB	PLL stabilization interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL1STB	PLL1 stabilization interrupt flag (only for CL、EPRT、E508 series)
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL2STB	PLL2 stabilization interrupt flag (only for CL、EPRT、E508 series)
RCU_INT_FLAG_CKM	HXTAL clock stuck interrupt flag
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC48MST B	IRC48M stabilization interrupt flag

Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum

Table 3-484. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC40KSTB_CLR	IRC40K stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_LXTALSTB_CLR	LXTAL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC8MSTB_CLR	IRC8M stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB_CLR	HXTAL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLLSTB_CLR	PLL stabilization interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL1STB_CLR	PLL1 stabilization interrupt flags clear (only for CL series)
RCU_INT_FLAG_PLL2STB_CLR	PLL2 stabilization interrupt flags clear (only for CL series)
RCU_INT_FLAG_CKM_CLR	CKM interrupt flags clear
RCU_INT_FLAG_IRC48MSTB_CLR	internal 48 MHz RC oscillator stabilization interrupt clear

Enum rcu_int_enum

Table 3-485. Enum rcu_int_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_IRC40KSTB	IRC40K stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_LXTALSTB	LXTAL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_IRC8MSTB	IRC8M stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_HXTALSTB	HXTAL stabilization interrupt

enum name	Function description
RCU_INT_PLLSTB	PLL stabilization interrupt
RCU_INT_PLL1STB	PLL1 stabilization interrupt(only for CL series)
RCU_INT_PLL2STB	PLL2 stabilization interrupt(only for CL series)
RCU_INT_IRC48MSTB	internal 48 MHz RC oscillator stabilization interrupt

Enum rcu_osci_type_enum

Table 3-486. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum

enum name	Function description
RCU_HXTAL	HXTAL
RCU_LXTAL	LXTAL
RCU_IRC8M	IRC8M
RCU_IRC48M	IRC48M
RCU_IRC40K	IRC40K
RCU_PLL_CK	PLL
RCU_PLL1_CK	PLL1(only for CL series)
RCU_PLL2_CK	PLL2(only for CL series)

Enum rcu_clock_freq_enum

Table 3-487. Enum rcu_clock_freq_enum

enum name	Function description
CK_SYS	system clock
CK_AHB	AHB clock
CK_APB1	APB1 clock
CK_APB2	APB2 clock

rcu_deinit

The description of rcu_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-488. Function rcu_deinit

Function name	rcu_deinit
Function prototype	void rcu_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the RCU
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset RCU */
```

```
rcu_deinit();
```

rcu_periph_clock_enable

The description of rcu_periph_clock_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-489. Function rcu_periph_clock_enable

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_enable(rcu_periph_enum periph);
Function descriptions	enable the peripherals clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-479. Enum rcu_periph_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the USART0 clock */
```

```
rcu_periph_clock_enable(RCU_USART0);
```

rcu_periph_clock_disable

The description of rcu_periph_clock_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-490. Function rcu_periph_clock_disable

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_disable
---------------	--------------------------

Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_disable(rcu_periph_enum periph);
Function descriptions	disable the peripherals clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-479. Enum rcu_periph_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the USART0 clock */
```

```
rcu_periph_clock_disable(RCU_USART0);
```

rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable

The description of rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-491. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable(rcu_periph_sleep_enum periph);
Function descriptions	enable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-480. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the FMC clock when in sleep mode */
```

```
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_enable(RCU_FMC_SLP);
```

rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable

The description of rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-492. Function rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable

Function name	rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable(rcu_periph_sleep_enum periph);
Function descriptions	disable the peripherals clock when in sleep mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph	RCU peripherals, refer to Table 3-480. Enum rcu_periph_sleep_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the FMC clock when in sleep mode */
```

```
rcu_periph_clock_sleep_disable(RCU_FMC_SLP);
```

rcu_periph_reset_enable

The description of rcu_periph_reset_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-493. Function rcu_periph_reset_enable

Function name	rcu_periph_reset_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_reset_enable(rcu_periph_reset_enum periph_reset);
Function descriptions	enable the peripherals reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

periph_reset	RCU peripherals reset, refer to Table 3-481. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 reset */
rcu_periph_reset_enable(RCU_SPI0RST);
```

rcu_periph_reset_disable

The description of rcu_periph_reset_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-494. Function rcu_periph_reset_disable

Function name	rcu_periph_reset_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_periph_reset_disable(rcu_periph_reset_enum periph_reset);
Function descriptions	disable the peripheral reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
periph_reset	RCU peripherals reset, refer to Table 3-481. Enum rcu_periph_reset_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 reset */
rcu_periph_reset_disable(RCU_SPI0RST);
```

rcu_bkp_reset_enable

The description of rcu_bkp_reset_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-495. Function rcu_bkp_reset_enable

Function name	rcu_bkp_reset_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_bkp_reset_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the BKP domain reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the BKP domain */
rcu_bkp_reset_enable();
```

rcu_bkp_reset_disable

The description of rcu_bkp_reset_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-496. Function rcu_bkp_reset_disable

Function name	rcu_bkp_reset_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_bkp_reset_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the BKP domain reset
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the BKP domain reset */
```

```
rcu_bkp_reset_disable();
```

rcu_system_clock_source_config

The description of rcu_system_clock_source_config is shown as below:

Table 3-497. Function rcu_system_clock_source_config

Function name	rcu_system_clock_source_config
Function prototype	void rcu_system_clock_source_config(uint32_t ck_sys);
Function descriptions	configure the system clock source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_sys	system clock source select
<i>RCU_CKSYSSRC_IRC8M</i>	select CK_IRC8M as the CK_SYS source
<i>RCU_CKSYSSRC_HXTAL</i>	select CK_HXTAL as the CK_SYS source
<i>RCU_CKSYSSRC_PLL</i>	select CK_PLL as the CK_SYS source
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CK_HXTAL as the CK_SYS source */
```

```
rcu_system_clock_source_config(RCU_CKSYSSRC_HXTAL);
```

rcu_system_clock_source_get

The description of rcu_system_clock_source_get is shown as below:

Table 3-498. Function rcu_system_clock_source_get

Function name	rcu_system_clock_source_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rcu_system_clock_source_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the system clock source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	RCU_SCSS_IRC8M / RCU_SCSS_HXTAL / RCU_SCSS_PLL

Example:

```
uint32_t temp_cksys_status;

/* get the CK_SYS source */

temp_cksys_status = rcu_system_clock_source_get();
```

rcu_ahb_clock_config

The description of rcu_ahb_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-499. Function rcu_ahb_clock_config

Function name	rcu_ahb_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_ahb_clock_config(uint32_t ck_ahb);
Function descriptions	configure the AHB clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_ahb	AHB clock prescaler selection

<i>RCU_AHB_CKSYS_DIVx</i>	select CK_SYS / x, (x = 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 64, 128, 256, 512)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_SYS/128 */
```

```
rcu_ahb_clock_config(RCU_AHB_CKSYS_DIV128);
```

rcu_apb1_clock_config

The description of rcu_apb1_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-500. Function rcu_apb1_clock_config

Function name	rcu_apb1_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_apb1_clock_config(uint32_t ck_apb1);
Function descriptions	configure the APB1 clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_apb1	APB1 clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV1</i>	select CK_AHB as CK_APB1
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV2</i>	select CK_AHB/2 as CK_APB1
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV4</i>	select CK_AHB/4 as CK_APB1
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV8</i>	select CK_AHB/8 as CK_APB1
<i>RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV16</i>	select CK_AHB/16 as CK_APB1
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_AHB/16 as CK_APB1 */
```

```
rcu_apb1_clock_config(RCU_APB1_CKAHB_DIV16);
```

rcu_apb2_clock_config

The description of rcu_apb2_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-501. Function rcu_apb2_clock_config

Function name	rcu_apb2_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_apb2_clock_config(uint32_t ck_apb2);
Function descriptions	configure the APB2 clock prescaler selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ck_apb2	APB2 clock prescaler selection
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> <i>IV1</i>	select CK_AHB as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> <i>IV2</i>	select CK_AHB/2 as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> <i>IV4</i>	select CK_AHB/4 as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> <i>IV8</i>	select CK_AHB/8 as CK_APB2
<i>RCU_APB2_CKAHB_D</i> <i>IV16</i>	select CK_AHB/16 as CK_APB2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure CK_AHB/8 as CK_APB2 */
```

```
rcu_apb2_clock_config(RCU_APB2_CKAHB_DIV8);
```

rcu_ckout0_config

The description of rcu_ckout0_config is shown as below:

Table 3-502. Function rcu_ckout0_config

Function name	rcu_ckout0_config
Function prototype	void rcu_ckout0_config(uint32_t ckout0_src);
Function descriptions	configure the CK_OUT0 clock source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ckout0_src	CK_OUT0 clock source selection
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_NONE</i>	no clock selected
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKSYS</i>	select system clock CK_SYS
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_IRC8M</i>	select high speed 8M internal oscillator clock
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_HXTAL</i>	select HXTAL
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL_DIV2</i>	select (CK_PLL / 2) clock
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL1</i>	select CK_PLL1 clock
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL2_DIV2</i>	select (CK_PLL2 / 2) clock
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_CKPLL2</i>	select CK_PLL2 clock
<i>RCU_CKOUT0SRC_EXT1</i>	select EXT1 clock

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the HXTAL as CK_OUT0 clock source */
```

```
rcu_ckout0_config(RCU_CKOUT0SRC_HXTAL);
```

rcu_pll_config

The description of rcu_pll_config is shown as below:

Table 3-503. Function rcu_pll_config

Function name	rcu_pll_config
Function prototype	void rcu_pll_config(uint32_t pll_src, uint32_t pll_mul);
Function descriptions	configure the main PLL clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pll_src	PLL clock source selection
RCU_PLLSRC_IRC8M_DIV2	IRC8M/2 clock is selected as source clock of PLL
RCU_PLLSRC_HXTAL_IRC48M	HXTAL or IRC48M is selected as source clock of PLL
Input parameter{in}	
pll_mul	PLL clock multiplication factor
RCU_PLL_MULx	PLL clock * x (XD series x = 2..63, CL series x = 2..14, 16..63, 6.5)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL */
```

```
rcu_pll_config(RCU_PLLSRC_HXTAL, RCU_PLL_MUL10);
```

rcu_pllpresel_config

The description of rcu_pllpresel_config is shown as below:

Table 3-504. Function rcu_pllpresel_config

Function name	rcu_pllpresel_config
Function prototype	void rcu_pllpresel_config(uint32_t pll_presel);
Function descriptions	configure the PLL clock source preselection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pll_presel	PLL clock source preselection
RCU_PLLPRESRC_HXTAL	HXTAL selected as PREDV0 source clock
RCU_PLLPRESRC_IRC48M	CK_PLL selected as PREDV0 input source clock
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL clock source preselection */
```

```
rcu_pllpresel_config(RCU_PLLPRESRC_HXTAL);
```

rcu_predv0_config(HD、XD series)

The description of rcu_predv0_config is shown as below:

Table 3-505. Function rcu_predv0_config

Function name	rcu_predv0_config
Function prototype	void rcu_predv0_config(uint32_t predv0_div);
Function descriptions	configure the PREDV0 division factor

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
predv0_div	PREDV0 division factor
<i>RCU_PREDV0_DIVx</i>	PREDV0 input source clock is divided x (x = 1, 2)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PREDV0 division factor */
```

```
rcu_predv0_config(RCU_PREDV0_DIV1);
```

rcu_predv0_config(CL series)

The description of rcu_predv0_config is shown as below:

Table 3-506. Function rcu_predv0_config

Function name	rcu_predv0_config
Function prototype	void rcu_predv0_config(uint32_t predv0_source, uint32_t predv0_div);
Function descriptions	configure the PREDV0 division factor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
predv0_source	PREDV0 input clock source selection
<i>RCU_PREDV0SRC_H</i> <i>XTAL_IRC48M</i>	select HXTAL or IRC48M as PREDV0 input source clock
<i>RCU_PREDV0SRC_C</i> <i>KPLL1</i>	select CK_PLL1 as PREDV0 input source clock
Input parameter{in}	
predv0_div	PREDV0 division factor
<i>RCU_PREDV0_DIVx</i>	PREDV0 input source clock is divided x (x=1..16)

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PREDV0 division factor */
```

```
rcu_predv0_config(RCU_PREDV0SRC_HXTAL_IRC48M, RCU_PREDV0_DIV4);
```

rcu_predv1_config

The description of rcu_predv1_config is shown as below:

Table 3-507. Function rcu_predv1_config

Function name	rcu_predv1_config
Function prototype	void rcu_predv1_config(uint32_t predv1_div);
Function descriptions	configure the PREDV1 division factor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
predv1_div	PREDV1 division factor
RCU_PREDV1_DIVx	PREDV1 input source clock is divided x (x = 1..16)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PREDV1 division factor */
```

```
rcu_predv1_config(RCU_PREDV1_DIV8);
```

rcu_pll1_config

The description of rcu_pll1_config is shown as below:

Table 3-508. Function rcu_pll1_config

Function name	rcu_pll1_config
Function prototype	void rcu_pll1_config(uint32_t pll_mul);
Function descriptions	configure the PLL1 clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pll_mul	PLL clock multiplication factor
RCU_PLL1_MULx	PLL1 clock * x, (x = 8..14,16,20)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL1 clock */
rcu_pll1_config(RCU_PLL1_MUL8);
```

rcu_pll2_config

The description of rcu_pll2_config is shown as below:

Table 3-509. Function rcu_pll2_config

Function name	rcu_pll2_config
Function prototype	void rcu_pll2_config(uint32_t pll_mul)
Function descriptions	configure the PLL2 clock
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
pll_mul	PLL clock multiplication factor
RCU_PLL2_MULx	PLL2 clock * x, (x = 8..14,16,20,18..32,40)
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the PLL2 clock */
```

```
rcu_pll2_config(RCU_PLL2_MUL8);
```

rcu_adc_clock_config

The description of rcu_adc_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-510. Function rcu_adc_clock_config

Function name	rcu_adc_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_adc_clock_config(uint32_t adc_psc);
Function descriptions	configure the ADC prescaler factor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
adc_psc	ADC prescaler factor
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV2</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_APB2 / 2$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV4</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_APB2 / 4$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV6</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_APB2 / 6$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV8</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_APB2 / 8$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV12</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_APB2 / 12$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV16</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_APB2 / 16$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV5</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_AHB / 5$

<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV6</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_AHB / 6$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV10</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_AHB / 10$
<i>RCU_CKADC_CKAHB_DIV20</i>	$CK_ADC = CK_AHB / 20$
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the ADC prescaler factor */
```

```
rcu_adc_clock_config(RCU_CKADC_CKAPB2_DIV8);
```

rcu_usb_clock_config

The description of rcu_usb_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-511. Function rcu_usb_clock_config

Function name	rcu_usb_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_usb_clock_config(uint32_t usb_psc);
Function descriptions	configure the USB prescaler factor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usb_psc	USB prescaler factor
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV1_5</i>	$CK_USB/USBFS = CK_PLL / 1.5$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV1</i>	$CK_USB/USBFS = CK_PLL / 1$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV2_5</i>	$CK_USB/USBFS = CK_PLL / 2.5$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_</i>	$CK_USB/USBFS = CK_PLL / 2$

<i>DIV2</i>	
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_</i> <i>DIV3</i>	$CK_USBD/USBFS = CK_PLL / 3$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_</i> <i>DIV3_5</i>	$CK_USBD/USBFS = CK_PLL / 3.5$
<i>RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_</i> <i>DIV4</i>	$CK_USBD/USBFS = CK_PLL / 4$
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the USB prescaler factor */
```

```
rcu_usb_clock_config(RCU_CKUSB_CKPLL_DIV2_5);
```

rcu_rtc_clock_config

The description of rcu_rtc_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-512. Function rcu_rtc_clock_config

Function name	rcu_rtc_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_rtc_clock_config(uint32_t rtc_clock_source);
Function descriptions	configure the RTC clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
rtc_clock_source	RTC clock source selection
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_NONE</i>	no clock selected
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_LXTAL</i>	select CK_LXTAL as RTC source clock
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_IRC40</i> <i>K</i>	select CK_IRC40K as RTC source clock
<i>RCU_RTCSRC_HXTAL</i> <i>_DIV_128</i>	select CK_HXTAL/128 as RTC source clock

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the RTC clock source selection */
```

```
rcu_rtc_clock_config(RCU_RTCSRC_IRC40K);
```

rcu_i2s1_clock_config

The description of rcu_i2s1_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-513. Function rcu_i2s1_clock_config

Function name	rcu_i2s1_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_i2s1_clock_config(uint32_t i2s_clock_source);
Function descriptions	configure the I2S1 clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2s_clock_source	I2S clock source selection
RCU_I2S1SRC_CKSYS	select system clock as I2S1 source clock
RCU_I2S1SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2	select CK_PLL2 * 2 as I2S1 source clock
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the I2S1 clock source selection */
```

```
rcu_i2s1_clock_config(RCU_I2S1SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2);
```

rcu_i2s2_clock_config

The description of rcu_i2s2_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-514. Function rcu_i2s2_clock_config

Function name	rcu_i2s2_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_i2s2_clock_config(uint32_t i2s_clock_source);
Function descriptions	configure the I2S2 clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
i2s_clock_source	I2S clock source selection
<i>RCU_I2S2SRC_CKSYS</i>	select system clock as I2S2 source clock
<i>RCU_I2S2SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2</i>	select CK_PLL2 * 2 as I2S2 source clock
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the I2S2 clock source selection */
```

```
rcu_i2s2_clock_config(RCU_I2S2SRC_CKPLL2_MUL2);
```

rcu_ck48m_clock_config

The description of rcu_ck48m_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-515. Function rcu_ck48m_clock_config

Function name	rcu_ck48m_clock_config
Function prototype	void rcu_ck48m_clock_config(uint32_t ck48m_clock_source);
Function descriptions	configure the CK48M clock source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
ck48m_clock_source	CK48M clock source selection
<i>RCU_CK48MSRC_CK_PLL</i>	CK_PLL selected as CK48M source clock
<i>RCU_CK48MSRC_IRC48M</i>	CK_IRC48M selected as CK48M source clock
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the CK48M clock source selection */
```

```
rcu_ck48m_clock_config (RCU_CK48MSRC_IRC48M);
```

rcu_flag_get

The description of rcu_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-516. Function rcu_flag_get

Function name	rcu_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus rcu_flag_get(rcu_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	get the clock stabilization and peripheral reset flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the clock stabilization and peripheral reset flags, refer to Table 3-482. Enum rcu_flag_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get the clock stabilization flag */

if(RESET != rcu_flag_get(RCU_FLAG_LXTALSTB)){

}

```

rcu_all_reset_flag_clear

The description of rcu_all_reset_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-517. Function rcu_all_reset_flag_clear

Function name	rcu_all_reset_flag_clear
Function prototype	void rcu_all_reset_flag_clear(void);
Function descriptions	clear all the reset flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* clear all the reset flag */

rcu_all_reset_flag_clear();

```

rcu_interrupt_flag_get

The description of rcu_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-518. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	rcu_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus rcu_interrupt_flag_get(rcu_int_flag_enum int_flag);
Function descriptions	get the clock stabilization interrupt and ckm flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	interrupt and ckm flags, refer to Table 3-483. Enum rcu_int_flag_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the clock stabilization interrupt flag */
if(SET == rcu_interrupt_flag_get(RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB)){
}
```

rcu_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of rcu_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-519. Function rcu_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	rcu_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void rcu_interrupt_flag_clear(rcu_int_flag_clear_enum int_flag)
Function descriptions	clear the interrupt flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	clock stabilization and stuck interrupt flags clear, refer to Table 3-484. Enum rcu_int_flag_clear_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the interrupt HXTAL stabilization interrupt flag */
rcu_interrupt_flag_clear(RCU_INT_FLAG_HXTALSTB_CLR);
```

rcu_interrupt_enable

The description of rcu_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-520. Function rcu_interrupt_enable

Function name	rcu_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_interrupt_enable(rcu_int_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable the stabilization interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	clock stabilization interrupt, refer to Table 3-485. Enum rcu_int_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the HXTAL stabilization interrupt */
rcu_interrupt_enable(RCU_INT_HXTALSTB);
```

rcu_interrupt_disable

The description of rcu_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-521. Function rcu_interrupt_disable

Function name	rcu_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_interrupt_disable(rcu_int_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable the stabilization interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	clock stabilization interrupt, refer to Table 3-485. Enum rcu_int_enum
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the HXTAL stabilization interrupt */
rcu_interrupt_disable(RCU_INT_HXTALSTB);
```

rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config

The description of rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config is shown as below:

Table 3-522. Function rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config

Function name	rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config
Function prototype	void rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config(uint32_t lxtal_dricap);
Function descriptions	configure the LXTAL drive capability
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
lxtal_dricap	drive capability of LXTAL
<i>RCU_LXTAL_LOWDRI</i>	lower driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_MED_LOWDRI</i>	medium low driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_MED_HIGHDRI</i>	medium high driving capability
<i>RCU_LXTAL_HIGHDRI</i>	higher driving capability
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the LXTAL drive capability */
rcu_lxtal_drive_capability_config (RCU_LXTAL_LOWDRI);
```

rcu_osci_stab_wait

The description of rcu_osci_stab_wait is shown as below:

Table 3-523. Function rcu_osci_stab_wait

Function name	rcu_osci_stab_wait
Function prototype	ErrStatus rcu_osci_stab_wait(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	wait for oscillator stabilization flags is SET or oscillator startup is timeout
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-486. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ErrStatus	SUCCESS or ERROR

Example:

```
/* wait for oscillator stabilization flag */
if(SUCCESS == rcu_osci_stab_wait(RCU_HXTAL)){
}
```

rcu_osci_on

The description of rcu_osci_on is shown as below:

Table 3-524. Function rcu_osci_on

Function name	rcu_osci_on
Function prototype	void rcu_osci_on(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	turn on the oscillator
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-486. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn on the high speed crystal oscillator */
```

```
rcu_osci_on(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_osci_off

The description of rcu_osci_off is shown as below:

Table 3-525. Function rcu_osci_off

Function name	rcu_osci_off
Function prototype	void rcu_osci_off(rcu_osci_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	turn off the oscillator
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-486. Enum rcu_osci_type_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn off the high speed crystal oscillator */
```

```
rcu_osci_off(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable

The description of rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-526. Function rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable

Function name	rcu_osci_bypass_mode_enable
---------------	-----------------------------

Function prototype	void rcu_osc_bypass_mode_enable(rcu_osc_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	enable the oscillator bypass mode
Precondition	HXTALEN or LXTALEN must be reset before it
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-486. Enum rcu_osc_type_enum
<i>RCU_HXTAL</i>	high speed crystal oscillator(HXTAL)
<i>RCU_LXTAL</i>	low speed crystal oscillator(LXTAL)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the high speed crystal oscillator bypass mode */
rcu_osc_bypass_mode_enable(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_osc_bypass_mode_disable

The description of rcu_osc_bypass_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-527. Function rcu_osc_bypass_mode_disable

Function name	rcu_osc_bypass_mode_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_osc_bypass_mode_disable(rcu_osc_type_enum osci);
Function descriptions	disable the oscillator bypass mode
Precondition	HXTALEN or LXTALEN must be reset before it
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
osci	oscillator types, refer to Table 3-486. Enum rcu_osc_type_enum
<i>RCU_HXTAL</i>	high speed crystal oscillator(HXTAL)
<i>RCU_LXTAL</i>	low speed crystal oscillator(LXTAL)
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the high speed crystal oscillator bypass mode */
```

```
rcu_osc_bypass_mode_disable(RCU_HXTAL);
```

rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable

The description of rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-528. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable

Function name	rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable
Function prototype	void rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the HXTAL clock monitor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the HXTAL clock monitor */
```

```
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_enable();
```

rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable

The description of rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-529. Function rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable

Function name	rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable
Function prototype	void rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable(void);

Function descriptions	disable the HXTAL clock monitor
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the HXTAL clock monitor */
rcu_hxtal_clock_monitor_disable();
```

rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set

The description of rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set is shown as below:

Table 3-530. Function rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set

Function name	rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set
Function prototype	void rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set(uint32_t irc8m_adjval);
Function descriptions	set the IRC8M adjust value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
irc8m_adjval	IRC8M adjust value, must be between 0 and 0x1F
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the IRC8M adjust value */
```

```
rcu_irc8m_adjust_value_set(0x10);
```

rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set

The description of rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set is shown as below:

Table 3-531. Function rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set

Function name	rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set
Function prototype	void rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set(uint32_t dsvol);
Function descriptions	set the deep-sleep mode voltage value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
dsvol	deep sleep mode voltage
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_0</i>	the core voltage is default value in deep-sleep mode
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_1</i>	the core voltage is (default value-0.1)V in Deep-sleep mode(customers are not recommended to use it)
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_2</i>	the core voltage is (default value-0.2)V in Deep-sleep mode(customers are not recommended to use it)
<i>RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_3</i>	the core voltage is (default value-0.3)V in Deep-sleep mode(customers are not recommended to use it)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the deep-sleep mode voltage */
```

```
rcu_deepsleep_voltage_set(RCU_DEEPSLEEP_V_1);
```

rcu_clock_freq_get

The description of rcu_clock_freq_get is shown as below:

Table 3-532. Function rcu_clock_freq_get

Function name	rcu_clock_freq_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rcu_clock_freq_get(rcu_clock_freq_enum clock);
Function descriptions	get the system clock, bus clock frequency
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
clock	the clock frequency which to get, refer to Table 3-487. Enum rcu_clock_freq_enum
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
ck_freq	clock frequency of system, AHB, APB1, APB2

Example:

```
uint32_t temp_freq;

/* get the system clock frequency */
temp_freq = rcu_clock_freq_get(CK_SYS);
```

3.20. RTC

The Real-time Clock (RTC) is usually used as a clock-calendar. The ones in the Backup Domain consist of a 32-bit up-counter, an alarm, a prescaler, a divider and the RTC clock configuration register. The RTC registers are listed in chapter [3.20.1](#), the RTC firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.20.2](#).

3.20.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

RTC registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-533. RTC Registers

Registers	Descriptions
RTC_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
RTC_CTL	Control register

Registers	Descriptions
RTC_PSCH	Prescaler high register
RTC_PSCL	Prescaler low register
RTC_DIVH	Divider high register
RTC_DIVL	Divider low register
RTC_CNTH	counter high register
RTC_CNTL	counter low register
RTC_ALRMH	Alarm high register
RTC_ALRML	Alarm low register

3.20.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

RTC firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-534. RTC firmware function

Function name	Function description
rtc_interrupt_enable	enable RTC interrupt
rtc_interrupt_disable	disable RTC interrupt
rtc_configuration_mode_enter	enter RTC configuration mode
rtc_configuration_mode_exit	exit RTC configuration mode
rtc_lwoff_wait	wait RTC last write operation finished flag set
rtc_register_sync_wait	wait RTC registers synchronized flag set
rtc_counter_get	get RTC counter value
rtc_counter_set	set RTC counter value
rtc_prescaler_set	set RTC prescaler value
rtc_alarm_config	set RTC alarm value
rtc_divider_get	get RTC divider value
rtc_flag_get	get RTC flag status
rtc_flag_clear	clear RTC flag status

rtc_interrupt_enable

The description of rtc_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-535. Function rtc_interrupt_enable

Function name	rtc_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void rtc_interrupt_enable(uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable RTC interrupt
Precondition	before using this function, you must call rtc_lwoff_wait () function (wait until LWOFF flag is set).
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify which RTC interrupt to enable
<i>RTC_INT_SECOND</i>	second interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_OVERFLOW</i>	overflow interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
rtc_lwoff_wait( );

/* enable the RTC second interrupt */
rtc_interrupt_enable(RTC_INT_SECOND);
```

rtc_interrupt_disable

The description of rtc_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-536. Function rtc_interrupt_disable

Function name	rtc_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void rtc_interrupt_disable(uint32_t interrupt);

Function descriptions	disable RTC interrupt
Precondition	before using this function, you must call <code>rtc_lwoff_wait ()</code> function (wait until LWOFF flag is set).
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	specify which RTC interrupt to disable
<i>RTC_INT_SECOND</i>	second interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt
<i>RTC_INT_OVERFLOW</i>	overflow interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
rtc_lwoff_wait( );

/* disable the RTC second interrupt */
rtc_interrupt_disable(RTC_INT_SECOND);

```

rtc_configuration_mode_enter

The description of `rtc_configuration_mode_enter` is shown as below:

Table 3-537. Function `rtc_configuration_mode_enter`

Function name	<code>rtc_configuration_mode_enter</code>
Function prototype	<code>void rtc_configuration_mode_enter(void);</code>
Function descriptions	enter RTC configuration mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enter RTC configuration mode */
```

```
rtc_configuration_mode_enter( );
```

rtc_configuration_mode_exit

The description of rtc_configuration_mode_exit is shown as below:

Table 3-538. Function rtc_configuration_mode_exit

Function name	rtc_configuration_mode_exit
Function prototype	void rtc_configuration_mode_exit(void);
Function descriptions	exit RTC configuration mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* exit RTC configuration mode */
```

```
rtc_configuration_mode_exit( );
```

rtc_lwoff_wait

The description of rtc_lwoff_wait is shown as below:

Table 3-539. Function rtc_lwoff_wait

Function name	rtc_lwoff_wait
---------------	----------------

Function prototype	void rtc_lwoff_wait(void);
Function descriptions	wait RTC last write operation finished flag set
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
```

```
rtc_lwoff_wait( );
```

```
/* enable the RTC second interrupt */
```

```
rtc_interrupt_enable(RTC_INT_SECOND);
```

rtc_register_sync_wait

The description of rtc_register_sync_wait is shown as below:

Table 3-540. Function rtc_register_sync_wait

Function name	rtc_register_sync_wait
Function prototype	void rtc_register_sync_wait(void);
Function descriptions	wait RTC registers synchronized flag set
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* wait for RTC registers synchronization */
```

```
rtc_register_sync_wait( );
```

rtc_counter_get

The description of rtc_counter_get is shown as below:

Table 3-541. Function rtc_counter_get

Function name	rtc_counter_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rtc_counter_get(void);
Function descriptions	get RTC counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the value of RTC counter

Example:

```
/* get the counter value */
```

```
uint32_t rtc_counter_value;
```

```
rtc_counter_value = rtc_counter_get ( );
```

rtc_counter_set

The description of rtc_counter_set is shown as below:

Table 3-542. Function rtc_counter_set

Function name	rtc_counter_set
Function prototype	void rtc_counter_set(uint32_t cnt);
Function descriptions	set RTC counter value

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
cnt	RTC counter value (0-0xFFFF FFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
```

```
rtc_lwoff_wait( );
```

```
/* set counter value to 0xFFFF */
```

```
rtc_counter_set(0xFFFF);
```

rtc_prescaler_set

The description of rtc_prescaler_set is shown as below:

Table 3-543. Function rtc_prescaler_set

Function name	rtc_interrupt_rtc_prescaler_set
Function prototype	void rtc_prescaler_set(uint32_t psc);
Function descriptions	set RTC prescaler value
Precondition	before using this function, you must call rtc_lwoff_wait () function (wait until LWOFF flag is set).
The called functions	rtc_configuration_mode_enter / rtc_configuration_mode_exit
Input parameter{in}	
psc	RTC prescaler value (0-0x000F FFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
rtc_lwoff_wait( );

/* set RTC prescaler value to 0x7FFFF */
rtc_prescaler_set (0x7FFFF);
```

rtc_alarm_config

The description of rtc_alarm_config is shown as below:

Table 3-544. Function rtc_alarm_config

Function name	rtc_alarm_config
Function prototype	void rtc_alarm_config(uint32_t alarm);
Function descriptions	set RTC alarm value
Precondition	before using this function, you must call rtc_lwoff_wait () function (wait until LWOFF flag is set). -
The called functions	rtc_configuration_mode_enter / rtc_configuration_mode_exit
Input parameter{in}	
alarm	RTC alarm value (0-0xFFFF FFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* wait until last write operation on RTC registers has finished */
rtc_lwoff_wait( );

/* set alarm value to 0xFFFF */
rtc_alarm_config (0xFFFF);
```

rtc_divider_get

The description of rtc_divider_get is shown as below:

Table 3-545. Function rtc_divider_get

Function name	rtc_divider_get
Function prototype	uint32_t rtc_divider_get(void);
Function descriptions	get RTC divider value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	the value of RTC divider

Example:

```
/* get the current RTC divider value */
uint32_t rtc_divider_value;
rtc_divider_value = rtc_divider_get ( );
```

rtc_flag_get

The description of rtc_flag_getrtc_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-546. Function rtc_flag_get

Function name	rtc_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus rtc_flag_get(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get RTC flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which RTC flag status to get
RTC_FLAG_SECOND	second interrupt flag
RTC_FLAG_ALARM	alarm interrupt flag

<i>RTC_FLAG_OVERFLOW</i> <i>W</i>	overflow interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_RSYN</i>	registers synchronized flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_LWOF</i>	last write operation finished flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the RTC overflow interrupt status */
```

```
FlagStatus alarm_status;
```

```
alarm_status = rtc_flag_get (RTC_FLAG_ALARM);
```

rtc_flag_clear

The description of `rtc_flag_clear` is shown as below:

Table 3-547. Function `rtc_flag_clear`

Function name	<code>rtc_flag_clear</code>
Function prototype	<code>void rtc_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);</code>
Function descriptions	clear RTC flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	specify which RTC flag status to clear
<i>RTC_FLAG_SECOND</i>	second interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_ALARM</i>	alarm interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_OVERFLOW</i> <i>W</i>	overflow interrupt flag
<i>RTC_FLAG_RSYN</i>	registers synchronized flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the RTC alarm flag */
rtc_flag_clear (RTC_FLAG_ALARM);
```

3.21. SDIO

The secure digital input/output interface (SDIO) defines the SD/SD I/O /MMC CE-ATA card host interface, which provides command/data transfer between the AHB system bus and SD memory cards, SD I/O cards, Multimedia Card (MMC), and CE-ATA devices. The SDIO registers are listed in chapter [3.21.13](#). 21.1, the SDIO firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.21.2](#).

3.21.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

SDIO registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-548. SDIO Registers

Registers	Descriptions
SDIO_PWRCTL	Power control register
SDIO_CLKCTL	Clock control register
SDIO_CMDAGMT	Command argument register
SDIO_CMDCTL	Command control register
SDIO_RSPCMDIDX	Command index response register
SDIO_RESPx x=0..3	Response register
SDIO_DATATO	Data timeout register
SDIO_DATALEN	Data length register
SDIO_DATACTL	Data control register
SDIO_DATACNT	Data counter register
SDIO_STAT	Status register
SDIO_INTC	Interrupt clear register

Registers	Descriptions
SDIO_INTEN	Interrupt enable register
SDIO_FIFOCNT	FIFO counter register
SDIO_FIFO	FIFO data register

3.21.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

SDIO firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-549. SDIO firmware function

Function name	Function description
sdio_deinit	deinitialize the SDIO
sdio_clock_config	configure the SDIO clock
sdio_hardware_clock_enable	enable hardware clock control
sdio_hardware_clock_disable	disable hardware clock control
sdio_bus_mode_set	set different SDIO card bus mode
sdio_power_state_set	set the SDIO power state
sdio_power_state_get	get the SDIO power state
sdio_clock_enable	enable SDIO_CLK clock output
sdio_clock_disable	disable SDIO_CLK clock output
sdio_command_response_config	configure the command and response
sdio_wait_type_set	set the command state machine wait type
sdio_csm_enable	enable the CSM(command state machine)
sdio_csm_disable	disable the CSM(command state machine)
sdio_command_index_get	get the last response command index
sdio_response_get	get the response for the last received command
sdio_data_config	configure the data timeout, data length and data block size
sdio_data_transfer_config	configure the data transfer mode and direction
sdio_dsm_enable	enable the DSM(data state machine) for data transfer
sdio_dsm_disable	disable the DSM(data state machine)
sdio_data_write	write data(one word) to the transmit FIFO

Function name	Function description
sdio_data_read	read data(one word) from the receive FIFO
sdio_data_counter_get	get the number of remaining data bytes to be transferred to card
sdio_fifo_counter_get	get the number of words remaining to be written or read from FIFO
sdio_dma_enable	enable the DMA request for SDIO
sdio_dma_disable	disable the DMA request for SDIO
sdio_flag_get	get the flags state of SDIO
sdio_flag_clear	clear the pending flags of SDIO
sdio_interrupt_enable	enable the SDIO interrupt
sdio_interrupt_disable	disable the SDIO interrupt
sdio_interrupt_flag_get	get the interrupt flags state of SDIO
sdio_interrupt_flag_clear	clear the interrupt pending flags of SDIO
sdio_readwait_enable	enable the read wait mode(SD I/O only)
sdio_readwait_disable	disable the read wait mode(SD I/O only)
sdio_stop_readwait_enable	enable the function that stop the read wait process(SD I/O only)
sdio_stop_readwait_disable	disable the function that stop the read wait process(SD I/O only)
sdio_readwait_type_set	set the read wait type(SD I/O only)
sdio_operation_enable	enable the SD I/O mode specific operation(SD I/O only)
sdio_operation_disable	disable the SD I/O mode specific operation(SD I/O only)
sdio_suspend_enable	enable the SD I/O suspend operation(SD I/O only)
sdio_suspend_disable	disable the SD I/O suspend operation(SD I/O only)
sdio_ceata_command_enable	enable the CE-ATA command(CE-ATA only)
sdio_ceata_command_disable	disable the CE-ATA command(CE-ATA only)
sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable	enable the CE-ATA interrupt(CE-ATA only)
sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable	disable the CE-ATA interrupt(CE-ATA only)
sdio_ceata_command_completion_en	enable the CE-ATA command completion signal(CE-ATA

Function name	Function description
able	only)
sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable	disable the CE-ATA command completion signal(CE-ATA only)
sdio_clock_config	configure the SDIO clock

sdio_deinit

The description of sdio_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-550. Function sdio_deinit

Function name	sdio_deinit
Function prototype	void sdio_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	deinitialize the SDIO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* deinitialize the SDIO */
```

```
sdio_deinit();
```

sdio_clock_config

The description of sdio_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-551. Function sdio_clock_config

Function name	sdio_clock_config
Function prototype	void sdio_clock_config(uint32_t clock_edge, uint32_t clock_bypass, uint32_t clock_powersave, uint16_t clock_division);
Function descriptions	configure the SDIO clock

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
clock_edge	SDIO_CLK clock edge
<i>SDIO_SDIOLCKEDGE</i> <i>_RISING</i>	select the rising edge of the SDIOCLK to generate SDIO_CLK
<i>SDIO_SDIOLCKEDGE</i> <i>_FALLING</i>	select the falling edge of the SDIOCLK to generate SDIO_CLK
Input parameter{in}	
clock_bypass	clock bypass
<i>SDIO_CLOCKBYPASS</i> <i>_ENABLE</i>	clock bypass
<i>SDIO_CLOCKBYPASS</i> <i>_DISABLE</i>	no bypass
Input parameter{in}	
clock_powersave	SDIO_CLK clock dynamic switch on/off for power saving
<i>SDIO_CLOCKPWRSA</i> <i>VE_ENABLE</i>	SDIO_CLK closed when bus is idle
<i>SDIO_CLOCKPWRSA</i> <i>VE_DISABLE</i>	SDIO_CLK clock is always on
Input parameter{in}	
clock_division	clock division, less than 512
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the SDIO clock */
```

```
sdio_clock_config(SDIO_SDIOLCKEDGE_RISING, SDIO_CLOCKBYPASS_DISABLE,
SDIO_CLOCKPWRSAVE_DISABLE, SD_CLK_DIV_TRANS);
```

sdio hardware clock enable

The description of sdio hardware clock enable is shown as below:

Table 3-552. Function sdio hardware clock enable

Function name	sdio hardware clock enable
Function prototype	void sdio hardware clock enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable hardware clock control
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable hardware clock control */
sdio hardware clock enable();
```

sdio hardware clock disable

The description of sdio hardware clock disable is shown as below:

Table 3-553. Function sdio hardware clock disable

Function name	sdio hardware clock disable
Function prototype	void sdio hardware clock disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable hardware clock control
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable hardware clock control */
```

```
sdio_hardware_clock_disable();
```

sdio_bus_mode_set

The description of sdio_bus_mode_set is shown as below:

Table 3-554. Function sdio_bus_mode_set

Function name	sdio_bus_mode_set
Function prototype	void sdio_bus_mode_set(uint32_t bus_mode);
Function descriptions	set different SDIO card bus mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
bus_mode	SDIO card bus mode
<i>SDIO_BUSMODE_1BIT</i> <i>T</i>	1-bit SDIO card bus mode
<i>SDIO_BUSMODE_4BIT</i> <i>T</i>	4-bit SDIO card bus mode
<i>SDIO_BUSMODE_8BIT</i> <i>T</i>	8-bit SDIO card bus mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set SDIO bus mode */
```

```
sdio_bus_mode_set(SDIO_BUSMODE_1BIT);
```

sdio_power_state_set

The description of sdio_power_state_set is shown as below:

Table 3-555. Function sdio_power_state_set

Function name	sdio_power_state_set
Function prototype	void sdio_power_state_set(uint32_t power_state);
Function descriptions	set the SDIO power state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
power_state	SDIO power state
SDIO_POWER_ON	SDIO power on
SDIO_POWER_OFF	SDIO power off
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set SDIO power state */
sdio_power_state_set(SDIO_POWER_ON);
```

sdio_power_state_get

The description of sdio_power_state_get is shown as below:

Table 3-556. Function sdio_power_state_get

Function name	sdio_power_state_get
Function prototype	uint32_t sdio_power_state_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the SDIO power state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	SDIO_POWER_ON / SDIO_POWER_OFF

Example:

```
/* get the SDIO power state */
uint32_t sdio_power_value;
sdio_power_value = sdio_power_state_get();
```

sdio_clock_enable

The description of sdio_clock_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-557. Function sdio_clock_enable

Function name	sdio_clock_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_clock_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable SDIO_CLK clock output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SDIO_CLK clock output */
sdio_clock_enable();
```

sdio_clock_disable

The description of sdio_clock_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-558. Function `sdio_clock_disable`

Function name	<code>sdio_clock_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void sdio_clock_disable(void);</code>
Function descriptions	disable SDIO_CLK clock output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SDIO_CLK clock output */
sdio_clock_disable();
```

`sdio_command_response_config`

The description of `sdio_command_response_config` is shown as below:

Table 3-559. Function `sdio_command_response_config`

Function name	<code>sdio_command_response_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void sdio_command_response_config(uint32_t cmd_index, uint32_t cmd_argument, uint32_t response_type);</code>
Function descriptions	configure the command and response
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>cmd_index</code>	command index, refer to the related specifications
Input parameter{in}	
<code>cmd_argument</code>	command argument, refer to the related specifications
Input parameter{in}	

response_type	response type
<i>SDIO_RESPONSETYPE_NO</i>	no response
<i>SDIO_RESPONSETYPE_SHORT</i>	short response
<i>SDIO_RESPONSETYPE_LONG</i>	long response
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* CMD2(SD_CMD_ALL_SEND_CID) command response config*/
```

```
sdio_command_response_config(SD_CMD_ALL_SEND_CID, (uint32_t)0x0,
SDIO_RESPONSETYPE_LONG);
```

sdio_wait_type_set

The description of sdio_wait_type_set is shown as below:

Table 3-560. Function sdio_wait_type_set

Function name	sdio_wait_type_set
Function prototype	void sdio_wait_type_set(uint32_t wait_type);
Function descriptions	set the command state machine wait type
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
wait_type	wait type
<i>SDIO_WAITTYPE_NO</i>	not wait interrupt
<i>SDIO_WAITTYPE_INT_ERRUP</i>	wait interrupt
<i>SDIO_WAITTYPE_DATAEND</i>	wait the end of data transfer

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the command state machine wait type */
```

```
sdio_wait_type_set(SDIO_WAITTYPE_NO);
```

sdio_csm_enable

The description of sdio_csm_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-561. Function sdio_csm_enable

Function name	sdio_csm_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_csm_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the CSM(command state machine)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the CSM(command state machine) */
```

```
sdio_csm_enable();
```

sdio_csm_disable

The description of sdio_csm_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-562. Function sdio_csm_disable

Function name	sdio_csm_disable
---------------	------------------

Function prototype	void sdio_csm_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the CSM(command state machine)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the CSM(command state machine) */
```

```
sdio_csm_disable();
```

sdio_command_index_get

The description of sdio_command_index_get is shown as below:

Table 3-563. Function sdio_command_index_get

Function name	sdio_command_index_get
Function prototype	uint8_t sdio_command_index_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the last response command index
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint8_t	last response command index

Example:

```
/* get SDIO command index */
```

```
uint8_t sdio_commond_value;
```

```
sdio_commond_value = sdio_command_index_get();
```

sdio_response_get

The description of sdio_response_get is shown as below:

Table 3-564. Function sdio_response_get

Function name	sdio_response_get
Function prototype	uint32_t sdio_response_get(uint32_t responsex);
Function descriptions	get the response for the last received command
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
responsex	SDIO response
SDIO_RESPONSE0	card response[31:0]/card response[127:96]
SDIO_RESPONSE1	card response[95:64]
SDIO_RESPONSE2	card response[63:32]
SDIO_RESPONSE3	card response[31:1], plus bit 0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	response for the last received command

Example:

```
/* store the CID0 numbers */
```

```
uint32_t sdio_cid[0];
```

```
sdio_cid[0] = sdio_response_get(SDIO_RESPONSE0);
```

sdio_data_config

The description of sdio_data_config is shown as below:

Table 3-565. Function sdio_data_config

Function name	sdio_data_config
Function prototype	void sdio_data_config(uint32_t data_timeout, uint32_t data_length, uint32_t data_blocksize);
Function descriptions	configure the data timeout, data length and data block size
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
data_timeout	data timeout period in card bus clock periods
Input parameter{in}	
data_length	number of data bytes to be transferred
Input parameter{in}	
data_blocksize	size of data block for block transfer
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_1BYTE	block size = 1 byte
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_2BYTES	block size = 2 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_4BYTES	block size = 4 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_8BYTES	block size = 8 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_16BYTES	block size = 16 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_32BYTES	block size = 32 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_64BYTES	block size = 64 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_128BYTES	block size = 128 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_256BYTES	block size = 256 bytes
SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_512BYTES	block size = 512 bytes

<i>E_512BYTES</i>	
<i>SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZ</i> <i>E_1024BYTES</i>	block size = 1024 bytes
<i>SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZ</i> <i>E_2048BYTES</i>	block size = 2048 bytes
<i>SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZ</i> <i>E_4096BYTES</i>	block size = 4096 bytes
<i>SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZ</i> <i>E_8192BYTES</i>	block size = 8192 bytes
<i>SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZ</i> <i>E_16384BYTES</i>	block size = 16384 bytes
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure SDIO data */
sdio_data_config(0, 0, SDIO_DATABLOCKSIZE_1BYTE);
```

sdio_data_transfer_config

The description of sdio_data_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-566. Function sdio_data_transfer_config

Function name	sdio_data_transfer_config
Function prototype	void sdio_data_transfer_config(uint32_t transfer_mode, uint32_t transfer_direction);
Function descriptions	configure the data transfer mode and direction
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
transfer_mode	mode of data transfer
<i>SDIO_TRANSMODE_BLOCK</i>	block transfer

<i>SDIO_TRANSMODE_STREAM</i>	stream transfer or SDIO multibyte transfer
Input parameter{in}	
transfer_direction	data transfer direction, read or write
<i>SDIO_TRANSDIRECTION_TOCARD</i>	write data to card
<i>SDIO_TRANSDIRECTION_TOSDIO</i>	read data from card
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure SDIO data transmisson */
```

```
sdio_data_transfer_config(SDIO_TRANSDIRECTION_TOSDIO,  
SDIO_TRANSMODE_BLOCK);
```

sdio_dsm_enable

The description of sdio_dsm_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-567. Function sdio_dsm_enable

Function name	sdio_dsm_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_dsm_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the DSM(data state machine) for data transfer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* enable the DSM(data state machine) */
```

```
sdio_dsm_enable();
```

sdio_dsm_disable

The description of sdio_dsm_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-568. Function sdio_dsm_disable

Function name	sdio_dsm_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_dsm_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the DSM(data state machine)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the DSM(data state machine) */
```

```
sdio_dsm_disable();
```

sdio_data_write

The description of sdio_data_write is shown as below:

Table 3-569. Function sdio_data_write

Function name	sdio_data_write
Function prototype	void sdio_data_write(uint32_t data);
Function descriptions	write data(one word) to the transmit FIFO
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
data	32-bit data write to card
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* write data(one word) to the transmit FIFO */
```

```
sdio_data_write(0x0000 0001);
```

sdio_data_read

The description of sdio_data_read is shown as below:

Table 3-570. Function sdio_data_read

Function name	sdio_data_read
Function prototype	uint32_t sdio_data_read(void);
Function descriptions	read data(one word) from the receive FIFO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	received data

Example:

```
/* read data(one word) from the receive FIFO */
```

```
sdio_data_read();
```

sdio_data_counter_get

The description of sdio_data_counter_get is shown as below:

Table 3-571. Function sdio_data_counter_get

Function name	sdio_data_counter_get
Function prototype	uint32_t sdio_data_counter_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the number of remaining data bytes to be transferred to card
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	number of remaining data bytes to be transferred

Example:

```
/* get the number of remaining data bytes to be transferred to card */
```

```
uint32_t sdio_data_value;
```

```
sdio_data_value = sdio_data_counter_get();
```

sdio_fifo_counter_get

The description of sdio_fifo_counter_get is shown as below:

Table 3-572. Function sdio_data_counter_get

Function name	sdio_fifo_counter_get
Function prototype	uint32_t sdio_fifo_counter_get(void);
Function descriptions	get the number of words remaining to be written or read from FIFO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	remaining number of words

Example:

```
/* get the number of words remaining to be written or read from FIFO */
```

```
uint32_t sdio_fifo_value;
```

```
sdio_fifo_value = sdio_fifo_counter_get();
```

sdio_dma_enable

The description of sdio_dma_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-573. Function sdio_dma_enable

Function name	sdio_dma_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_dma_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the DMA request for SDIO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the SDIO DMA */
```

```
sdio_dma_enable();
```

sdio_dma_disable

The description of sdio_dma_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-574. Function `sdio_dma_disable`

Function name	<code>sdio_dma_disable</code>
Function prototype	<code>void sdio_dma_disable(void);</code>
Function descriptions	disable the DMA request for SDIO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the SDIO DMA */
sdio_dma_disable();
```

`sdio_flag_get`

The description of `sdio_flag_get` is shown as below:

Table 3-575. Function `sdio_flag_get`

Function name	<code>sdio_flag_get</code>
Function prototype	<code>FlagStatus sdio_flag_get(uint32_t flag);</code>
Function descriptions	get the flags state of SDIO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flags state of SDIO
<code>SDIO_FLAG_CCR CER</code> <i>R</i>	command response received (CRC check failed) flag
<code>SDIO_FLAG_DTCR CE</code> <i>RR</i>	data block sent/received (CRC check failed) flag

<i>SDIO_FLAG_CMDTMO</i> <i>UT</i>	command response timeout flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_DTTMOU</i> <i>T</i>	data timeout flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_TXURE</i>	transmit FIFO underrun error occurs flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_RXORE</i>	received FIFO overrun error occurs flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_CMDREC</i> <i>V</i>	command response received (CRC check passed) flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_CMDSEN</i> <i>D</i>	command sent (no response required) flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_DTEND</i>	data end (data counter, <i>SDIO_DATACNT</i> , is zero) flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_STBITE</i>	start bit error in the bus flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_DTBKLE</i> <i>ND</i>	data block sent/received (CRC check passed) flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_CMDRUN</i>	command transmission in progress flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_TXRUN</i>	data transmission in progress flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_RXRUN</i>	data reception in progress flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_TFH</i>	transmit FIFO is half empty flag: at least 8 words can be written into the FIFO
<i>SDIO_FLAG_RFH</i>	receive FIFO is half full flag: at least 8 words can be read in the FIFO
<i>SDIO_FLAG_TFF</i>	transmit FIFO is full flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_RFF</i>	receive FIFO is full flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_TFE</i>	transmit FIFO is empty flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_RFE</i>	receive FIFO is empty flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_TXDTVAL</i>	data is valid in transmit FIFO flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_RXDTVAL</i> <i>L</i>	data is valid in receive FIFO flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_SDIOINT</i>	SD I/O interrupt received flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_ATAEND</i>	CE-ATA command completion signal received (only for CMD61) flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the flags state of SDIO */
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = sdio_flag_get(SDIO_FLAG_RFH);
```

sdio_flag_clear

The description of sdio_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-576. Function sdio_flag_clear

Function name	sdio_flag_clear
Function prototype	void sdio_flag_clear(uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear the pending flags of SDIO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
flag	flags state of SDIO
SDIO_FLAG_CCRCE R	command response received (CRC check failed) flag
SDIO_FLAG_DTCRCE RR	data block sent/received (CRC check failed) flag
SDIO_FLAG_CMDTMO UT	command response timeout flag
SDIO_FLAG_DTTMOU T	data timeout flag
SDIO_FLAG_TXURE	transmit FIFO underrun error occurs flag
SDIO_FLAG_RXORE	received FIFO overrun error occurs flag
SDIO_FLAG_CMDREC V	command response received (CRC check passed) flag
SDIO_FLAG_CMDSEN D	command sent (no response required) flag

<i>SDIO_FLAG_DTEND</i>	data end (data counter, <i>SDIO_DATACNT</i> , is zero) flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_STBITE</i>	start bit error in the bus flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_DTBLKEN</i>	data block sent/received (CRC check passed) flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_SDIOINT</i>	SD I/O interrupt received flag
<i>SDIO_FLAG_ATAEND</i>	CE-ATA command completion signal received (only for CMD61) flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the pending flags of SDIO */
sdio_flag_clear(SDIO_FLAG_DTCRCERR);
```

sdio_interrupt_enable

The description of *sdio_interrupt_enable* is shown as below:

Table 3-577. Function *sdio_interrupt_enable*

Function name	<i>sdio_interrupt_enable</i>
Function prototype	<code>void sdio_interrupt_enable(uint32_t int_flag);</code>
Function descriptions	enable the SDIO interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	interrupt flags state of SDIO
<i>SDIO_INT_CCRERR</i>	SDIO CCRERR interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_DTCRCERR</i>	SDIO DTCRCERR interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_CMDTMOUT</i>	SDIO CMDTMOUT interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_DTTMOUT</i>	SDIO DTTMOUT interrupt

<i>SDIO_INT_TXURE</i>	SDIO TXURE interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RXORE</i>	SDIO_INT_RXORE
<i>SDIO_INT_CMDRECV</i>	SDIO CMDRECV interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_CMDSEND</i>	SDIO CMDSEND interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_DTEND</i>	SDIO DTEND interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_STBITE</i>	SDIO STBITE interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_DTBLKEND</i>	SDIO DTBLKEND interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_CMDRUN</i>	SDIO CMDRUN interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_TXRUN</i>	SDIO TXRUN interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RXRUN</i>	SDIO RXRUN interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_TFH</i>	SDIO TFH interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RFH</i>	SDIO RFH interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_TFF</i>	SDIO TFF interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RFF</i>	SDIO RFF interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_TFE</i>	SDIO TFE interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RFE</i>	SDIO RFE interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_TXDTVAL</i>	SDIO TXDTVAL interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RXDTVAL</i>	SDIO RXDTVAL interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_SDIOINT</i>	SDIO SDIOINT interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_ATAEND</i>	SDIO ATAEND interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the SDIO corresponding interrupts */
```

```
sdio_interrupt_enable(SDIO_INT_CCRRCERR | SDIO_INT_DTTMOUT | SDIO_INT_RXORE  
| SDIO_INT_DTEND | SDIO_INT_STBITE);
```

sdio_interrupt_disable

The description of sdio_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-578. Function sdio_interrupt_disable

Function name	sdio_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_interrupt_disable(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	disable the SDIO interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	interrupt flags state of SDIO
SDIO_INT_CCRERR	SDIO CCRERR interrupt
SDIO_INT_DTCRCERR	SDIO DTCRCERR interrupt
SDIO_INT_CMDTMOU T	SDIO CMDTMOUT interrupt
SDIO_INT_DTTMOUT	SDIO DTTMOUT interrupt
SDIO_INT_TXURE	SDIO TXURE interrupt
SDIO_INT_RXORE	SDIO_INT_RXORE
SDIO_INT_CMDRECV	SDIO CMDRECV interrupt
SDIO_INT_CMDSEND	SDIO CMDSEND interrupt
SDIO_INT_DTEND	SDIO DTEND interrupt
SDIO_INT_STBITE	SDIO STBITE interrupt
SDIO_INT_DTBLKEND	SDIO DTBLKEND interrupt
SDIO_INT_CMDRUN	SDIO CMDRUN interrupt
SDIO_INT_TXRUN	SDIO TXRUN interrupt
SDIO_INT_RXRUN	SDIO RXRUN interrupt
SDIO_INT_TFH	SDIO TFH interrupt
SDIO_INT_RFH	SDIO RFH interrupt
SDIO_INT_TFF	SDIO TFF interrupt

<i>SDIO_INT_RFF</i>	SDIO RFF interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_TFE</i>	SDIO TFE interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RFE</i>	SDIO RFE interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_TXDTVAL</i>	SDIO TXDTVAL interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_RXDTVAL</i>	SDIO RXDTVAL interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_SDIOINT</i>	SDIO SDIOINT interrupt
<i>SDIO_INT_ATAEND</i>	SDIO ATAEND interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the SDIO interrupt */
```

```
sdio_interrupt_disable(SDIO_INT_DTCRCERR);
```

sdio_interrupt_flag_get

The description of sdio_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-579. Function sdio_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	sdio_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus sdio_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	get the interrupt flags state of SDIO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	interrupt flags state of SDIO
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_CCR CERR</i>	SDIO CCRCERR interrupt flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTC RCERR</i>	SDIO DTCRCERR interrupt flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_CMD</i>	SDIO CMDTMOUT interrupt flag

TMOUT	
SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTTMOUT	SDIO DTTMOUT interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_TXURRE	SDIO TXURE interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_RXORE	SDIO_INT_RXORE flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_CMDRECV	SDIO CMDRECV interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_CMDSSEND	SDIO CMDSSEND interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTEEND	SDIO DTEND interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_STBITE	SDIO STBITE interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTBLKEND	SDIO DTBLKEND interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_CMDRUN	SDIO CMDRUN interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_TXRUN	SDIO TXRUN interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_RXRUN	SDIO RXRUN interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_TFH	SDIO TFH interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_RFH	SDIO RFH interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_TFF	SDIO TFF interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_RFF	SDIO RFF interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_TFE	SDIO TFE interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_RFE	SDIO RFE interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_TXDTVAL	SDIO TXDTVAL interrupt flag
SDIO_INT_FLAG_RXDTVAL	SDIO RXDTVAL interrupt flag

<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_SDI OINT</i>	SDIO SDIOINT interrupt flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_ATA END</i>	SDIO ATAEND interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the interrupt flags state of SDIO */
```

```
FlagStatus flag_value;
```

```
flag_value = sdio_interrupt_flag_get(SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTEND);
```

sdio_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of sdio_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-580. Function sdio_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	sdio_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void sdio_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t int_flag);
Function descriptions	clear the interrupt pending flags of SDIO
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	interrupt flags state of SDIO
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_CCR CERR</i>	command response received (CRC check failed) flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTC RCERR</i>	data block sent/received (CRC check failed) flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_CMD TMOUT</i>	command response timeout flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTT MOUT</i>	data timeout flag

<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_TXURE</i>	transmit FIFO underrun error occurs flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_RXORE</i>	received FIFO overrun error occurs flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_CMDRECV</i>	command response received (CRC check passed) flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_CMDSEND</i>	command sent (no response required) flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTEND</i>	data end (data counter, SDIO_DATACNT, is zero) flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_STBITE</i>	start bit error in the bus flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTBKEND</i>	data block sent/received (CRC check passed) flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_SDI OINT</i>	SD I/O interrupt received flag
<i>SDIO_INT_FLAG_ATAEND</i>	CE-ATA command completion signal received (only for CMD61) flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the interrupt pending flags of SDIO */
```

```
sdio_interrupt_flag_clear(SDIO_INT_FLAG_DTEND);
```

sdio_readwait_enable

The description of sdio_readwait_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-581. Function sdio_readwait_enable

Function name	sdio_readwait_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_readwait_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the read wait mode(SD I/O only)

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the read wait mode(SD I/O only) */
```

```
sdio_readwait_enable();
```

sdio_readwait_disable

The description of sdio_readwait_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-582. Function sdio_readwait_disable

Function name	sdio_readwait_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_readwait_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the read wait mode(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the read wait mode(SD I/O only) */
```

```
sdio_readwait_disable();
```

sdio_stop_readwait_enable

The description of sdio_stop_readwait_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-583. Function sdio_stop_readwait_enable

Function name	sdio_stop_readwait_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_stop_readwait_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the function that stop the read wait process(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the function that stop the read wait process(SD I/O only) */
sdio_stop_readwait_enable();
```

sdio_stop_readwait_disable

The description of sdio_stop_readwait_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-584. Function sdio_stop_readwait_disable

Function name	sdio_stop_readwait_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_stop_readwait_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the function that stop the read wait process(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the function that stop the read wait process(SD I/O only) */
```

```
sdio_stop_readwait_disable();
```

sdio_readwait_type_set

The description of sdio_readwait_type_set is shown as below:

Table 3-585. Function sdio_readwait_type_set

Function name	sdio_readwait_type_set
Function prototype	void sdio_readwait_type_set(uint32_t readwait_type);
Function descriptions	set the read wait type(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
readwait_type	SD I/O read wait type
<i>SDIO_READWAITTYP E_CLK</i>	read wait control by stopping SDIO_CLK
<i>SDIO_READWAITTYP E_DAT2</i>	read wait control using SDIO_DAT[2]
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the read wait type(SD I/O only) */
```

```
sdio_readwait_type_set(uint32_t readwait_type);
```

sdio_operation_enable

The description of sdio_operation_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-586. Function sdio_operation_enable

Function name	sdio_operation_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_operation_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the SD I/O mode specific operation(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the SD I/O mode specific operation(SD I/O only) */
sdio_operation_enable();
```

sdio_operation_disable

The description of sdio_operation_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-587. Function sdio_operation_disable

Function name	sdio_operation_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_operation_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the SD I/O mode specific operation(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the SD I/O mode specific operation(SD I/O only) */
```

```
void sdio_operation_disable();
```

sdio_suspend_enable

The description of sdio_suspend_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-588. Function sdio_suspend_enable

Function name	sdio_suspend_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_suspend_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the SD I/O suspend operation(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the SD I/O suspend operation(SD I/O only) */
```

```
sdio_suspend_enable();
```

sdio_suspend_disable

The description of sdio_suspend_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-589. Function sdio_suspend_disable

Function name	sdio_suspend_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_suspend_disable(void);

Function descriptions	disable the SD I/O suspend operation(SD I/O only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the SD I/O suspend operation(SD I/O only) */
```

```
sdio_suspend_disable();
```

sdio_ceata_command_enable

The description of sdio_ceata_command_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-590. Function sdio_ceata_command_enable

Function name	sdio_ceata_command_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_ceata_command_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the CE-ATA command(CE-ATA only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the CE-ATA command(CE-ATA only) */
```

```
sdio_ceata_command_enable();
```

sdio_ceata_command_disable

The description of sdio_ceata_command_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-591. Function sdio_ceata_command_disable

Function name	sdio_ceata_command_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_ceata_command_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the CE-ATA command(CE-ATA only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the CE-ATA command(CE-ATA only) */
```

```
sdio_ceata_command_disable();
```

sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable

The description of sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-592. Function sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable

Function name	sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the CE-ATA interrupt(CE-ATA only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the CE-ATA interrupt(CE-ATA only) */
```

```
sdio_ceata_interrupt_enable();
```

sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable

The description of sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-593. Function sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable

Function name	sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the CE-ATA interrupt(CE-ATA only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the CE-ATA interrupt(CE-ATA only) */
```

```
sdio_ceata_interrupt_disable();
```

sdio_ceata_command_completion_enable

The description of sdio_ceata_command_completion_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-594. Function sdio_ceata_command_completion_enable

Function name	sdio_ceata_command_completion_enable
---------------	--------------------------------------

Function prototype	void sdio_ceata_command_completion_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable the CE-ATA command completion signal(CE-ATA only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the CE-ATA command completion signal(CE-ATA only) */
sdio_ceata_command_completion_enable();
```

sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable

The description of sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-595. Function sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable

Function name	sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable
Function prototype	void sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable(void);
Function descriptions	disable the CE-ATA command completion signal(CE-ATA only)
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the CE-ATA command completion signal(CE-ATA only) */
```

```
sdio_ceata_command_completion_disable();
```

3.22. SPI

The SPI/I2S module can communicate with external devices using the SPI protocol or the I2S audio protocol. The SPI/I2S registers are listed in chapter [3.22.1](#), the SPI/I2S firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.22.2](#).

3.22.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

SPI/I2S registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-596. SPI/I2S Registers

Registers	Descriptions
SPI_CTL0	SPI control register 0
SPI_CTL1	SPI control register 1
SPI_STAT	SPI status register
SPI_DATA	SPI data register
SPI_CRCPOLY	SPI CRC polynomial register
SPI_RCRC	SPI receive CRC register
SPI_TCRC	SPI transmit CRC register
SPI_I2SCTL	SPI/I2S control register
SPI_I2SPSC	SPI/I2S clock prescaler register
SPI_QCTL	Quad-SPI mode control register

3.22.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

SPI/I2S firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-597. SPI/I2S firmware function

Function name	Function description
spi_i2s_deinit	reset SPI and I2S peripheral
spi_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of SPI structure with the default values

Function name	Function description
spi_init	initialize SPI peripheral parameters
spi_enable	enable SPI
spi_disable	disable SPI
i2s_init	initialize I2S peripheral parameters
i2s_psc_config	configure I2S peripheral prescaler
i2s_enable	enable I2S
i2s_disable	disable I2S
spi_nss_output_enable	enable SPI NSS output function
spi_nss_output_disable	disable SPI NSS output function
spi_nss_internal_high	SPI NSS pin high level in software mode
spi_nss_internal_low	SPI NSS pin low level in software mode
spi_dma_enable	enable SPI DMA send or receive
spi_dma_disable	disable SPI DMA send or receive
spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config	configure SPI data frame format
spi_i2s_data_transmit	SPI transmit data
spi_i2s_data_receive	SPI receive data
spi_bidirectional_transfer_config	configure SPI bidirectional transfer direction
spi_crc_polynomial_set	set SPI CRC polynomial
spi_crc_polynomial_get	get SPI CRC polynomial
spi_crc_on	turn on SPI CRC function
spi_crc_off	turn off SPI CRC function
spi_crc_next	SPI next data is CRC value
spi_crc_get	get SPI CRC send value or receive value
spi_ti_mode_enable	enable SPI TI mode
spi_ti_mode_disable	disable SPI TI mode
spi_nssp_mode_enable	enable SPI NSS pulse mode
spi_nssp_mode_disable	disable SPI NSS pulse mode

Function name	Function description
spi_quad_enable	enable quad wire SPI
spi_quad_disable	disable quad wire SPI
spi_quad_write_enable	enable quad wire SPI write
spi_quad_read_enable	enable quad wire SPI read
spi_quad_io23_output_enable	enable quad wire SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
spi_quad_io23_output_disable	disable quad wire SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
spi_i2s_interrupt_enable	enable SPI and I2S interrupt
spi_i2s_interrupt_disable	disable SPI and I2S interrupt
spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get	get SPI and I2S interrupt status
spi_i2s_flag_get	get SPI and I2S flag status
spi_crc_error_clear	clear SPI CRC error flag status

Structure spi_parameter_struct

Table 3-598. spi_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
device_mode	SPI master or slave (SPI_MASTER, SPI_SLAVE)
trans_mode	SPI transfer type (SPI_TRANSMODE_FULLDUPLEX, SPI_TRANSMODE_RECEIVEONLY, SPI_TRANSMODE_BDRECEIVE, SPI_TRANSMODE_BDTRANSMIT)
frame_size	SPI frame size (SPI_FRAME_SIZE_16BIT, SPI_FRAME_SIZE_8BIT)
nss	SPI NSS control by hardware or software (SPI_NSS_SOFT, SPI_NSS_HARD)
endian	SPI big endian or little endian (SPI_ENDIAN_MSB, SPI_ENDIAN_LSB)
clock_polarity_phase	SPI clock phase and polarity (SPI_CK_PL_LOW_PH_1EDGE, SPI_CK_PL_HIGH_PH_1EDGE, SPI_CK_PL_LOW_PH_2EDGE, SPI_CK_PL_HIGH_PH_2EDGE)

prescale	SPI prescale factor (SPI_PSC_n (n=2,4,8,16,32,64,128,256))
----------	---

spi_i2s_deinit

The description of spi_i2s_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-599. Function spi_i2s_deinit

Function name	spi_i2s_deinit
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_deinit(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	reset SPI and I2S
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI/I2S peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset SPI0 */
spi_i2s_deinit(SPI0);
```

spi_struct_para_init

The description of spi_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-600. Function spi_struct_para_init

Function name	spi_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void spi_struct_para_init(spi_parameter_struct* spi_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of SPI structure with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
spi_struct	SPI init parameter structure, the structure members can refer to Table 3-598. spi parameter struct
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize the parameters of SPI */
spi_parameter_struct spi_init_struct;
spi_struct_para_init(&spi_init_struct);
```

spi_init

The description of spi_init is shown as below:

Table 3-601. Function spi_init

Function name	spi_init
Function prototype	void spi_init(uint32_t spi_periph, spi_parameter_struct* spi_struct);
Function descriptions	initialize SPI parameters
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
spi_struct	SPI parameter initialization structure, the structure members can refer to members of the structure Table 3-598. spi parameter struct
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* initialize SPI0 */

spi_parameter_struct spi_init_struct;

spi_init_struct.trans_mode      = SPI_TRANSMODE_BDTRANSMIT;

spi_init_struct.device_mode     = SPI_MASTER;

spi_init_struct.frame_size      = SPI_FRAME_SIZE_8BIT;

spi_init_struct.clock_polarity_phase = SPI_CLOCK_PL_HIGH_PH_2EDGE;

spi_init_struct.nss             = SPI_NSS_SOFT;

spi_init_struct.prescale        = SPI_PSC_8;

spi_init_struct.endian          = SPI_ENDIAN_MSB;

spi_init(SPI0, &spi_init_struct);

```

spi_enable

The description of spi_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-602. Function spi_enable

Function name	spi_enable
Function prototype	void spi_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable SPI
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* enable SPI0 */

spi_enable(SPI0);

```

spi_disable

The description of spi_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-603. Function spi_disable

Function name	spi_disable
Function prototype	void spi_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable SPI
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 */
spi_disable(SPI0);
```

i2s_init

The description of i2s_init is shown as below:

Table 3-604. Function i2s_init

Function name	i2s_init
Function prototype	void i2s_init(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t i2s_mode, uint32_t i2s_standard, uint32_t i2s_ckpl);
Function descriptions	initialize I2S pparameters
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

spi_periph	I2S peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=1,2
Input parameter{in}	
i2s_mode	I2S operation mode
<i>I2S_MODE_SLAVETX</i>	I2S slave transmit mode
<i>I2S_MODE_SLAVERX</i>	I2S slave receive mode
<i>I2S_MODE_MASTERTX</i> X	I2S master transmit mode
<i>I2S_MODE_MASTERRX</i> X	I2S master receive mode
Input parameter{in}	
i2s_standard	I2S standard
<i>I2S_STD_PHILLIPS</i>	I2S phillips standard
<i>I2S_STD_MSB</i>	I2S MSB standard
<i>I2S_STD_LSB</i>	I2S LSB standard
<i>I2S_STD_PCMSHORT</i>	I2S PCM short standard
<i>I2S_STD_PCMLONG</i>	I2S PCM long standard
Input parameter{in}	
i2s_ckpl	I2S idle state clock polarity
<i>I2S_CKPL_LOW</i>	I2S clock polarity low level
<i>I2S_CKPL_HIGH</i>	I2S clock polarity high level
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize I2S1 */
```

```
i2s_init(SPI1, I2S_MODE_MASTERTX, I2S_STD_PHILLIPS, I2S_CKPL_LOW);
```

i2s_psc_config

The description of i2s_psc_config is shown as below:

Table 3-605. Function i2s_psc_config

Function name	i2s_psc_config
Function prototype	void i2s_psc_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t i2s_audiosample, uint32_t i2s_frameformat, uint32_t i2s_mckout);
Function descriptions	configure I2S prescaler
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_clock_freq_get
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=1,2
Input parameter{in}	
i2s_audiosample	I2S audio sample rate
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_8K</i>	audio sample rate is 8KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_11K</i>	audio sample rate is 11KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_16K</i>	audio sample rate is 16KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_22K</i>	audio sample rate is 22KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_32K</i>	audio sample rate is 32KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_44K</i>	audio sample rate is 44KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_48K</i>	audio sample rate is 48KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_96K</i>	audio sample rate is 96KHz
<i>I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_192K</i>	audio sample rate is 192KHz

Input parameter{in}	
i2s_frameformat	I2S data length and channel length
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT16B_CH16B</i>	I2S data length is 16 bit and channel length is 16 bit
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT16B_CH32B</i>	I2S data length is 16 bit and channel length is 32 bit
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT24B_CH32B</i>	I2S data length is 24 bit and channel length is 32 bit
<i>I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT32B_CH32B</i>	I2S data length is 32 bit and channel length is 32 bit
Input parameter{in}	
i2s_mckout	I2S master clock output
<i>I2S_MCKOUT_ENABL</i> <i>E</i>	I2S master clock output enable
<i>I2S_MCKOUT_DISABL</i> <i>E</i>	I2S master clock output disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure I2S1 prescaler */
```

```
i2s_psc_config(SPI1, I2S_AUDIOSAMPLE_44K, I2S_FRAMEFORMAT_DT16B_CH16B,  
I2S_MCKOUT_DISABLE);
```

i2s_enable

The description of i2s_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-606. Function i2s_enable

Function name	i2s_enable
Function prototype	void i2s_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable I2S

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S peripheral
SPIx	x=1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable I2S1*/
```

```
i2s_enable(SPI1);
```

i2s_disable

The description of i2s_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-607. Function i2s_disable

Function name	i2s_disable
Function prototype	void i2s_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable I2S
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	I2S peripheral
SPIx	x=1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable I2S1*/
```

```
i2s_disable(SPI1);
```

spi_nss_output_enable

The description of spi_nss_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-608. Function spi_nss_output_enable

Function name	spi_nss_output_enable
Function prototype	void spi_nss_output_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable SPI NSS output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 NSS output */
```

```
spi_nss_output_enable(SPI0);
```

spi_nss_output_disable

The description of spi_nss_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-609. Function spi_nss_output_disable

Function name	spi_nss_output_disable
Function prototype	void spi_nss_output_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable SPI NSS output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 NSS output */
spi_nss_output_disable(SPI0);
```

spi_nss_internal_high

The description of spi_nss_internal_high is shown as below:

Table 3-610. Function spi_nss_internal_high

Function name	spi_nss_internal_high
Function prototype	void spi_nss_internal_high(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI NSS pin high level in software mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 NSS pin is pulled high level in software mode */
spi_nss_internal_high(SPI0);
```

spi_nss_internal_low

The description of spi_nss_internal_low is shown as below:

Table 3-611. Function spi_nss_internal_low

Function name	spi_nss_internal_low
Function prototype	void spi_nss_internal_low(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI NSS pin low level in software mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 NSS pin is pulled low level in software mode */
```

```
spi_nss_internal_low(SPI0);
```

spi_dma_enable

The description of spi_dma_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-612. Function spi_dma_enable

Function name	spi_dma_enable
Function prototype	void spi_dma_enable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t dma);
Function descriptions	enable SPI DMA send or receive
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral

<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
dma	SPI DMA mode
<i>SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT</i>	SPI transmit data use DMA
<i>SPI_DMA_RECEIVE</i>	SPI receive data use DMA
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 transmit data DMAfunction */
spi_dma_enable(SPI0, SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT);
```

spi_dma_disable

The description of spi_dma_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-613. Function spi_dma_disable

Function name	spi_dma_disable
Function prototype	void spi_dma_disable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t dma);
Function descriptions	disable SPI DMA send or receive
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
dma	SPI DMA mode
<i>SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT</i>	SPI transmit data use DMA
<i>SPI_DMA_RECEIVE</i>	SPI receive data use DMA
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 transmit data DMAfunction */
spi_dma_disable(SPI0, SPI_DMA_TRANSMIT);
```

spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config

The description of spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config is shown as below:

Table 3-614. Function spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config

Function name	spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t frame_format);
Function descriptions	configure SPI data frame format
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
frame_format	SPI frame size
SPI_FRAME_SIZE_16BIT	SPI frame size is 16 bits
SPI_FRAME_SIZE_8BIT	SPI frame size is 8 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure SPI1/I2S1 data frame format size is 16 bits */
```

```
spi_i2s_data_frame_format_config(SPI1, SPI_FRAME_SIZE_16BIT);
```

spi_i2s_data_transmit

The description of spi_i2s_data_transmit is shown as below:

Table 3-615. Function spi_i2s_data_transmit

Function name	spi_i2s_data_transmit
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_data_transmit(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t data);
Function descriptions	SPI transmit data
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
data	16-bit data
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 transmit data */
uint16_t spi0_send_array[] = {0x5050, 0xA0A0};
spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[0]);
```

spi_i2s_data_receive

The description of spi_i2s_data_receive is shown as below:

Table 3-616. Function spi_i2s_data_receive

Function name	spi_i2s_data_receive
Function prototype	uint16_t spi_i2s_data_receive(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI receive data

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	16-bit data

Example:

```
/* SPI0 receive data */
```

```
uint16_t spi0_receive_data;
```

```
spi0_receive_data = spi_i2s_data_receive(SPI0);
```

spi_bidirectional_transfer_config

The description of spi_bidirectional_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-617. Function spi_bidirectional_transfer_config

Function name	spi_bidirectional_transfer_config
Function prototype	void spi_bidirectional_transfer_config(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t transfer_direction);
Function descriptions	configure SPI bidirectional transfer direction
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
transfer_direction	SPI transfer direction
SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_TRANSMIT	SPI work in transmit-only mode

<i>SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_RECEIVE</i>	SPI work in receive-only mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 works in transmit-only mode */
spi_bidirectional_transfer_config(SPI0, SPI_BIDIRECTIONAL_TRANSMIT);
```

spi_crc_polynomial_set

The description of spi_crc_polynomial_set is shown as below:

Table 3-618. Function spi_crc_polynomial_set

Function name	spi_crc_polynomial_set
Function prototype	void spi_crc_polynomial_set(uint32_t spi_periph, uint16_t crc_poly);
Function descriptions	set SPI CRC polynomial
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
crc_poly	CRC polynomial value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set SPI0 CRC polynomial */
```

```
spi_crc_polynomial_set(SPI0,CRC_VALUE);
```

spi_crc_polynomial_get

The description of spi_crc_polynomial_get is shown as below:

Table 3-619. Function spi_crc_polynomial_get

Function name	spi_crc_polynomial_get
Function prototype	uint16_t spi_crc_polynomial_get(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	get SPI CRC polynomial
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	16-bit CRC polynomial (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 CRC polynomial */
uint16_t crc_val;
crc_val = spi_crc_polynomial_get(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_on

The description of spi_crc_on is shown as below:

Table 3-620. Function spi_crc_on

Function name	spi_crc_on
Function prototype	void spi_crc_on(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	turn on CRC function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn on SPI0 CRC function */
```

```
spi_crc_on(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_off

The description of spi_crc_off is shown as below:

Table 3-621. Function spi_crc_off

Function name	spi_crc_off
Function prototype	void spi_crc_off(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	turn off CRC function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* turn off SPI0 CRC function */
```

```
spi_crc_off(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_next

The description of spi_crc_next is shown as below:

Table 3-622. Function spi_crc_next

Function name	spi_crc_next
Function prototype	void spi_crc_next(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	SPI next data is CRC value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* SPI0 next data is CRC value */
```

```
spi_crc_next(SPI0);
```

spi_crc_get

The description of spi_crc_get is shown as below:

Table 3-623. Function spi_crc_get

Function name	spi_crc_get
Function prototype	uint16_t spi_crc_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t crc);
Function descriptions	get SPI CRC send value or receive value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral

<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
crc	SPI crc value
<i>SPI_CRC_TX</i>	get transmit crc value
<i>SPI_CRC_RX</i>	get receive crc value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	16-bit CRC value (0-0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* get SPI0 CRC send value */
```

```
uint16_t crc_val;
```

```
crc_val = spi_crc_get(SPI0, SPI_CRC_TX);
```

spi_ti_mode_enable

The description of spi_ti_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-624. Function spi_ti_mode_enable

Function name	spi_ti_mode_enable
Function prototype	void spi_ti_mode_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable SPI TI mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 TI mode */
spi_ti_mode_enable(SPI0);
```

spi_ti_mode_disable

The description of spi_ti_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-625. Function spi_ti_mode_disable

Function name	spi_ti_mode_disable
Function prototype	void spi_ti_mode_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable SPI TI mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 TI mode */
spi_ti_mode_disable(SPI0);
```

spi_nssp_mode_enable

The description of spi_nssp_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-626. Function spi_nssp_mode_enable

Function name	spi_nssp_mode_enable
Function prototype	void spi_nssp_mode_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable SPI NSS pulse mode
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 NSS pulse mode */
```

```
spi_nssp_mode_enable(SPI0);
```

spi_nssp_mode_disable

The description of spi_nssp_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-627. Function spi_nssp_mode_disable

Function name	spi_nssp_mode_disable
Function prototype	void spi_nssp_mode_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable SPI NSS pulse mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 NSS pulse mode */
```

```
spi_nssp_mode_disable(SPI0);
```

qspi_enable

The description of qspi_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-628. Function qspi_enable

Function name	qspi_enable
Function prototype	void qspi_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable quad wire SPI
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 quad wire mode */
```

```
qspi_enable(SPI0);
```

qspi_disable

The description of qspi_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-629. Function qspi_disable

Function name	qspi_disable
Function prototype	qspi_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable quad wire SPI
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 quad wire mode */
```

```
qspi_disable(SPI0);
```

qspi_write_enable

The description of qspi_write_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-630. Function qspi_write_enable

Function name	qspi_write_enable
Function prototype	void qspi_write_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable quad wire SPI write
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 quad wire write */
```

```
qspi_write_enable(SPI0);
```

qspi_read_enable

The description of qspi_read_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-631. Function qspi_read_enable

Function name	qspi_read_enable
Function prototype	void qspi_read_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable quad wire SPI read
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 quad wire read */
```

```
qspi_read_enable(SPI0);
```

qspi_io23_output_enable

The description of qspi_io23_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-632. Function qspi_io23_output_enable

Function name	qspi_io23_output_enable
Function prototype	void qspi_io23_output_enable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	enable SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral

<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output */
```

```
qspi_io23_output_enable(SPI0);
```

qspi_io23_output_disable

The description of qspi_io23_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-633. Function qspi_io23_output_disable

Function name	qspi_io23_output_disable
Function prototype	void qspi_io23_output_disable(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	disable SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 SPI_IO2 and SPI_IO3 pin output */
```

```
qspi_io23_output_disable(SPI0);
```

spi_i2s_interrupt_enable

The description of spi_i2s_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-634. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_enable

Function name	spi_i2s_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_interrupt_enable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable SPI and I2S interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	SPI/I2S interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_TBE	transmit buffer empty interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_RBNE	receive buffer not empty interrupt
SPI_I2S_INT_ERR	CRC error, configuration error, reception overrun error, transmission underrun error and format error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt */
spi_i2s_interrupt_enable(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_TBE);
```

spi_i2s_interrupt_disable

The description of spi_i2s_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-635. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_disable

Function name	spi_i2s_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void spi_i2s_interrupt_disable(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable SPI and I2S interrupt
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	SPI/I2S interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_ERR</i>	CRC error, configuration error, reception overrun error, transmission underrun error and format error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt */
spi_i2s_interrupt_disable(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_TBE);
```

spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get

The description of spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-636. Function spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint8_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	get SPI and I2S interrupt flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2

Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	SPI/I2S interrupt flag status
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RXORERR</i>	overrun interrupt
<i>SPI_INT_FLAG_CONFIGERR</i>	config error interrupt
<i>SPI_INT_FLAG_CRCERR</i>	CRC error interrupt
<i>I2S_INT_FLAG_TXURERR</i>	underrun error interrupt
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_FORMATERR</i>	format error interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get SPI0 transmit buffer empty interrupt status */
if(RESET != spi_i2s_interrupt_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_TBE)){
    while(RESET == spi_i2s_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_FLAG_TBE));
    spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n++]);
}

```

spi_i2s_flag_get

The description of spi_i2s_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-637. Function spi_i2s_flag_get

Function name	spi_i2s_flag_get
----------------------	------------------

Function prototype	FlagStatus spi_i2s_flag_get(uint32_t spi_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get SPI and I2S flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
<i>SPIx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
flag	SPI/I2S flag status
<i>SPI_FLAG_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_TRANS</i>	transmit on-going flag
<i>SPI_I2S_INT_FLAG_RXORERR</i>	receive overrun error flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_CONFERR</i>	mode config error flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_CRCERR</i>	CRC error flag
<i>SPI_FLAG_FREE</i>	format error flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_TBE</i>	transmit buffer empty flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_RBNE</i>	receive buffer not empty flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_TRANS</i>	transmit on-going flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_RXORERR</i>	overrun error flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_TXURERR</i>	underrun error flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_CH</i>	channel side flag
<i>I2S_FLAG_FERR</i>	format error flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```

/* get SPI0 transmit buffer empty flag status */

while(RESET == spi_i2s_flag_get(SPI0, SPI_FLAG_TBE));

spi_i2s_data_transmit(SPI0, spi0_send_array[send_n++]);

```

spi_crc_error_clear

The description of spi_crc_error_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-638. Function spi_crc_error_clear

Function name	spi_crc_error_clear
Function prototype	void spi_crc_error_clear(uint32_t spi_periph);
Function descriptions	clear SPI CRC error flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
spi_periph	SPI peripheral
SPIx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* clear SPI0 CRC error flag status */

spi_crc_error_clear(SPI0);

```

3.23. TIMER

The timers have a 16-bit counter that can be used as an unsigned counter and supports both input capture and output compare. Timers (TIMERx) are divided into five sorts: advanced timer (TIMERx, x=0, 7), general level0 timer (TIMERx, x=1, 2, 3, 4), general level1 timer (TIMERx, x=8, 11), general level2 timer (TIMERx, x=9, 10, 12, 13), Basic timer (TIMERx, x=5, 6). The specific functions of different types of timer are different. The TIMER registers are listed in chapter [3.23.1](#), the TIMER firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.23.2](#).

3.23.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

TIMERx registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-639. TIMERx Registers

Registers	Descriptions
TIMER_CTL0	Control register 0
TIMER_CTL1	Control register 1
TIMER_SMCFG	Slave mode configuration register
TIMER_DMAINTEN	DMA and interrupt enable register
TIMER_INTF	Interrupt flag register
TIMER_SWEVG	Software event generation register
TIMER_CHCTL0	Channel control register 0
TIMER_CHCTL1	Channel control register 1
TIMER_CHCTL2	Channel control register 2
TIMER_CNT	Counter register
TIMER_PSC	Prescaler register
TIMER_CAR	Counter auto reload register
TIMER_CREP	Counter repetition register
TIMER_CH0CV	Channel 0 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CH1CV	Channel 1 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CH2CV	Channel 2 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CH3CV	Channel 3 capture/compare value register
TIMER_CCHP	Channel complementary protection register
TIMER_DMACFG	DMA configuration register
TIMER_DMATB	DMA transfer buffer register
TIMER_CFG	Configuration register

3.23.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

The description format of firmware functions are shown as below:

Table 3-640. TIMERx firmware function

Function name	Function description
timer_deinit	deinit a timer
timer_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER init parameter struct with the default values
timer_init	initialize TIMER counter
timer_enable	enable a timer
timer_disable	disable a timer
timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable	enable the auto reload shadow function
timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable	disable the auto reload shadow function
timer_update_event_enable	enable the update event
timer_update_event_disable	disable the update event
timer_counter_alignment	set TIMER counter alignment mode
timer_counter_up_direction	set TIMER counter up direction
timer_counter_down_direction	set TIMER counter down direction
timer_prescaler_config	configure TIMER prescaler
timer_repetition_value_config	configure TIMER repetition register value
timer_autoreload_value_config	configure TIMER autoreload register value
timer_counter_value_config	configure TIMER counter register value
timer_counter_read	read TIMER counter value
timer_prescaler_read	read TIMER prescaler value
timer_single_pulse_mode_config	configure TIMER single pulse mode
timer_update_source_config	configure TIMER update source
timer_dma_enable	enable the TIMER DMA
timer_dma_disable	disable the TIMER DMA
timer_channel_dma_request_source_select	channel DMA request source selection
timer_dma_transfer_config	configure the TIMER DMA transfer
timer_event_software_generate	software generate events

Function name	Function description
timer_break_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER break parameter struct with the default values
timer_break_config	configure TIMER break function
timer_break_enable	enable TIMER break function
timer_break_disable	disable TIMER break function
timer_automatic_output_enable	enable TIMER output automatic function
timer_automatic_output_disable	disable TIMER output automatic function
timer_primary_output_config	configure TIMER primary output function
timer_channel_control_shadow_config	channel capture/compare control shadow register enable
timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config	configure TIMER channel control shadow register up date control
timer_channel_output_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel output parameter struct with the default values
timer_channel_output_config	configure TIMER channel output function
timer_channel_output_mode_config	configure TIMER channel output compare mode
timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config	configure TIMER channel output pulse value
timer_channel_output_shadow_config	configure TIMER channel output shadow function
timer_channel_output_fast_config	configure TIMER channel output fast function
timer_channel_output_clear_config	configure TIMER channel output clear function
timer_channel_output_polarity_config	configure TIMER channel output polarity
timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config	configure TIMER channel complementary output polarity
timer_channel_output_state_config	configure TIMER channel enable state
timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config	configure TIMER channel complementary output enable state
timer_channel_input_struct_para_init	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel input parameter struct with the default values

Function name	Function description
timer_input_capture_config	configure TIMER input capture parameter
timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config	configure TIMER channel input capture prescaler value
timer_channel_capture_value_register_read	read TIMER channel capture compare register value
timer_input_pwm_capture_config	configure TIMER input pwm capture function
timer_hall_mode_config	configure TIMER hall sensor mode
timer_input_trigger_source_select	select TIMER input trigger source
timer_master_output_trigger_source_select	select TIMER master mode output trigger source
timer_slave_mode_select	select TIMER slave mode
timer_master_slave_mode_config	configure TIMER master slave mode
timer_external_trigger_config	configure TIMER external trigger input
timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config	configure TIMER quadrature decoder mode
timer_internal_clock_config	configure TIMER internal clock mode
timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config	configure TIMER the internal trigger as external clock input
timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config	configure TIMER the external trigger as external clock input
timer_external_clock_mode0_config	configure TIMER the external clock mode 0
timer_external_clock_mode1_config	configure TIMER the external clock mode 1
timer_external_clock_mode1_disable	disable TIMER the external clock mode 1
timer_write_chxval_register_config	configure TIMER write CHxVAL register selection
timer_output_value_selection_config	configure TIMER output value selection
timer_interrupt_enable	enable the TIMER interrupt
timer_interrupt_disable	disable the TIMER interrupt
timer_interrupt_flag_get	get timer interrupt flag

Function name	Function description
timer_interrupt_flag_clear	clear TIMER interrupt flag
timer_flag_get	get TIMER flags
timer_flag_clear	clear TIMER flags

Structure timer_parameter_struct

Table 3-641. Structure timer_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
prescaler	prescaler value (0~65535)
alignedmode	aligned mode (TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_DOWN, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_UP, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_BOTH)
counterdirection	counter direction (TIMER_COUNTER_UP, TIMER_COUNTER_DOWN)
period	period value (0~65535)
clockdivision	clock division value (TIMER_CKDIV_DIV1, TIMER_CKDIV_DIV2, TIMER_CKDIV_DIV4)
repetitioncounter	the counter repetition value (0~255)

Structure timer_break_parameter_struct

Table 3-642. Structure timer_break_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
runoffstate	run mode off-state (TIMER_ROS_STATE_ENABLE, TIMER_ROS_STATE_DISABLE)
idloffstate	idle mode off-state (TIMER_IOS_STATE_ENABLE, TIMER_IOS_STATE_DISABLE)
deadtime	dead time (0~255)
breakpolarity	break polarity (TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_LOW, TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_HIGH)
outputautostate	output automatic enable (TIMER_OUTAUTO_ENABLE, TIMER_OUTAUTO_DISABLE)
protectmode	complementary register protect control (TIMER_CCHP_PROT_OFF, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_0, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_1, TIMER_CCHP_PROT_2)
breakstate	break enable (TIMER_BREAK_ENABLE, TIMER_BREAK_DISABLE)

Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct

Table 3-643. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
outputstate	channel output state (TIMER_CCX_ENABLE, TIMER_CCX_DISABLE)
outputnstate	channel complementary output state (TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE, TIMER_CCXN_DISABLE)
ocpolarity	channel output polarity (TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH, TIMER_OC_POLARITY_LOW)
ocnpolarity	channel complementary output polarity (TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH, TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_LOW)
ocidlestate	idle state of channel output (TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_LOW, TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_HIGH)
ocnidlestate	idle state of channel complementary output (TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_LOW, TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_HIGH)

Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct

Table 3-644. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct

Member name	Function description
icpolarity	channel input polarity (TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_BOTH_EDGE)
icselection	channel input mode selection (TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTI, TIMER_IC_SELECTION_INDIRECTTI, TIMER_IC_SELECTION_ITS)
icprescaler	channel input capture prescaler (TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV4, TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV8)
icfilter	channel input capture filter control (0~15)

timer_deinit

The description of timer_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-645. Function timer_deinit

Function name	timer_deinit
Function prototype	void timer_deinit(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	deinit a TIMER

Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable/rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset TIMER0 */
```

```
timer_deinit (TIMER0);
```

timer_struct_para_init

The description of timer_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-646. Function timer_struct_para_init

Function name	timer_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void timer_struct_para_init(timer_parameter_struct* initpara);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of TIMER init parameter struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
initpara	TIMER init parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-641. Structure timer parameter struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER init parameter struct with a default value */
```

```
timer_parameter_struct timer_initpara;
```

```
timer_struct_para_init(timer_initpara);
```

timer_init

The description of timer_init is shown as below:

Table 3-647. Function timer_init

Function name	timer_init
Function prototype	void timer_init(uint32_t timer_periph, timer_parameter_struct* initpara);
Function descriptions	initialize TIMER counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
initpara	TIMER init parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-641. Structure timer parameter struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER0 */
```

```
timer_parameter_struct timer_initpara;
```

```
timer_initpara.prescaler = 107;
```

```
timer_initpara.alignedmode = TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE;
```

```
timer_initpara.counterdirection = TIMER_COUNTER_UP;
```

```
timer_initpara.period = 999;
```

```
timer_initpara.clockdivision = TIMER_CKDIV_DIV1;
```

```
timer_initpara.repetitioncounter = 1;
```

```
timer_init(TIMER0,&timer_initpara);
```

timer_enable

The description of timer_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-648. Function timer_enable

Function name	timer_enable
Function prototype	void timer_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable a timer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 */
```

```
timer_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_disable

The description of timer_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-649. Function timer_disable

Function name	timer_disable
Function prototype	void timer_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable a timer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 */
```

```
timer_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable

The description of timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-650. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable

Function name	timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable
Function prototype	void timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable the auto reload shadow function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 auto reload shadow function */
```

```
timer_auto_reload_shadow_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable

The description of timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-651. Function timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable

Function name	timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable
Function prototype	void timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable the auto reload shadow function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 auto reload shadow function */
```

```
timer_auto_reload_shadow_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_update_event_enable

The description of timer_update_event_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-652. Function timer_update_event_enable

Function name	timer_update_event_enable
Function prototype	void timer_update_event_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable the update event
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral

<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 the update event */
timer_update_event_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_update_event_disable

The description of timer_update_event_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-653. Function timer_update_event_disable

Function name	timer_update_event_disable
Function prototype	void timer_update_event_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable the update event
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 the update event */
timer_update_event_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_counter_alignment

The description of timer_counter_alignment is shown as below:

Table 3-654. Function timer_counter_alignment

Function name	timer_counter_alignment
Function prototype	void timer_counter_alignment(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t aligned);
Function descriptions	set TIMER counter alignment mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMEx(x=0..4,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
aligned	alignment mode
TIMER_COUNTER_EDGE	No center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode). The direction of the counter is specified by the DIR bit.
TIMER_COUNTER_CENTR_DOWN	Center-aligned and counting down assert mode. The counter counts under center aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMEx_CHCTL0 register). Only when the counter is counting down, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
TIMER_COUNTER_CENTR_UP	Center-aligned and counting up assert mode. The counter counts under center aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMEx_CHCTL0 register). Only when the counter is counting up, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
TIMER_COUNTER_CENTR_BOTH	Center-aligned and counting up/down assert mode. The counter counts under center-aligned and channel is configured in output mode (CHxMS=00 in TIMEx_CHCTL0 register). Both when the counter is counting up and counting down, compare interrupt flag of channels can be set.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter center-aligned and counting up assert mode */
```

```
timer_counter_alignment (TIMER0, TIMER_COUNTER_CENTER_UP);
```

timer_counter_up_direction

The description of timer_counter_up_direction is shown as below:

Table 3-655. Function timer_counter_up_direction

Function name	timer_counter_up_direction
Function prototype	void timer_counter_up_direction(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	set TIMER counter up direction
Precondition	set TIMER counter no center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode)
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter up direction */
timer_counter_up_direction (TIMER0);
```

timer_counter_down_direction

The description of timer_counter_down_direction is shown as below:

Table 3-656. Function timer_counter_down_direction

Function name	timer_counter_down_direction
Function prototype	void timer_counter_down_direction(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	set TIMER counter down direction
Precondition	set TIMER counter no center-aligned mode (edge-aligned mode)
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral

<i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set TIMER0 counter down direction */
```

```
timer_counter_down_direction (TIMER0);
```

timer_prescaler_config

The description of timer_prescaler_config is shown as below:

Table 3-657. Function timer_prescaler_config

Function name	timer_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void timer_prescaler_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t prescaler, uint8_t pscreload);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER prescaler
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	prescaler value (0~65535)
Input parameter{in}	
pscreload	prescaler reload mode
<i>TIMER_PSC_RELOAD_NOW</i>	the prescaler is loaded right now
<i>TIMER_PSC_RELOAD_UPDATE</i>	the prescaler is loaded at the next update event
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMERO prescaler */
```

```
timer_prescaler_config (TIMER0, 3000, TIMER_PSC_RELOAD_NOW);
```

timer_repetition_value_config

The description of timer_repetition_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-658. Function timer_repetition_value_config

Function name	timer_repetition_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_repetition_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t repetition);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER repetition register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
repetition	the counter repetition value (0~255)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMERO repetition register value */
```

```
timer_repetition_value_config (TIMER0, 98);
```

timer_autoreload_value_config

The description of timer_autoreload_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-659. Function timer_autoreload_value_config

Function name	timer_autoreload_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_autoreload_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t autoreload);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER autoreload register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
autoreload	the counter auto-reload value (0-0xFFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER autoreload register value */
timer_autoreload_value_config (TIMER0, 3000);
```

timer_counter_value_config

The description of timer_counter_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-660. Function timer_counter_value_config

Function name	timer_counter_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_counter_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t counter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER counter register value
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
counter	the counter value (0-0xFFFF)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 counter register value */
```

```
timer_counter_value_config (TIMER0);
```

timer_counter_read

The description of timer_counter_read is shown as below:

Table 3-661. Function timer_counter_read

Function name	timer_counter_read
Function prototype	uint32_t timer_counter_read(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	read TIMER counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	counter value(0x0000~0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 counter value */

uint32_t i = 0;

i = timer_counter_read (TIMER0);
```

timer_prescaler_read

The description of timer_prescaler_read is shown as below:

Table 3-662. Function timer_prescaler_read

Function name	timer_prescaler_read
Function prototype	uint16_t timer_prescaler_read(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	read TIMER prescaler value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint16_t	prescaler register value (0x0000~0xFFFF)

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 prescaler value */

uint16_t i = 0;

i = timer_prescaler_read (TIMER0);
```

timer_single_pulse_mode_config

The description of timer_single_pulse_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-663. Function timer_single_pulse_mode_config

Function name	timer_single_pulse_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_single_pulse_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t

	spmode);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER single pulse mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
spmode	pulse mode
<i>TIMER_SP_MODE_SINGLE</i>	single pulse mode
<i>TIMER_SP_MODE_REPETITIVE</i>	repetitive pulse mode
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 single pulse mode */
```

```
timer_single_pulse_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_SP_MODE_SINGLE);
```

timer_update_source_config

The description of timer_update_source_config is shown as below:

Table 3-664. Function timer_update_source_config

Function name	timer_update_source_config
Function prototype	void timer_update_source_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t update);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER update source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..13)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
update	update source
<i>TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_GLOBAL</i>	Any of the following events generate an update interrupt or DMA request: - The UPG bit is set - The counter generates an overflow or underflow event - The slave mode controller generates an update event
<i>TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_REGULAR</i>	Only counter overflow/underflow generates an update interrupt or DMA request.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER update only by counter overflow/underflow */
```

```
timer_update_source_config (TIMER0, TIMER_UPDATE_SRC_REGULAR);
```

timer_dma_enable

The description of timer_dma_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-665. Function timer_dma_enable

Function name	timer_dma_enable
Function prototype	void timer_dma_enable(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t dma);
Function descriptions	enable the TIMER DMA
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	

dma	timer DMA source enable
<i>TIMER_DMA_UPD</i>	update DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH0D</i>	channel 0 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH1D</i>	channel 1 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH2D</i>	channel 2 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH3D</i>	channel 3 DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_CMTD</i>	commutation DMA request enable, TIMERx(x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_DMA_TRGD</i>	trigger DMA enable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 update DMA */
```

```
timer_dma_enable (TIMER0, TIMER_DMA_UPD);
```

timer_dma_disable

The description of timer_dma_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-666. Function timer_dma_disable

Function name	timer_dma_disable
Function prototype	void timer_dma_disable (uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t dma);
Function descriptions	disable the TIMER DMA
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
dma	timer DMA source disable

<i>TIMER_DMA_UPD</i>	update DMA disable, $TIMERx(x=0..7)$
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH0D</i>	channel 0 DMA disable, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7)$
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH1D</i>	channel 1 DMA disable, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7)$
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH2D</i>	channel 2 DMA disable, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7)$
<i>TIMER_DMA_CH3D</i>	channel 3 DMA disable, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7)$
<i>TIMER_DMA_CMTD</i>	commutation DMA request disable, $TIMERx(x=0,7)$
<i>TIMER_DMA_TRGD</i>	trigger DMA disable, $TIMERx(x=0..4,7)$
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 update DMA */
```

```
timer_dma_disable (TIMER0, TIMER_DMA_UPD);
```

timer_channel_dma_request_source_select

The description of timer_channel_dma_request_source_select is shown as below:

Table 3-667. Function timer_channel_dma_request_source_select

Function name	timer_channel_dma_request_source_select
Function prototype	void timer_channel_dma_request_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t dma_request);
Function descriptions	channel DMA request source selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
dma_request	channel DMA request source selection

<i>TIMER_DMAREQUEST_CHANNELEVENT</i>	DMA request of channel n is sent when channel y event occurs
<i>TIMER_DMAREQUEST_UPDATEEVENT</i>	DMA request of channel n is sent when update event occurs
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* TIMER0 channel DMArequest of channel n is sent when channel y event occurs */
```

```
timer_channel_dma_request_source_select(TIMER0,  
TIMER_DMAREQUEST_CHANNELEVENT);
```

timer_dma_transfer_config

The description of timer_dma_transfer_config is shown as below:

Table 3-668. Function timer_dma_transfer_config

Function name	timer_dma_transfer_config
Function prototype	void timer_dma_transfer_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t dma_baseaddr, uint32_t dma_lenth);
Function descriptions	configure the TIMER DMA transfer
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
dma_baseaddr	DMA transfer access start address
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CTL0</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CTL0, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA_TA_CTL1</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_CTL1, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)

<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_SMCFG</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_SMCFG</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_DMAINTEN</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_DMAINTEN</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_INTF</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_INTF</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_SWEVG</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_SWEVG</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CHCTL0</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CHCTL0</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CHCTL1</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CHCTL1</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CHCTL2</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CHCTL2</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CNT</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CNT</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_PSC</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_PSC</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CAR</i>	MA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CAR</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CREP</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CREP</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CH0CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH0CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CH1CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH1CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CH2CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH2CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CH3CV</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CH3CV</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_CCHP</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_CCHP</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA</i> <i>TA_DMACFG</i>	DMA transfer address is <i>TIMER_DMACFG</i> , <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)

<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TA_DMATB</i>	DMA transfer address is TIMER_DMATB, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
Input parameter{in}	
dma_lenth	DMA transfer count
<i>TIMER_DMACFG_DMA TC_xTRANSFER</i>	x=1..18, DMA transfer x time
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure the TIMER0 DMA transfer */
```

```
timer_dma_transfer_config(TIMER0,TIMER_DMACFG_DMATA_CTL0,  
TIMER_DMACFG_DMATC_5TRANSFER);
```

timer_event_software_generate

The description of timer_event_software_generate is shown as below:

Table 3-669. Function timer_event_software_generate

Function name	timer_event_software_generate
Function prototype	void timer_event_software_generate(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t event);
Function descriptions	software generate events
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
event	the timer software event generation sources
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_UPG</i>	update event, TIMERx(x=0..13)

<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C</i> <i>H0G</i>	channel 0 capture or compare event generation, <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C</i> <i>H1G</i>	channel 1 capture or compare event generation, <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C</i> <i>H2G</i>	channel 2 capture or compare event generation, <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C</i> <i>H3G</i>	channel 3 capture or compare event generation, <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_C</i> <i>MTG</i>	channel commutation event generation, <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0,7)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_T</i> <i>RGG</i>	trigger event generation, <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_EVENT_SRC_B</i> <i>RKG</i>	break event generation, <i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0,7)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* software generate update event*/
```

```
timer_event_software_generate (TIMER0, TIMER_EVENT_SRC_UPG);
```

timer_break_struct_para_init

The description of `timer_break_struct_para_init` is shown as below:

Table 3-670. Function `timer_break_struct_para_init`

Function name	<code>timer_break_struct_para_init</code>
Function prototype	<code>void timer_break_struct_para_init(timer_break_parameter_struct* breakpara);</code>
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of <code>TIMER break parameter struct</code> with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
breakpara	TIMER break parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-642. Structure timer break parameter struct.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* initialize TIMER break parameter struct with a default value */

timer_break_parameter_struct timer_breakpara;

timer_break_struct_para_init(&timer_breakpara);

```

timer_break_config

The description of timer_break_config is shown as below:

Table 3-671. Function timer_break_config

Function name	timer_break_config
Function prototype	void timer_break_config(uint32_t timer_periph, timer_break_parameter_struct* breakpara);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER break function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
breakpara	TIMER break parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-642. Structure timer break parameter struct.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 break function */

timer_break_parameter_struct timer_breakpara;

timer_breakpara.runoffstate      = TIMER_ROS_STATE_DISABLE;
timer_breakpara.ideloffstate     = TIMER_IOS_STATE_DISABLE;
timer_breakpara.deadtime        = 255;
timer_breakpara.breakpolarity   = TIMER_BREAK_POLARITY_LOW;
timer_breakpara.outputautostate = TIMER_OUTAUTO_ENABLE;
timer_breakpara.protectmode      = TIMER_CCHP_PROT_0;
timer_breakpara.breakstate      = TIMER_BREAK_ENABLE;

timer_break_config(TIMER0, &timer_breakpara);
```

timer_break_enable

The description of timer_break_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-672. Function timer_break_enable

Function name	timer_break_enable
Function prototype	void timer_break_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable TIMER break function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 break function*/
```

```
timer_break_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_break_disable

The description of timer_break_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-673. Function timer_break_disable

Function name	timer_break_disable
Function prototype	void timer_break_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable TIMER break function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 break function*/
```

```
timer_break_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_automatic_output_enable

The description of timer_automatic_output_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-674. Function timer_automatic_output_enable

Function name	timer_automatic_output_enable
Function prototype	void timer_automatic_output_enable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	enable TIMER output automatic function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 output automatic function */
```

```
timer_automatic_output_enable (TIMER0);
```

timer_automatic_output_disable

The description of timer_automatic_output_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-675. Function timer_automatic_output_disable

Function name	timer_automatic_output_disable
Function prototype	void timer_automatic_output_disable (uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable TIMER output automatic function
Precondition	This function can be called only when PROT [1:0] bit-filed in TIMERx_CCHP register is 00.
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 output automatic function */
```

```
timer_automatic_output_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_primary_output_config

The description of timer_primary_output_config is shown as below:

Table 3-676. Function timer_primary_output_config

Function name	timer_primary_output_config
Function prototype	void timer_primary_output_config(uint32_t timer_periph, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER primary output function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
<i>ENABLE</i>	enable function
<i>DISABLE</i>	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable TIMER0 primary output function */
```

```
timer_primary_output_config (TIMER0, ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_control_shadow_config

The description of timer_channel_control_shadow_config is shown as below:

Table 3-677. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_config

Function name	timer_channel_control_shadow_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_control_shadow_config(uint32_t timer_periph, ControlStatus newvalue);
Function descriptions	channel commutation control shadow register enable
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
newvalue	control value
ENABLE	enable function
DISABLE	disable function
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* channel capture/compare control shadow register enable */
```

```
timer_channel_control_shadow_config (TIMER0, ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config

The description of timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config is shown as below:

Table 3-678. Function timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config

Function name	timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t ccuctl);
Function descriptions	configure commutation control shadow register update control
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
ccuctl	channel control shadow register update control
TIMER_UPDATECTL_CCU	the shadow registers update by when CMTG bit is set
TIMER_UPDATECTL_CUTRI	the shadow registers update by when CMTG bit is set or an rising edge of TRGI occurs
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel control shadow register update when CMTG bit is set */
timer_channel_control_shadow_update_config (TIMER0, TIMER_UPDATECTL_CCU);
```

timer_channel_output_struct_para_init

The description of timer_channel_output_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-679. Function timer_channel_output_struct_para_init

Function name	timer_channel_output_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_struct_para_init(timer_oc_parameter_struct* ocpa);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel output parameter struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
ocpara	TIMER channel output parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-643. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct .

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER channel output parameter struct with a default value */
```

```
timer_oc_parameter_struct timer_ocinitpara;
```

```
timer_channel_output_struct_para_init(&timer_ocinitpara);
```

timer_channel_output_config

The description of timer_channel_output_config is shown as below:

Table 3-680. Function timer_channel_output_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_oc_parameter_struct* ocpa);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_CH_2	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
TIMER_CH_3	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
ocpara	TIMER channel output parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-643. Structure timer_oc_parameter_struct .

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output function */

timer_oc_parameter_struct timer_ocinitpara;

timer_ocinitpara.outputstate = TIMER_CCX_ENABLE;

timer_ocinitpara.outputnstate = TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE;

timer_ocinitpara.ocpolarity = TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH;

timer_ocinitpara.ocnpolarity = TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH;

timer_ocinitpara.ocidlestate = TIMER_OC_IDLE_STATE_HIGH;

timer_ocinitpara.ocnidlestate = TIMER_OCN_IDLE_STATE_LOW;

timer_channel_output_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_ocinitpara);

```

timer_channel_output_mode_config

The description of timer_channel_output_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-681. Function timer_channel_output_mode_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocmode);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output compare mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured

<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
ocmode	channel output compare mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_TIMING</i>	timing mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_ACTIVE</i>	set the channel output
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_INACTIVE</i>	clear the channel output
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_TOGGLE</i>	toggle on match
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_LOW</i>	force low mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_HIGH</i>	force high mode
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM0</i>	PWM mode 0
<i>TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM1</i>	PWM mode 1
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel PWM 0 mode */
timer_channel_output_mode_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_OC_MODE_PWM0);
```

timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config

The description of timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config is shown as below:

Table 3-682. Function timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint32_t pulse);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output pulse value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_CH_2	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
TIMER_CH_3	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
pulse	channel output pulse value (0~65535)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output pulse value */
timer_channel_output_pulse_value_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, 399);
```

timer_channel_output_shadow_config

The description of timer_channel_output_shadow_config is shown as below:

Table 3-683. Function timer_channel_output_shadow_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_shadow_config
---------------	------------------------------------

Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_shadow_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocshadow);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output shadow function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
ocshadow	channel output shadow state
<i>TIMER_OC_SHADOW_ENABLE</i>	channel output shadow state enable
<i>TIMER_OC_SHADOW_DISABLE</i>	channel output shadow state disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/*configure TIMER0 channel 0 output shadow function */
timer_channel_output_shadow_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TIMER_OC_SHADOW_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_output_fast_config

The description of timer_channel_output_fast_config is shown as below:

Table 3-684. Function timer_channel_output_fast_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_fast_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_fast_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocfast);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output fast function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
ocfast	channel output fast function
<i>TIMER_OC_FAST_ENABLE</i>	channel output fast function enable
<i>TIMER_OC_FAST_DISABLE</i>	channel output fast function disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output fast function */
```

timer_channel_output_fast_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_OC_FAST_ENABLE);

timer_channel_output_clear_config

The description of timer_channel_output_clear_config is shown as below:

Table 3-685. Function timer_channel_output_clear_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_clear_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_clear_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t occlear);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output clear function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER periphera
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	TIMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
occlear	channel output clear function
<i>TIMER_OC_CLEAR_ENABLE</i>	channel output clear function enable
<i>TIMER_OC_CLEAR_DISABLE</i>	channel output clear function disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output clear function */

timer_channel_output_clear_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TIMER_OC_CLEAR_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_output_polarity_config

The description of timer_channel_output_polarity_config is shown as below:

Table 3-686. Function timer_channel_output_polarity_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_polarity_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_polarity_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocpolarity);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel output polarity
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
ocpolarity	channel output polarity
<i>TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH</i>	channel output polarity is high
<i>TIMER_OC_POLARITY_LOW</i>	channel output polarity is low
Output parameter{out}	
-	-

Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 output polarity */
```

```
timer_channel_output_polarity_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_OC_POLARITY_HIGH);
```

timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config

The description of timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config is shown as below:

Table 3-687. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config

Function name	timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocnpolarity);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel complementary output polarity
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0,7)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1
TIMER_CH_2	TIMER channel 2
Input parameter{in}	
ocpolarity	channel complementary output polarity
TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH	channel complementary output polarity is high
TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_LOW	channel complementary output polarity is low

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 complementary output polarity */
```

```
timer_channel_complementary_output_polarity_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_OCN_POLARITY_HIGH);
```

timer_channel_output_state_config

The description of timer_channel_output_state_config is shown as below:

Table 3-688. Function timer_channel_output_state_config

Function name	timer_channel_output_state_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_output_state_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint32_t state);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel enable state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_CH_2	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
TIMER_CH_3	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
state	TIMER channel enable state
TIMER_CCX_ENABLE	channel enable

<i>TIMER_CCX_DISABLE</i>	channel disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 enable state */
```

```
timer_channel_output_state_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, TIMER_CCX_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config

The description of timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config is shown as below:

Table 3-689. Function timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config

Function name	timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t ocnstate);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel complementary output enable state
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2
Input parameter{in}	
state	TIMER channel complementary output enable state
<i>TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE</i>	channel complementary enable

<i>TIMER_CCXN_DISABLE</i>	channel complementary disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 complementary output enable state */
timer_channel_complementary_output_state_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,
TIMER_CCXN_ENABLE);
```

timer_channel_input_struct_para_init

The description of timer_channel_input_struct_para_init is shown as below:

Table 3-690. Function timer_channel_input_struct_para_init

Function name	timer_channel_input_struct_para_init
Function prototype	void timer_channel_input_struct_para_init(timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpara);
Function descriptions	initialize the parameters of TIMER channel input parameter struct with the default values
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
icpara	TIMER channel input parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-644. Structure timer ic parameter struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* initialize TIMER channel input parameter struct with a default value */
timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;
```

```
timer_channel_input_struct_para_init(timer_icinitpara);
```

timer_input_capture_config

The description of timer_input_capture_config is shown as below:

Table 3-691. Function timer_input_capture_config

Function name	timer_input_capture_config
Function prototype	void timer_input_capture_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpara);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER input capture parameter
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
<i>TIMER_CH_2</i>	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
<i>TIMER_CH_3</i>	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
icpara	TIMER channel input parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-644. Structure timer ic parameter struct.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 input capture parameter */
timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;
```

```

timer_icinitpara.icpolarity = TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING;

timer_icinitpara.icselection = TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTI;

timer_icinitpara.icprescaler = TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1;

timer_icinitpara.icfilter    = 0x0;

timer_input_capture_config(TIMERO, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_icinitpara);

```

timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config

The description of timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config is shown as below:

Table 3-692. Function timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config

Function name	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, uint16_t prescaler);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER channel input capture prescaler value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_CH_2	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
TIMER_CH_3	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	channel input capture prescaler value
TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1	no prescaler
TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2	divided by 2
TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV4	divided by 4
TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV8	divided by 8

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 channel 0 input capture prescaler value */
```

```
timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0,  
TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV2);
```

timer_channel_capture_value_register_read

The description of timer_channel_capture_value_register_read is shown as below:

Table 3-693. Function timer_channel_capture_value_register_read

Function name	timer_channel_capture_value_register_read
Function prototype	uint32_t timer_channel_capture_value_register_read(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel);
Function descriptions	read TIMER channel capture compare register value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
TIMER_CH_0	TIMER channel 0 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13))
TIMER_CH_1	TIMER channel 1 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_CH_2	TIMER channel 2 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
TIMER_CH_3	IMER channel 3 (TIMERx(x=0..4,7))
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

uint32_t	channel capture compare register value (0x0000~0xFFFF)
----------	--

Example:

```
/* read TIMER0 channel 0 capture compare register value */
```

```
uint32_t ch0_value = 0;
```

```
ch0_value = timer_channel_capture_value_register_read (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0);
```

timer_input_pwm_capture_config

The description of timer_input_pwm_capture_config is shown as below:

Table 3-694. Function timer_input_pwm_capture_config

Function name	timer_input_pwm_capture_config
Function prototype	void timer_input_pwm_capture_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t channel, timer_ic_parameter_struct* icpwm);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER input pwm capture function
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_channel_input_capture_prescaler_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i> (x=0..4,7,8,11)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
channel	channel to be configured
<i>TIMER_CH_0</i>	TIMER channel 0
<i>TIMER_CH_1</i>	TIMER channel 1
Input parameter{in}	
icpwm	TIMER channel input pwm parameter struct, the structure members can refer to Table 3-644. Structure timer_ic_parameter_struct .
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```

/* configure TIMER0 input pwm capture parameter */

timer_ic_parameter_struct timer_icinitpara;

timer_icinitpara.icpolarity = TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING;

timer_icinitpara.icselection = TIMER_IC_SELECTION_DIRECTTI;

timer_icinitpara.icprescaler = TIMER_IC_PSC_DIV1;

timer_icinitpara.icfilter = 0x0;

timer_input_pwm_capture_config (TIMER0, TIMER_CH_0, &timer_icinitpara);

```

timer_hall_mode_config

The description of timer_hall_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-695. Function timer_hall_mode_config

Function name	timer_hall_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_hall_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t hallmode);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER hall sensor mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
hallmode	TIMER hall sensor mode state
<i>TIMER_HALLINTERFA CE_ENABLE</i>	TIMER hall sensor mode enable
<i>TIMER_HALLINTERFA CE_DISABLE</i>	TIMER hall sensor mode disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 hall sensor mode */
```

```
timer_hall_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_HALLINTERFACE_ENABLE);
```

timer_input_trigger_source_select

The description of timer_input_trigger_source_select is shown as below:

Table 3-696. Function timer_input_trigger_source_select

Function name	timer_input_trigger_source_select
Function prototype	void timer_input_trigger_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t intrigger);
Function descriptions	select TIMER input trigger source
Precondition	SMC[2:0] = 000
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
intrigger	trigger selection
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI0	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI0, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI1	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI1, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI2	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI2, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_ITI3	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI3, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_CIOF_ED	CIO edge flag (CIOF_ED, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_CIOFE0	channel 0 input Filtered output (CIOFE0, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS EL_CI1FE1	channel 1 input Filtered output (CI1FE1, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11))
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS	External trigger input filter output(ETIFP, TIMERx(x=0..4,7))

<i>EL_ETIFP</i>	
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 input trigger source */
```

```
timer_input_trigger_source_select (TIMER0, TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_ITI0);
```

timer_master_output_trigger_source_select

The description of timer_master_output_trigger_source_select is shown as below:

Table 3-697. Function timer_master_output_trigger_source_select

Function name	timer_master_output_trigger_source_select
Function prototype	void timer_master_output_trigger_source_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t outrigger);
Function descriptions	select TIMER master mode output trigger source
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
outrigger	master mode control
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_RESET</i>	Reset. When the UPG bit in the <i>TIMERx_SWEVG</i> register is set or a reset is generated by the slave mode controller, a TRGO pulse occurs. And in the latter case, the signal on TRGO is delayed compared to the actual reset
<i>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_ENABLE</i>	Enable. This mode is useful to start several timers at the same time or to control a window in which a slave timer is enabled. In this mode the master mode controller selects the counter enable signal as TRGO. The counter enable signal is set when CEN control bit is set or the trigger input in pause mode is high. There is a delay between the trigger input in pause mode

	and the TRGO output, except if the master-slave mode is selected.
<code>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_UPDATE</code>	Update. In this mode the master mode controller selects the update event as TRGO.
<code>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_CC0</code>	Capture/compare pulse. In this mode the master mode controller generates a TRGO pulse when a capture or a compare match occurred in channel 0.
<code>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O0CPRE</code>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O0CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<code>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O1CPRE</code>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O1CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<code>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O2CPRE</code>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O2CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
<code>TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_O3CPRE</code>	Compare. In this mode the master mode controller selects the O3CPRE signal is used as TRGO.
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 master mode output trigger source */
```

```
timer_master_output_trigger_source_select (TIMER0, TIMER_TRI_OUT_SRC_RESET);
```

timer_slave_mode_select

The description of timer_slave_mode_select is shown as below:

Table 3-698. Function timer_slave_mode_select

Function name	timer_slave_mode_select
Function prototype	void timer_slave_mode_select(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t slavemode);
Function descriptions	select TIMER slave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral

<i>TIMERx</i> (<i>x</i> =0..4,7,8,11)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
slavemode	slave mode
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_DISABLE</i>	slave mode disable
<i>TIMER_ENCODER_MODE0</i>	encoder mode 0
<i>TIMER_ENCODER_MODE1</i>	encoder mode 1
<i>TIMER_ENCODER_MODE2</i>	encoder mode 2
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_RESTART</i>	restart mode
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_PAUSE</i>	pause mode
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_EVENT</i>	event mode
<i>TIMER_SLAVE_MODE_EXTERNAL0</i>	external clock mode 0
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* select TIMER0 slave mode */
```

```
timer_slave_mode_select (TIMER0, TIMER_ENCODER_MODE0);
```

timer_master_slave_mode_config

The description of timer_master_slave_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-699. Function timer_master_slave_mode_config

Function name	timer_master_slave_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_master_slave_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint8_t

	masterslave);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER master slave mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
masterslave	master slave mode state
<i>TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_ENABLE</i>	master slave mode enable
<i>TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_DISABLE</i>	master slave mode disable
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 master slave mode */
```

```
timer_master_slave_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_MASTER_SLAVE_MODE_ENABLE);
```

timer_external_trigger_config

The description of timer_external_trigger_config is shown as below:

Table 3-700. Function timer_external_trigger_config

Function name	timer_external_trigger_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_trigger_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER external trigger input
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
extprescaler	external trigger prescaler
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF</i>	no divided
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8</i>	divided by 8
Input parameter{in}	
expolarity	external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_ETP_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<i>TIMER_ETP_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
Input parameter{in}	
extfilter	external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 external trigger input */
```

```
timer_external_trigger_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,  
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 10);
```

timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config

The description of timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config is shown as below:

Table 3-701. Function timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config

Function name	timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config
Function prototype	void timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t decompode, uint16_t ic0polarity, uint16_t ic1polarity);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER quadrature decoder mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
decompode	quadrature decoder mode
<i>TIMER_ENCODER_MODE0</i>	counter counts on CI0FE0 edge depending on CI1FE1 level
<i>TIMER_ENCODER_MODE1</i>	counter counts on CI1FE1 edge depending on CI0FE0 level
<i>TIMER_ENCODER_MODE2</i>	counter counts on both CI0FE0 and CI1FE1 edges depending on the level of the other input
Input parameter{in}	
ic0polarity	IC0 polarity
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING</i>	capture rising edge
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING</i>	capture falling edge
Input parameter{in}	
ic1polarity	IC1 polarity
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING</i>	capture rising edge
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING</i>	capture falling edge
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 quadrature decoder mode */
```

```
timer_quadrature_decoder_mode_config (TIMER0, TIMER_ENCODER_MODE0,  
TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING);
```

timer_internal_clock_config

The description of timer_internal_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-702. Function timer_internal_clock_config

Function name	timer_internal_clock_config
Function prototype	void timer_internal_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER internal clock mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 internal clock mode */
```

```
timer_internal_clock_config (TIMER0);
```

timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config

The description of timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-703. Function timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config

Function name	timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config
Function prototype	void timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t intrigger);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the internal trigger as external clock input
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_input_trigger_source_select
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
intrigger	trigger selection
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI0</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI0)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI1</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI1)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI2</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI2)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_ITI3</i>	Internal trigger input 0 (ITI3)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the internal trigger ITI0 as external clock input */
```

```
timer_internal_trigger_as_external_clock_config (TIMER0, TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_ITI0);
```

timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config

The description of timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-704. Function timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config

Function name	timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extrigger, uint16_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the external trigger as external clock input
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_input_trigger_source_select
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
extrigger	external trigger selection
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_CIOF_ED</i>	CIO edge flag (CIOF_ED)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_CIOFE0</i>	channel 0 input Filtered output (CIOFE0)
<i>TIMER_SMCFG_TRGS_EL_C1FE1</i>	channel 1 input Filtered output (C1FE1)
Input parameter{in}	
expolarity	external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
<i>TIMER_IC_POLARITY_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
Input parameter{in}	
extfilter	external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external trigger CI0FE0 as external clock input */
```

```
timer_external_trigger_as_external_clock_config (TIMER0,  
TIMER_SMCFG_TRGSEL_CI0FE0, TIMER_IC_POLARITY_RISING, 0);
```

timer_external_clock_mode0_config

The description of timer_external_clock_mode0_config is shown as below:

Table 3-705. Function timer_external_clock_mode0_config

Function name	timer_external_clock_mode0_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_clock_mode0_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the external clock mode0
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_external_trigger_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
extprescaler	ETI external trigger prescaler
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF	no divided
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2	divided by 2
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4	divided by 4
TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV8	divided by 8
Input parameter{in}	
expolarity	ETI external trigger polarity
TIMER_ETP_FALLING	active low or falling edge active
TIMER_ETP_RISING	active high or rising edge active
Input parameter{in}	

extfilter	ETI external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external clock mode0 */
```

```
timer_external_clock_mode0_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 0);
```

timer_external_clock_mode1_config

The description of timer_external_clock_mode1_config is shown as below:

Table 3-706. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_config

Function name	timer_external_clock_mode1_config
Function prototype	void timer_external_clock_mode1_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t extprescaler, uint32_t expolarity, uint32_t extfilter);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER the external clock mode1
Precondition	-
The called functions	timer_external_trigger_config
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
extprescaler	ETI external trigger prescaler
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_OFF</i>	no divided
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2</i>	divided by 2
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV4</i>	divided by 4
<i>TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_</i>	divided by 8

<i>DIV8</i>	
Input parameter{in}	
expolarity	ETI external trigger polarity
<i>TIMER_ETP_FALLING</i>	active low or falling edge active
<i>TIMER_ETP_RISING</i>	active high or rising edge active
Input parameter{in}	
extfilter	ETI external trigger filter control (0~15)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 the external clock mode1 */
```

```
timer_external_clock_mode1_config (TIMER0, TIMER_EXT_TRI_PSC_DIV2,
TIMER_ETP_FALLING, 0);
```

timer_external_clock_mode1_disable

The description of timer_external_clock_mode1_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-707. Function timer_external_clock_mode1_disable

Function name	timer_external_clock_mode1_disable
Function prototype	void timer_external_clock_mode1_disable(uint32_t timer_periph);
Function descriptions	disable TIMER the external clock mode1
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* disable TIMER0 the external clock mode1 */
```

```
timer_external_clock_mode1_disable (TIMER0);
```

timer_write_chxval_register_config

The description of timer_write_chxval_register_config is shown as below:

Table 3-708. Function timer_write_chxval_register_config

Function name	timer_write_chxval_register_config
Function prototype	void timer_write_chxval_register_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t ccsel);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER write CHxVAL register selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
ccsel	write CHxVAL register selection
<i>TIMER_CHVSEL_DISABLE</i>	no effect
<i>TIMER_CHVSEL_ENABLE</i>	when write the CHxVAL register, if the write value is same as the CHxVAL value, the write access is ignored
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER0 write CHxVAL register selection */
```

```
timer_write_chxval_register_config(TIMER0, TIMER_CHVSEL_ENABLE);
```

timer_output_value_selection_config

The description of timer_output_value_selection_config is shown as below:

Table 3-709. Function timer_output_value_selection_config

Function name	timer_output_value_selection_config
Function prototype	void timer_output_value_selection_config(uint32_t timer_periph, uint16_t outsel);
Function descriptions	configure TIMER output value selection
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx (x=0,7)</i>	TIMER peripheral selection
Input parameter{in}	
outsel	output value selection
<i>TIMER_OUTSEL_DISABLE</i>	no effect
<i>TIMER_OUTSEL_ENABLE</i>	if POEN and IOS is 0, the output disabled
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure TIMER output value selection */
timer_output_value_selection_config(TIMERO, TIMER_OUTSEL_ENABLE);
```

timer_interrupt_enable

The description of timer_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-710. Function timer_interrupt_enable

Function name	timer_interrupt_enable
----------------------	------------------------

Function prototype	void timer_interrupt_enable(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable the TIMER interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	timer interrupt enable source
<i>TIMER_INT_UP</i>	update interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CMT</i>	commutation interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_BRK</i>	break interrupt enable, TIMERx (x=0,7)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable the TIMER0 update interrupt */
```

```
timer_interrupt_enable (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_UP);
```

timer_interrupt_disable

The description of timer_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-711. Function timer_interrupt_disable

Function name	timer_interrupt_disable
----------------------	-------------------------

Function prototype	void timer_interrupt_disable (uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable the TIMER interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	timer interrupt disable source
<i>TIMER_INT_UP</i>	update interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_CMT</i>	commutation interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_BRK</i>	break interrupt disable, TIMERx(x=0,7)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable the TIMER0 update interrupt */
```

```
timer_interrupt_disable (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_UP);
```

timer_interrupt_flag_get

The description of timer_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-712. Function timer_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	timer_interrupt_flag_get
----------------------	--------------------------

Function prototype	FlagStatus timer_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	get timer interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the timer interrupt bits
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP</i>	update interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_CMT</i>	channel commutation interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0,7)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0,7,8,11)
<i>TIMER_INT_FLAG_BRK</i>	break interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0,7)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get TIMER0 update interrupt flag */
```

```
FlagStatus Flag_interrupt = RESET;
```

```
Flag_interrupt = timer_interrupt_flag_get (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP);
```

timer_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of timer_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-713. Function timer_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	timer_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void timer_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t interrupt);
Function descriptions	clear TIMER interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	the timer interrupt bits
TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP	update interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..13)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH0	channel 0 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7..13)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH1	channel 1 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7,8,11)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH2	channel 2 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CH3	channel 3 interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0..4,7)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_CMT	channel commutation interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0,7)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_TRG	trigger interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0,7,8,11)
TIMER_INT_FLAG_BRK	break interrupt flag, TIMERx(x=0,7)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TIMER0 update interrupt flag */
timer_interrupt_flag_clear (TIMER0, TIMER_INT_FLAG_UP);
```

timer_flag_get

The description of timer_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-714. Function timer_flag_get

Function name	timer_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus timer_flag_get(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	get TIMER flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
TIMERx	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the timer interrupt flags
TIMER_FLAG_UP	update flag, TIMERx(x=0..13)
TIMER_FLAG_CH0	channel 0 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7..13)
TIMER_FLAG_CH1	channel 1 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7, 8, 11)
TIMER_FLAG_CH2	channel 2 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
TIMER_FLAG_CH3	channel 3 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
TIMER_FLAG_CMT	channel commutation flag, TIMERx(x=0, 7)
TIMER_FLAG_TRG	trigger flag, TIMERx(x=0, 7, 8, 11)
TIMER_FLAG_BRK	break flag, TIMERx(x=0, 7)
TIMER_FLAG_CH0O	channel 0 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7..11)
TIMER_FLAG_CH1O	channel 1 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7, 8, 11)
TIMER_FLAG_CH2O	channel 2 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
TIMER_FLAG_CH3O	channel 3 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get TIMER0 update flags */
```

```
FlagStatus Flag_status = RESET;
```

```
Flag_status = timer_flag_get (TIMER0, TIMER_FLAG_UP);
```

timer_flag_clear

The description of timer_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-715. Function timer_flag_clear

Function name	timer_flag_clear
Function prototype	void timer_flag_clear(uint32_t timer_periph, uint32_t flag);
Function descriptions	clear TIMER flags
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
timer_periph	TIMER peripheral
<i>TIMERx</i>	please refer to the following parameters
Input parameter{in}	
flag	the timer interrupt flags
<i>TIMER_FLAG_UP</i>	update flag, TIMERx(x=0..13)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0</i>	channel 0 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7..13)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1</i>	channel 1 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7, 8, 11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2</i>	channel 2 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3</i>	channel 3 flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CMT</i>	channel commutation flag, TIMERx(x=0, 7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_TRG</i>	trigger flag, TIMERx(x=0, 7, 8, 11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_BRK</i>	break flag, TIMERx(x=0, 7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH0O</i>	channel 0 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7..11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH1O</i>	channel 1 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7, 8, 11)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH2O</i>	channel 2 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
<i>TIMER_FLAG_CH3O</i>	channel 3 overcapture flag, TIMERx(x=0..4, 7)
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear TIMER0 update flags */
```

```
timer_flag_clear (TIMER0, TIMER_FLAG_UP);
```

3.24. USART

The Universal Synchronous/Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (USART) provides a flexible serial data exchange interface. The USART registers are listed in chapter [3.24.1](#), the USART firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.24.2](#).

3.24.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

USART registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-716. USART Registers

Registers	Descriptions
USART_STAT0	Status register 0
USART_DATA	Data register
USART_BAUD	Baud rate register
USART_CTL0	Control register 0
USART_CTL1	Control register 1
USART_CTL2	Control register 2
USART_GP	Guard time and prescaler register
USART_CTL3	Control register 3
USART_RT	Receiver timeout register
USART_STAT1	Status register 1

3.24.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

USART firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-717. USART firmware function

Function name	Function description
usart_deinit	reset USART/UART
usart_baudrate_set	configure USART baud rate value
usart_parity_config	configure USART parity
usart_word_length_set	configure USART word length
usart_stop_bit_set	configure USART stop bit length
usart_enable	enable USART
usart_disable	disable USART
usart_transmit_config	configure USART transmitter
usart_receive_config	configure USART receiver
usart_data_first_config	data is transmitted/received with the LSB/MSB first
usart_invert_config	configure USART inverted
usart_receiver_timeout_enable	enable receiver timeout
usart_receiver_timeout_disable	disable receiver timeout
usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config	configure receiver timeout threshold
usart_data_transmit	USART transmit data function
usart_data_receive	USART receive data function
usart_address_config	configure the address of the USART in wake up by address match mode
usart_mute_mode_enable	enable mute mode
usart_mute_mode_disable	disable mute mode
usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config	configure wakeup method in mute mode
usart_lin_mode_enable	enable LIN mode
usart_lin_mode_disable	disable LIN mode
usart_lin_break_dection_length_config	configure LIN break frame length
usart_send_break	send break frame
usart_halfduplex_enable	enable half duplex mode

Function name	Function description
usart_halfduplex_disable	disable half duplex mode
usart_synchronous_clock_enable	enable CK pin in synchronous mode
usart_synchronous_clock_disable	disable CK pin in synchronous mode
usart_synchronous_clock_config	configure USART synchronous mode parameters
usart_guard_time_config	configure guard time value in smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_enable	enable smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_disable	disable smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable	enable NACK in smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable	disable NACK in smartcard mode
usart_smartcard_autoretry_config	configure smartcard auto-retry number
usart_block_length_config	configure block length
usart_irda_mode_enable	enable IrDA mode
usart_irda_mode_disable	disable IrDA mode
usart_prescaler_config	configure the peripheral clock prescaler in USART IrDA low-power mode
usart_irda_lowpower_config	configure IrDA low-power
usart_hardware_flow_rts_config	configure hardware flow control RTS
usart_hardware_flow_cts_config	configure hardware flow control CTS
usart_dma_receive_config	configure USART DMA reception
usart_dma_transmit_config	configure USART DMA transmission
usart_flag_get	get flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
usart_flag_clear	clear flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
usart_interrupt_enable	enable USART interrupt
usart_interrupt_disable	disable USART interrupt
usart_interrupt_flag_get	get USART interrupt flag status
usart_interrupt_flag_clear	clear USART interrupt flag

usart_deinit

The description of usart_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-718. Function usart_deinit

Function name	usart_deinit
Function prototype	void usart_deinit(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	reset USART/UART
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset USART0 */
```

```
usart_deinit (USART0);
```

usart_baudrate_set

The description of usart_baudrate_set is shown as below:

Table 3-719. Function usart_baudrate_set

Function name	usart_baudrate_set
Function prototype	void usart_baudrate_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t baudval);
Function descriptions	configure USART baud rate value
Precondition	-
The called functions	rcu_periph_reset_enable / rcu_periph_reset_disable
Input parameter{in}	

usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
baudval	baud rate value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 baud rate value */
```

```
usart_baudrate_set(USART0, 115200);
```

usart_parity_config

The description of usart_parity_config is shown as below:

Table 3-720. Function usart_parity_config

Function name	usart_parity_config
Function prototype	void usart_parity_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t paritycfg);
Function descriptions	configure USART parity
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
paritycfg	configure USART parity
<i>USART_PM_NONE</i>	no parity
<i>USART_PM_ODD</i>	odd parity

<i>USART_PM_EVEN</i>	even parity
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART parity */
```

```
usart_parity_config(USART0, USART_PM_EVEN);
```

usart_word_length_set

The description of usart_word_length_set is shown as below:

Table 3-721. Function usart_word_length_set

Function name	usart_word_length_set
Function prototype	void usart_word_length_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t wlen);
Function descriptions	configure USART word length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
wlen	USART word length
<i>USART_WL_8BIT</i>	8 bits
<i>USART_WL_9BIT</i>	9 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 word length */
usart_word_length_set(USART0, USART_WL_9BIT);
```

usart_stop_bit_set

The description of usart_stop_bit_set is shown as below:

Table 3-722. Function usart_stop_bit_set

Function name	usart_stop_bit_set
Function prototype	void usart_stop_bit_set(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t stblen);
Function descriptions	configure USART stop bit length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
stblen	USART stop bit
USART_STB_1BIT	1 bit
USART_STB_0_5BIT	0.5 bit, not available for UARTx(x=3,4)
USART_STB_2BIT	2 bits
USART_STB_1_5BIT	1.5 bits, not available for UARTx(x=3,4)
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 stop bit length */
usart_stop_bit_set(USART0, USART_STB_1_5BIT);
```

usart_enable

The description of usart_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-723. Function usart_enable

Function name	usart_enable
Function prototype	void usart_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable USART
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 */
usart_enable(USART0);
```

usart_disable

The description of usart_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-724. Function usart_disable

Function name	usart_disable
Function prototype	void usart_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable USART
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	

usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 */
```

```
usart_disable(USART0);
```

usart_transmit_config

The description of usart_transmit_config is shown as below:

Table 3-725. Function usart_transmit_config

Function name	usart_transmit_config
Function prototype	void usart_transmit_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t txconfig);
Function descriptions	configure USART transmitter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
txconfig	enable or disable USART transmitter
<i>USART_TRANSMIT_ENABLE</i>	enable USART transmission
<i>USART_TRANSMIT_DISABLE</i>	enable USART transmission
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 transmitter */
```

```
usart_transmit_config(USART0,USART_TRANSMIT_ENABLE);
```

usart_receive_config

The description of usart_receive_config is shown as below:

Table 3-726. Function usart_receive_config

Function name	usart_receive_config
Function prototype	void usart_receive_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rxconfig);
Function descriptions	configure USART receiver
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
rxconfig	enable or disable USART receiver
USART_RECEIVE_ENABLE	enable USART reception
USART_RECEIVE_DISABLE	disable USART reception
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 receiver */
```

```
usart_receive_config(USART0, USART_RECEIVE_ENABLE);
```

usart_data_first_config

The description of usart_data_first_config is shown as below:

Table 3-727. Function usart_data_first_config

Function name	usart_data_first_config
Function prototype	void usart_data_first_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t msbf);
Function descriptions	data is transmitted/received with the LSB/MSB first
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
msbf	LSB first or MSB first
USART_MSBF_LSB	LSB first
USART_MSBF_MSB	MSB first
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure LSB of data first */
```

```
usart_data_first_config(USART0, USART_MSBF_LSB);
```

usart_invert_config

The description of usart_invert_config is shown as below:

Table 3-728. Function usart_invert_config

Function name	usart_invert_config
----------------------	---------------------

Function prototype	void usart_invert_config(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_invert_enum invertpara);
Function descriptions	configure USART inversion
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
invertpara	refer to enum usart_invert_enum
<i>USART_DINV_ENAB LE</i>	data bit level inversion
<i>USART_DINV_DISAB LE</i>	data bit level not inversion
<i>USART_TXPIN_ENAB LE</i>	TX pin level inversion
<i>USART_TXPIN_DISAB LE</i>	TX pin level not inversion
<i>USART_RXPIN_ENAB LE</i>	RX pin level inversion
<i>USART_RXPIN_DISAB LE</i>	RX pin level not inversion
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART inversion */
```

```
usart_invert_config(USART0, USART_DINV_ENABLE);
```

usart_receiver_timeout_enable

The description of usart_receiver_timeout_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-729. Function usart_receiver_timeout_enable

Function name	usart_receiver_timeout_enable
Function prototype	void usart_receiver_timeout_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable receiver timeout
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable receiver timeout of USART */
```

```
usart_receiver_timeout_enable(USART0);
```

usart_receiver_timeout_disable

The description of usart_receiver_timeout_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-730. Function usart_receiver_timeout_disable

Function name	usart_receiver_timeout_disable
Function prototype	void usart_receiver_timeout_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable receiver timeout
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral

USARTx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable receiver timeout of USART */
```

```
usart_receiver_timeout_disable(USART0);
```

usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config

The description of usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config is shown as below:

Table 3-731. Function usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config

Function name	usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config
Function prototype	void usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t timeout);
Function descriptions	configure receiver timeout threshold
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
rtimeout	timeout value
0-0xFFFFFFFF	timeout value
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* set the receiver timeout threshold of USART0 */
```

```
usart_receiver_timeout_threshold_config(USART0, 115200*3);
```

usart_data_transmit

The description of usart_data_transmit is shown as below:

Table 3-732. Function usart_data_transmit

Function name	usart_data_transmit
Function prototype	void usart_data_transmit(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t data);
Function descriptions	USART transmit data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
data	data of transmission
0-0x1FF	data of transmission
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 transmit data */
```

```
usart_data_transmit(USART0, 0xAA);
```

usart_data_receive

The description of usart_data_receive is shown as below:

Table 3-733. Function usart_data_receive

Function name	usart_data_receive
----------------------	--------------------

Function prototype	void usart_receive_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rxconfig);
Function descriptions	USART receive data function
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
uint32_t	data of received (0-0x1FF)

Example:

```
/* USART0 receive data */
```

```
uint16_t temp;
```

```
temp = usart_data_receive(USART0);
```

usart_address_config

The description of usart_address_config is shown as below:

Table 3-734. Function usart_address_config

Function name	usart_address_config
Function prototype	void usart_address_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t addr);
Function descriptions	configure the address of the USART in wake up by address match mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4

Input parameter{in}	
addr	address of USART/UART
<i>0-0xFF</i>	address of USART/UART
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure address of the USART0 */
usart_address_config(USART0, 0x00);
```

usart_mute_mode_enable

The description of usart_mute_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-735. Function usart_mute_mode_enable

Function name	usart_mute_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 receiver in mute mode */
```

```
usart_mute_mode_enable(USART0);
```

usart_mute_mode_disable

The description of usart_mute_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-736. Function usart_mute_mode_disable

Function name	usart_mute_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable mute mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 receiver in mute mode */
```

```
usart_mute_mode_disable(USART0);
```

usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config

The description of usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config is shown as below:

Table 3-737. Function usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config

Function name	usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config
Function prototype	void usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t wmethod);
Function descriptions	configure wakeup method in mute mode
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
wmethod	two methods be used to enter or exit the mute mode
USART_WM_IDLE	idle line
USART_WM_ADDR	address mask
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 wakeup method in mute mode */
```

```
usart_mute_mode_wakeup_config(USART0, USART_WM_IDLE);
```

usart_lin_mode_enable

The description of usart_lin_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-738. Function usart_lin_mode_enable

Function name	usart_lin_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_lin_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable LIN mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4

Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 LIN mode enable */
```

```
usart_lin_mode_enable(USART0);
```

usart_lin_mode_disable

The description of usart_lin_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-739. Function usart_lin_mode_disable

Function name	usart_lin_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_lin_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable LIN mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 LIN mode disable */
```

```
usart_lin_mode_disable(USART0);
```

usart_lin_break_dection_length_config

The description of usart_lin_break_dection_length_config is shown as below:

Table 3-740. Function `usart_lin_break_dection_length_config`

Function name	<code>usart_lin_break_dection_length_config</code>
Function prototype	<code>void usart_lin_break_dection_length_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t lblen);</code>
Function descriptions	configure LIN break frame length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
<code>usart_periph</code>	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<code>USARTx</code>	x=0,1,2
<code>UARTx</code>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
<code>lblen</code>	two methods be used to enter or exit the mute mode
<code>USART_LBLEN_10B</code>	break frame length is 10 bits
<code>USART_LBLEN_11B</code>	break frame length is 11 bits
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure LIN break frame length */
```

```
usart_lin_break_dection_length_config(USART0, USART_LBLEN_10B);
```

`usart_send_break`

The description of `usart_send_break` is shown as below:

Table 3-741. Function `usart_send_break`

Function name	<code>usart_send_break</code>
Function prototype	<code>void usart_send_break(uint32_t usart_periph);</code>
Function descriptions	send break frame
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 send break frame */
```

```
usart_send_break(USART0);
```

usart_halfduplex_enable

The description of usart_halfduplex_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-742. Function usart_halfduplex_enable

Function name	usart_halfduplex_enable
Function prototype	void usart_halfduplex_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable half duplex mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 half duplex mode*/
usart_halfduplex_enable(USART0);
```

usart_halfduplex_disable

The description of usart_halfduplex_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-743. Function usart_halfduplex_disable

Function name	usart_halfduplex_disable
Function prototype	void usart_halfduplex_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable half duplex mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 half duplex mode*/
usart_halfduplex_disable(USART0);
```

usart_synchronous_clock_enable

The description of usart_synchronous_clock_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-744. Function usart_synchronous_clock_enable

Function name	usart_synchronous_clock_enable
Function prototype	void usart_synchronous_clock_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable CK pin in synchronous mode

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 CK pin in synchronous mode */
```

```
usart_synchronous_clock_enable(USART0);
```

usart_synchronous_clock_disable

The description of usart_synchronous_clock_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-745. Function usart_synchronous_clock_disable

Function name	usart_synchronous_clock_disable
Function prototype	void usart_synchronous_clock_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable CK pin in synchronous mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 CK pin in synchronous mode */
```

```
usart_synchronous_clock_disable(USART0);
```

usart_synchronous_clock_config

The description of usart_synchronous_clock_config is shown as below:

Table 3-746. Function usart_synchronous_clock_config

Function name	usart_synchronous_clock_config
Function prototype	void usart_synchronous_clock_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t clen, uint32_t cph, uint32_t cpl);
Function descriptions	configure USART synchronous mode parameters
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
clen	CK length
USART_CLEN_NONE	there are 7 CK pulses for an 8 bit frame and 8 CK pulses for a 9 bit frame
USART_CLEN_EN	there are 8 CK pulses for an 8 bit frame and 9 CK pulses for a 9 bit frame
Input parameter{in}	
cph	clock phase
USART_CPH_1CK	first clock transition is the first data capture edge
USART_CPH_2CK	second clock transition is the first data capture edge
Input parameter{in}	
cpl	clock polarity
USART_CPL_LOW	steady low value on CK pin
USART_CPL_HIGH	steady high value on CK pin
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 synchronous mode parameters */

usart_synchronous_clock_config(USART0,USART_CLEN_EN,USART_CPH_2CK,
USART_CPL_HIGH);
```

usart_guard_time_config

The description of usart_guard_time_config is shown as below:

Table 3-747. Function usart_guard_time_config

Function name	usart_guard_time_config
Function prototype	void usart_guard_time_config(uint32_t usart_periph,uint32_t gaut);
Function descriptions	configure guard time value in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
gaut	guard time value
value	0-0xFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 guard time value in smartcard mode */

usart_guard_time_config(USART0, 0x0000 0055);
```

usart_smartcard_mode_enable

The description of usart_smartcard_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-748. Function usart_smartcard_mode_enable

Function name	usart_smartcard_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_smartcard_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 smartcard mode enable */
usart_smartcard_mode_enable(USART0);
```

usart_smartcard_mode_disable

The description of usart_smartcard_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-749. Function usart_smartcard_mode_disable

Function name	usart_smartcard_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_smartcard_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 smartcard mode disable */
usart_smartcard_mode_disable(USART0);
```

usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable

The description of usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-750. Function usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable

Function name	usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable
Function prototype	void usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable NACK in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 NACK in smartcard mode */
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_enable(USART0);
```

usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable

The description of usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-751. Function usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable

Function name	usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable
---------------	-----------------------------------

Function prototype	void usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable NACK in smartcard mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 NACK in smartcard mode */
```

```
usart_smartcard_mode_nack_disable(USART0);
```

usart_smartcard_autoretry_config

The description of usart_smartcard_autoretry_config is shown as below:

Table 3-752. Function usart_smartcard_autoretry_config

Function name	usart_smartcard_autoretry_config
Function prototype	void usart_smartcard_autoretry_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t scrtnum);
Function descriptions	configure smartcard auto-retry number
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
scrtnum	smartcard auto-retry number

0-0xFFFFFFFF	smartcard auto-retry number
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure smartcard auto-retry number */
```

```
usart_smartcard_autoretry_config (USART0, 0xFFFFFFFF);
```

usart_block_length_config

The description of usart_block_length_config is shown as below:

Table 3-753. Function usart_block_length_config

Function name	usart_block_length_config
Function prototype	void usart_block_length_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t bl);
Function descriptions	configure block length
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
bl	block length
0-0xFFFFFFFF	block length
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure block length in Smartcard T=1 reception */
```

```
usart_block_length_config(USART0, 0xFFFFFFFF);
```

usart_irda_mode_enable

The description of usart_irda_mode_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-754. Function usart_irda_mode_enable

Function name	usart_irda_mode_enable
Function prototype	void usart_irda_mode_enable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	enable IrDA mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 IrDA mode */
usart_irda_mode_enable(USART0);
```

usart_irda_mode_disable

The description of usart_irda_mode_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-755. Function usart_irda_mode_disable

Function name	usart_irda_mode_disable
Function prototype	void usart_irda_mode_disable(uint32_t usart_periph);
Function descriptions	disable IrDA mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-

Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 IrDA mode */
```

```
usart_irda_mode_disable(USART0);
```

usart_prescaler_config

The description of usart_prescaler_config is shown as below:

Table 3-756. Function usart_prescaler_config

Function name	usart_prescaler_config
Function prototype	void usart_prescaler_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint8_t psc);
Function descriptions	configure the peripheral clock prescaler in USART IrDA low-power mode
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
psc	0x00-0xFF
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	

-	-
---	---

Example:

```
/* configure the USART0 peripheral clock prescaler */
```

```
usart_prescaler_config(USART0, 0x00);
```

usart_irda_lowpower_config

The description of usart_irda_lowpower_config is shown as below:

Table 3-757. Function usart_irda_lowpower_config

Function name	usart_irda_lowpower_config
Function prototype	void usart_irda_lowpower_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t irlp);
Function descriptions	configure IrDA low-power
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
irlp	IrDA low-power or normal
USART_IRLP_LOW	low-power
USART_IRLP_NORMAL	normal
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 IrDA low-power */
```

```
usart_irda_lowpower_config(USART0, USART_IRLP_LOW);
```

usart_hardware_flow_rts_config

The description of usart_hardware_flow_rts_config is shown as below:

Table 3-758. Function usart_hardware_flow_rts_config

Function name	usart_hardware_flow_rts_config
Function prototype	void usart_hardware_flow_rts_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t rtsconfig);
Function descriptions	configure hardware flow control RTS
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
rtsconfig	enable or disable RTS
USART_RTS_ENABLE	enable RTS
USART_RTS_DISABLE	disable RTS
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 hardware flow control RTS */
usart_hardware_flow_rts_config(USART0, USART_RTS_ENABLE);
```

usart_hardware_flow_cts_config

The description of usart_hardware_flow_cts_config is shown as below:

Table 3-759. Function usart_hardware_flow_cts_config

Function name	usart_hardware_flow_cts_config
Function prototype	void usart_hardware_flow_cts_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t

	ctsconfig);
Function descriptions	configure hardware flow control RTS
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
Input parameter{in}	
ctsconfig	enable or disable CTS
<i>USART_CTS_ENABLE</i>	enable CTS
<i>USART_CTS_DISABLE</i>	disable CTS
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure USART0 hardware flow control CTS */
```

```
usart_hardware_flow_cts_config(USART0, USART_CTS_ENABLE);
```

usart_dma_receive_config

The description of usart_dma_receive_config is shown as below:

Table 3-760. Function usart_dma_receive_config

Function name	usart_dma_receive_config
Function prototype	void usart_dma_receive_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t dma_cmd);
Function descriptions	configure USART DMA reception
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral

<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3
Input parameter{in}	
dmacmd	enable or disable DMA for reception
<i>USART_DENR_ENAB</i> <i>LE</i>	DMA enable for reception
<i>USART_DENR_DISAB</i> <i>LE</i>	DMA disable for reception
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 DMA enable for reception */
```

```
usart_dma_receive_config(USART0, USART_DENR_ENABLE);
```

usart_dma_transmit_config

The description of usart_dma_transmit_config is shown as below:

Table 3-761. Function usart_dma_transmit_config

Function name	usart_dma_transmit_config
Function prototype	void usart_dma_transmit_config(uint32_t usart_periph, uint32_t dmacmd);
Function descriptions	configure USART DMA transmission
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3
Input parameter{in}	
dmacmd	enable or disable DMA for transmission

<i>USART_DENT_ENABLE</i>	DMA enable for transmission
<i>USART_DENT_DISABLE</i>	DMA disable for transmission
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* USART0 DMA enable for transmission */
```

```
usart_dma_transmit_config(USART0, USART_DENT_ENABLE);
```

usart_flag_get

The description of usart_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-762. Function usart_flag_get

Function name	usart_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus usart_flag_get(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	get flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
flag	USART flags, refer to usart_flag_enum
<i>USART_FLAG_CTS</i>	CTS change flag
<i>USART_FLAG_LBD</i>	LIN break detected flag
<i>USART_FLAG_TBE</i>	transmit data buffer empty flag
<i>USART_FLAG_TC</i>	transmission complete flag

USART_FLAG_RBNE	read data buffer not empty flag
USART_FLAG_IDLE	IDLE frame detected flag
USART_FLAG_ORER R	overrun error flag
USART_FLAG_NERR	noise error flag
USART_FLAG_FERR	frame error flag
USART_FLAG_PERR	parity error flag
USART_FLAG_BSY	busy flag
USART_FLAG_EB	end of block flag
USART_FLAG_RT	receiver timeout flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get flag USART0 state */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = usart_flag_get(USART0,USART_FLAG_TBE);
```

usart_flag_clear

The description of usart_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-763. Function usart_flag_clear

Function name	usart_flag_clear
Function prototype	void usart_flag_clear(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_flag_enum flag);
Function descriptions	clear flag in STAT0/STAT1 register
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral

<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
flag	USART flags, refer to usart_flag_enum
<i>USART_FLAG_CTS</i>	CTS change flag
<i>USART_FLAG_LBD</i>	LIN break detected flag
<i>USART_FLAG_TC</i>	transmission complete
<i>USART_FLAG_RBNE</i>	read data buffer not empty
<i>USART_FLAG_EB</i>	end of block flag
<i>USART_FLAG_RT</i>	receiver timeout flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear USART0 flag */
```

```
usart_flag_clear(USART0,USART_FLAG_TC);
```

usart_interrupt_enable

The description of usart_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-764. Function usart_interrupt_enable

Function name	usart_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void usart_interrupt_enable(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	enable USART interrupt
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral

<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
interrupt	USART interrupt
<i>USART_INT_PERR</i>	parity error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_TBE</i>	transmitter buffer empty interrupt
<i>USART_INT_TC</i>	transmission complete interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RBNE</i>	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_IDLE</i>	IDLE line detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_LBD</i>	LIN break detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_CTS</i>	CTS interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RT</i>	receive timeout event interrupt
<i>USART_INT_EB</i>	end of block event interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable USART0 TBE interrupt */
usart_interrupt_enable(USART0, USART_INT_TBE);
```

usart_interrupt_disable

The description of usart_interrupt_disable is shown as below:

Table 3-765. Function usart_interrupt_disable

Function name	usart_interrupt_disable
Function prototype	void usart_interrupt_disable(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_enum interrupt);
Function descriptions	disable USART interrupt

Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	USART interrupt flag
<i>USART_INT_PERR</i>	parity error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_TBE</i>	transmitter buffer empty interrupt
<i>USART_INT_TC</i>	transmission complete interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RBNE</i>	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_IDLE</i>	IDLE line detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_LBD</i>	LIN break detected interrupt
<i>USART_INT_ERR</i>	error interrupt
<i>USART_INT_CTS</i>	CTS interrupt
<i>USART_INT_RT</i>	receive timeout event interrupt
<i>USART_INT_EB</i>	end of block event interrupt
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* disable USART0 TBE interrupt */
```

```
usart_interrupt_disable(USART0, USART_INT_TBE);
```

usart_interrupt_flag_get

The description of usart_interrupt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-766. Function usart_interrupt_flag_get

Function name	usart_interrupt_flag_get
Function prototype	FlagStatus usart_interrupt_flag_get(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);
Function descriptions	get USART interrupt flag status
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
USARTx	x=0,1,2
UARTx	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	USART interrupt flag, refer to usart_interrupt_flag_enum
USART_INT_FLAG_PERRR	parity error interrupt and flag
USART_INT_FLAG_TBRE	transmitter buffer empty interrupt and flag
USART_INT_FLAG_TC	transmission complete interrupt and flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE	read data buffer not empty interrupt and flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE_ORERR	read data buffer not empty interrupt and overrun error flag
USART_INT_FLAG_IDLE	IDLE line detected interrupt and flag
USART_INT_FLAG_LBD	LIN break detected interrupt and flag
USART_INT_FLAG_CTS	CTS interrupt and flag
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_ORERR	error interrupt and overrun error
USART_INT_FLAG_ERR_NERR	error interrupt and noise error flag

<i>USART_INT_FLAG_ER R_FERR</i>	error interrupt and frame error flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_EB</i>	end of block event interrupt flag
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_RT</i>	receive timeout event interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* get the USART0 interrupt flag status */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = usart_interrupt_flag_get(USART0, USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE);
```

usart_interrupt_flag_clear

The description of usart_interrupt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-767. Function usart_interrupt_flag_clear

Function name	usart_interrupt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void usart_interrupt_flag_clear(uint32_t usart_periph, usart_interrupt_flag_enum int_flag);
Function descriptions	clear USART interrupt flag
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
usart_periph	USARTx/UARTx peripheral
<i>USARTx</i>	x=0,1,2
<i>UARTx</i>	x=3,4
Input parameter{in}	
int_flag	USART interrupt flag, refer to usart_interrupt_flag_enum
<i>USART_INT_FLAG_CTS</i>	CTS change flag

USART_INT_FLAG_LB D	LIN break detected flag
USART_INT_FLAG_TC	transmission complete
USART_INT_FLAG_RB NE	read data buffer not empty
USART_INT_FLAG_EB	end of block event interrupt flag
USART_INT_FLAG_RT	receive timeout event interrupt flag
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear the USART0 interrupt enable bit status */
```

```
usart_interrupt_flag_clear(USART0, USART_INT_FLAG_RBNE);
```

3.25. WWDGT

The window watchdog timer (WWDGT) is used to detect system failures due to software malfunctions. The WWDGT registers are listed in chapter [3.25.1](#), the WWDGT firmware functions are introduced in chapter [3.25.2](#).

3.25.1. Descriptions of Peripheral registers

WWDGT registers are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-768. WWDGT Registers

Registers	Descriptions
WWDGT_CTL	Control register
WWDGT_CFG	Configuration register
WWDGT_STAT	Status register

3.25.2. Descriptions of Peripheral functions

WWDGT firmware functions are listed in the table shown as below:

Table 3-769. WWDGT firmware function

Function name	Function description
wwdgt_deinit	reset the window watchdog timer configuration
wwdgt_enable	start the window watchdog timer counter
wwdgt_counter_update	configure the window watchdog timer counter value
wwdgt_config	configure counter value, window value, and prescaler divider value
wwdgt_interrupt_enable	enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT
wwdgt_flag_get	check early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
wwdgt_flag_clear	clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT

wwdgt_deinit

The description of wwdgt_deinit is shown as below:

Table 3-770. Function wwdgt_deinit

Function name	wwdgt_deinit
Function prototype	void wwdgt_deinit(void);
Function descriptions	reset the window watchdog timer configuration
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* reset the window watchdog timer configuration */
wwdgt_deinit ( );
```

wwdgt_enable

The description of wwdgt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-771. Function wwdgt_enable

Function name	wwdgt_enable
Function prototype	void wwdgt_enable (void);
Function descriptions	start the window watchdog timer counter
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* start the window watchdog timer counter */
```

```
wwdgt_enable ( );
```

wwdgt_counter_update

The description of wwdgt_counter_update is shown as below:

Table 3-772. Function wwdgt_counter_update

Function name	wwdgt_counter_update
Function prototype	void wwdgt_counter_update(uint16_t counter_value);
Function descriptions	configure the window watchdog timer counter value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
counter_value	0x00 - 0x7F
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* update WWDGT counter to 0x7F */
```

```
wwdgt_counter_update(127);
```

wwdgt_config

The description of wwdgt_config is shown as below:

Table 3-773. Function wwdgt_config

Function name	wwdgt_config
Function prototype	void wwdgt_config(uint16_t counter, uint16_t window, uint32_t prescaler);
Function descriptions	configure counter value, window value, and prescaler divider value
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
counter	0x00 - 0x7F
Input parameter{in}	
window	0x00 - 0x7F
Input parameter{in}	
prescaler	wwdgt prescaler value
WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV1	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/1
WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV2	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/2
WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV4	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/4
WWDGT_CFG_PSC_D IV8	the time base of window watchdog counter = (PCLK1/4096)/8
Output parameter{out}	

-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* configure WWDGT counter value to 0x7F, window value to 0x50, prescaler divider value to 8 */
```

```
wwdgt_config(127, 80, WWDGT_CFG_PSC_DIV8);
```

wwdgt_interrupt_enable

The description of wwdgt_interrupt_enable is shown as below:

Table 3-774. Function wwdgt_interrupt_enable

Function name	wwdgt_interrupt_enable
Function prototype	void wwdgt_interrupt_enable(void);
Function descriptions	enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* enable early wakeup interrupt of WWDGT */
```

```
wwdgt_interrupt_enable ( );
```

wwdgt_flag_get

The description of wwdgt_flag_get is shown as below:

Table 3-775. Function wwdgt_flag_get

Function name	wwdgt_flag_get
---------------	----------------

Function prototype	FlagStatus wwdgt_flag_get(void);
Function descriptions	check early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
Precondition	-
The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
FlagStatus	SET or RESET

Example:

```
/* test if the counter value update has reached the 0x40 */
```

```
FlagStatus status;
```

```
status = wwdgt_flag_get ( );
```

```
if(status == RESET)
```

```
{
```

```
...
```

```
}else
```

```
{
```

```
...
```

```
}
```

wwdgt_flag_clear

The description of wwdgt_flag_clear is shown as below:

Table 3-776. Function wwdgt_flag_clear

Function name	wwdgt_flag_clear
Function prototype	void wwdgt_flag_clear(void);
Function descriptions	clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT
Precondition	-

The called functions	-
Input parameter{in}	
-	-
Output parameter{out}	
-	-
Return value	
-	-

Example:

```
/* clear early wakeup interrupt state of WWDGT */
wwdgt_flag_clear( );
```

4. Revision history

Table 4-1. Revision history

Revision No.	Description	Date
1.0	Initial Release	Dec.26, 2018
1.1	Format update	Jul.7, 2022

Important Notice

This document is the property of GigaDevice Semiconductor Inc. and its subsidiaries (the "Company"). This document, including any product of the Company described in this document (the "Product"), is owned by the Company under the intellectual property laws and treaties of the People's Republic of China and other jurisdictions worldwide. The Company reserves all rights under such laws and treaties and does not grant any license under its patents, copyrights, trademarks, or other intellectual property rights. The names and brands of third party referred thereto (if any) are the property of their respective owner and referred to for identification purposes only.

The Company makes no warranty of any kind, express or implied, with regard to this document or any Product, including, but not limited to, the implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose. The Company does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any Product described in this document. Any information provided in this document is provided only for reference purposes. It is the responsibility of the user of this document to properly design, program, and test the functionality and safety of any application made of this information and any resulting product. Except for customized products which has been expressly identified in the applicable agreement, the Products are designed, developed, and/or manufactured for ordinary business, industrial, personal, and/or household applications only. The Products are not designed, intended, or authorized for use as components in systems designed or intended for the operation of weapons, weapons systems, nuclear installations, atomic energy control instruments, combustion control instruments, airplane or spaceship instruments, transportation instruments, traffic signal instruments, life-support devices or systems, other medical devices or systems (including resuscitation equipment and surgical implants), pollution control or hazardous substances management, or other uses where the failure of the device or Product could cause personal injury, death, property or environmental damage ("Unintended Uses"). Customers shall take any and all actions to ensure using and selling the Products in accordance with the applicable laws and regulations. The Company is not liable, in whole or in part, and customers shall and hereby do release the Company as well as its suppliers and/or distributors from any claim, damage, or other liability arising from or related to all Unintended Uses of the Products. Customers shall indemnify and hold the Company as well as its suppliers and/or distributors harmless from and against all claims, costs, damages, and other liabilities, including claims for personal injury or death, arising from or related to any Unintended Uses of the Products.

Information in this document is provided solely in connection with the Products. The Company reserves the right to make changes, corrections, modifications or improvements to this document and Products and services described herein at any time, without notice.